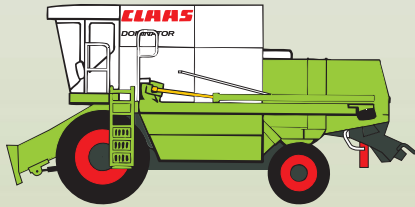


CLAAS



DOMINATOR 150 / 140 / 130

Operator's Manual

SERVICE & PARTS

Original operator's manual

EC declaration of conformity

corresponds to EC directive 98/37/EC

We

CLAAS Selbstfahrende Erntemaschinen Gesellschaft mit beschränkter Haftung

(Name of supplier)

Postfach 11 63

D-33426 Harsewinkel

(full address of the manufacturer - an authorised representative established in the Community must also give the business name and the address of the manufacturer)

declare under our sole responsibility that the product

Combine harvester - type:

200 / 156

(Make, Type)

to which this declaration relates corresponds to the relevant basic safety and health requirements of the Directive 98/37/EC Appendix I,

(if applicable)

and to the requirements of the other relevant Directives

89/336/EEC in the version 92/31/EEC.

(Title and/or number and date of issue of the other Directives)

For the relevant implementation of the safety and health requirements mentioned in the Directives, the following standard(s) and/or technical specification(s) has (have) been respected:

EN 632 - August 1995

(Title and/or number and date of issue of standard(s) and/or technical specification(s))



Technical Management

(J.H. Mohr)

(Name, function and signature of the authorized person)



Quality Management

(U. Krieg)

Harsewinkel,

(Place and date of issue)

EC Declaration of Conformity

This declaration of conformity is the original declaration of conformity according to Directive 2006/42/EC

We

CLAAS Selbstfahrende Erntemaschinen GmbH

Postfach 11 63, D-33416 Harsewinkel

declare under our sole responsibility, that the product **Combine harvester**
(type - serial number - trade name)

200 - from 200 01217 - DOMINATOR 150 / 140

156 - from 156 10568 - DOMINATOR 130

to which this declaration relates corresponds to the relevant basic safety and health requirements of Directive **2006/42/EC Appendix I** and to the requirements of the other relevant Directives **2004/108/EC**.

For the relevant implementation of the safety and health requirements mentioned in the Directives, the following standard(s) and/or technical specification(s) has (have) been respected: **EN 632 - August 1995**

The person responsible for documentation in the European Community is: **J.H. Mohr, CLAAS Selbstfahrende Erntemaschinen GmbH, Postfach 11 63, D-33416 Harsewinkel**



Technical Management

(J.H. Mohr)



Quality Management

(U. Krieg)

Harsewinkel, 01.10.09

Contents

1 Introduction

1.1 General Information	16
1.1.1 How to use this manual	16
1.1.2 Validity of instructions	18
1.1.3 Specifications	18
1.1.4 Road traffic regulations	18
1.1.5 Note on electronic engine management	21
1.2 Various components / Machine body	23
1.2.1 Spare parts and technical questions	23
1.2.2 Machine identification plate	23
1.2.3 Identification plate of CATERPILLAR 3056 E engine	25
1.2.4 Identification plate of PERKINS 1006-6T engine	25
1.2.5 Identification plate of CATERPILLAR C6.6 engine	26
1.2.6 Drive axle identification plate	26
1.2.7 Rear axle identification plate	26
1.2.8 Trailer hitch identification plate	27
1.2.9 Hitch block identification plate	28
1.2.10 Cab identification plate	29
1.2.11 Straw chopper identification plate	29

2 Sectional view of machine

2.1 Attachment parts / machine body	30
2.1.1 Machine overview	30
2.1.2 Access to the workplace and maintenance areas	32

3 Safety

3.1 General Information	34
3.1.1 General information	34
3.1.2 Important information	34
3.1.3 Intended use	34
3.1.4 Reasonable foreseeable misuse	35
3.1.5 Safety and accident prevention regulations	36
3.1.6 General safety and accident prevention regulations for combine harvesters	37
3.1.7 Prior to operation, general	37
3.1.8 Additional weights	38
3.1.9 Transporting passengers	38
3.1.10 General driving operations	38
3.1.11 Automotive operation of combine harvester	38
3.1.12 Driving operations on slopes	39
3.1.13 Leaving the machine	39
3.1.14 Front attachments and trailers	39
3.1.15 Crop receptacle / straw receptacle	40
3.1.16 Grain delivery	40
3.1.17 Air conditioner	40
3.1.18 Adjustment and maintenance work	40
3.1.19 Accumulators	41

3.1.20	Antifreeze	41
3.1.21	First aid measures	42
3.1.22	Decommissioning and disposal	42
3.1.23	Applying the feeder housing safety lock	43
3.1.24	Moving out the feed rake conveyor safety lock	43
3.1.25	Secure the machine with wheel chocks so it will not roll away	44
3.1.26	Securing the straw guide apron in raised position	45
3.1.27	Jack up the machine	45
3.1.28	Fire extinguisher	45
3.1.29	Battery isolating switch	46
3.1.30	Danger of injury due to escaping hydraulic liquid	46
3.1.31	Loading and tying down the machine	47
3.1.32	Removing the lift eyes	49
3.2	Safety rules	50
3.2.1	Identification of warning and danger signs	50
3.3	Safety decals	51
3.3.1	General information on safety decals	51
3.3.2	Engine	52
3.3.3	Chassis	54
3.3.4	Cab / Operator's platform	55
3.3.5	Feeder unit	57
3.3.6	Threshing mechanism	60
3.3.7	Separation	62
3.3.8	Crop receptacle / straw receptacle	64
3.3.9	Grain delivery	67
3.3.10	Various components / Machine body	72
3.4	Safety decals	74
3.4.1	General instructions on safety decals	74
3.4.2	Chassis	74
4	Specifications	
4.1	DOMINATOR 150 / 140 / 130	75
4.1.1	General information	75
4.1.2	CATERPILLAR C6.6 engine	75
4.1.3	CATERPILLAR 3056E engine	76
4.1.4	Perkins 1006-T6 engine	76
4.1.5	Chassis	77
4.1.6	Tyre pressures	78
4.1.7	Chassis track width	80
4.1.8	Brake	81
4.1.9	Steering	81
4.1.10	Electric system / Electronics	82
4.1.11	Cab / Operator's platform	82
4.1.12	Intake	82
4.1.13	Threshing mechanism	83
4.1.14	Separation	83
4.1.15	Cleaning unit	84
4.1.16	Grain delivery	84

4.1.17 Attachment parts / machine body dimensions	84
4.1.18 Attachment parts / machine body weights	86

5 Prior to initial operation

5.1 General Information	87
5.1.1 General warnings Prior to initial operation	87
5.1.2 Initial operation check list	87
5.2 Chassis	89
5.2.1 Removing / installing the wheels	89
5.2.2 Overview of rear axle	89
5.2.3 Converting the rear axle from transport to working position	90
5.2.4 Rear axle 00 0649 950 1 – Adjusting the track width	91
5.3 Hitch	93
5.3.1 Installing the trailer hitch (accessories)	93
5.4 Electrical / electronic equipment	94
5.4.1 Installing the fan / air conditioner fuse	94
5.5 Feeder unit	95
5.5.1 Fitting / adjusting the mounting plates	95
5.5.2 Aligning the coupling pin	95
5.5.3 Checking the front attachment cylinders	96
5.5.4 Checking the cutterbar float springs	97
5.6 Grain delivery	99
5.6.1 Closing the service aperture on the grain tank unloading tube	99
5.6.2 Installing the grain tank safety device	99

6 Prior to each operation

6.1 General Information	101
6.1.1 General warnings Prior to operation	101
6.1.2 Check list for daily operation	101

7 Overview of controls

7.1 General Information	103
7.1.1 General warnings - Overview of controls	103
7.2 Cab / Operator's platform	104
7.2.1 Overview of operator's platform (DOMINATOR 130)	104
7.2.2 Overview of operator's platform (DOMINATOR 150/140)	106
7.2.3 Hydraulic system control unit (DOMINATOR 130 lift hydraulic system)	107
7.2.4 Multifunction handle (DOMINATOR 150 / 140)	108
7.2.5 Switch console (DOMINATOR 130)	108
7.2.6 Diesel engine speed adjustment rotary switch (DOMINATOR 130, CATERPILLAR C-6.6, 3056 E)	109
7.2.7 Diesel engine speed lever (DOMINATOR 130, Perkins 1006-T6)	109
7.2.8 Function of warning lights 7 and 8 (DOMINATOR 130)	110
7.2.9 Switch console (DOMINATOR 150 / 140)	111
7.2.10 Diesel engine speed rotary switch (DOMINATOR 150 / 140)	112
7.2.11 Function of warning lights 15 and 18 (DOMINATOR 150 / 140)	113
7.2.12 Overview of steering column	114
7.2.13 Cab roof controls	117
7.2.14 Cab with fan	118

7.2.15	Cab with air conditioner (with York compressor)	118
7.2.16	Cab with air conditioner (with Sanden compressor)	120
7.2.17	Cab with fan and heater	121
7.2.18	Control levers	122
7.2.19	Functions monitor	122
7.3	Attachment parts / machine body	124
7.3.1	Worklights	124
7.3.2	Cab	124
7.3.3	Sun roof	125
7.3.4	Tool box	125
8	Mounting/removing front attachment	126
8.1	General Information	126
8.1.1	General warnings Installing / removing the front attachment	126
8.2	Installing the front attachment	127
8.2.1	Suspending front attachment	127
8.2.2	Interlocking the front attachment	127
8.2.3	Installing universal drive shaft	128
8.2.4	Connecting the hydraulic system	130
8.2.5	Connecting the electric equipment (accessory)	130
8.2.6	Removing the stands	131
8.3	Removing the front attachment	133
8.3.1	Fitting the stands	133
8.3.2	Disconnecting the hydraulic system	134
8.3.3	Disconnecting the electric equipment (accessory)	134
8.3.4	Removing universal drive shaft	135
8.3.5	Unlocking the front attachment	136
8.3.6	Unhitching front attachment	136
9	Driving and transportation	138
9.1	General Information	138
9.1.1	General warnings - Driving and transportation	138
9.1.2	Preparing road travel	138
9.1.3	Preparing fieldwork	141
9.2	Engine	143
9.2.1	Adjusting the diesel engine speed (DOMINATOR 150 / 140)	143
9.2.2	Starting the diesel engine (DOMINATOR 150 / 140)	143
9.2.3	Stopping the diesel engine (DOMINATOR 150 / 140)	145
9.2.4	Adjusting the diesel engine speed (DOMINATOR 130)	146
9.2.5	Starting the diesel engine (DOMINATOR 130)	146
9.2.6	Stopping the diesel engine (DOMINATOR 130)	148
9.3	Chassis	150
9.3.1	Ground speed control lever (DOMINATOR 150 / 140)	150
9.3.2	Shifting a gear (DOMINATOR 150 / 140)	150
9.3.3	Ground speed control lever (DOMINATOR 130)	151
9.3.4	Shifting a gear (DOMINATOR 130)	152
9.3.5	Adjusting the ground speed control lever actuating resistance (DOMINATOR 150 / 140)	153
9.3.6	Driving behaviour	154

9.3.7	Towing the machine	154
9.3.8	Forward towing	155
9.3.9	Reverse towing	155
9.4	Brake	156
9.4.1	Applying the parking brake	156
9.4.2	Releasing the parking brake	156
9.4.3	Foot brake	156
9.4.4	Braking / stopping the machine (DOMINATOR 150 / 140)	157
9.4.5	Braking / stopping the machine (DOMINATOR 130)	158
9.4.6	Parking the machine	159
9.5	Steering	160
9.5.1	Steering	160
9.5.2	Adjusting the steering column	160
9.6	Hitch	161
9.6.1	Hitching the trailer	161
9.6.2	Unhitching the trailer	164
9.7	Cab / Operator's platform	166
9.7.1	Adjusting the driver's seat with mechanical suspension (standard version)	166
9.7.2	Adjusting the driver's seat with mechanical suspension (standard version)	167
9.7.3	Adjusting the mechanically suspended driver's seat (option)	169
9.8	Various components / Machine body	171
9.8.1	Rotating the front ladder (standard)	171
9.8.2	Adjusting the rear ladder	171

10 Fieldwork settings

10.1	General Information	173
10.1.1	General warnings - Fieldwork settings	173
10.2	Feeder unit	174
10.2.1	Adjusting the cutting height indicator	174
10.2.2	Adjusting the scraper profiles	174
10.2.3	Adjusting the height of the feeder chain	175
10.2.4	Adjusting the front attachment drop rate (DOMINATOR 150)	176
10.3	Threshing mechanism	177
10.3.1	Removing / installing threshing concave segments (Multicrop concave)	177
10.3.2	Adjusting the basic concave adjustment	177
10.4	Separation	180
10.4.1	Adjusting the separation performance monitor sensors	180
10.5	Cleaning unit	181
10.5.1	Checking / adjusting the fan speed display	181
10.5.2	Adjusting the cleaning performance monitor sensors	181
10.5.3	Removing the sieves	182
10.5.4	Installing the sieves	183
10.6	Crop receptacle / straw receptacle	185
10.6.1	Removing the straw guide plate (straw chopper with standard spreader)	185
10.6.2	Installing the straw guide plate (straw chopper with standard spreader)	186
10.6.3	Unscrewing the free-swinging knives	187
10.6.4	Bolting down the free-swinging knives	188
10.6.5	Straw chopper sieves installation position	189

10.7 Grain delivery	191
10.7.1 Adjusting the grain tank full indicator DOMINATOR 150	191
11 Fieldwork	
11.1 General Information	193
11.1.1 General warnings Fieldwork	193
11.2 Description and function	194
11.2.1 Cutterbar	194
11.2.2 Threshing mechanism	195
11.2.3 Straw walker	195
11.2.4 Cleaning unit	195
11.2.5 Disawning	195
11.3 Considerations before combining	196
11.3.1 When combining, remember:	196
11.4 Front attachment	197
11.4.1 Adjusting the reel horizontally (mechanically)	197
11.4.2 Adjusting the reel horizontally (hydraulically)	198
11.4.3 Adjusting the reel circumferential speed	198
11.5 Feeder unit	200
11.5.1 Reading the ground pressure	200
11.5.2 Reading the cutting height	201
11.5.3 Reversing the front attachment / feeder unit	201
11.5.4 Switching on the front attachment	203
11.5.5 Disengaging the front attachment	204
11.6 Threshing mechanism	205
11.6.1 Engaging the threshing mechanism	205
11.6.2 Disengaging the threshing mechanism	206
11.6.3 Adjusting the concave	206
11.6.4 Installing / removing the disawner bars (accessory)	207
11.6.5 Unslugging the threshing drum	209
11.6.6 Adjusting the threshing drum speed	210
11.6.7 Threshing drum two-step variable-speed drive (chain drive)	212
11.7 Separation	214
11.7.1 Adjusting the deflector curtain	214
11.7.2 Observe the straw blockage warning downstream of the separation stage	214
11.7.3 Adjusting the separation performance monitor display	215
11.7.4 Installing / removing the straw walker fishback	217
11.8 Cleaning unit	219
11.8.1 Adjusting the fan speed	219
11.8.2 Adjusting the wind board	219
11.8.3 Adjusting the sieves manually	220
11.8.4 Adjusting the cleaning performance monitor display	221
11.9 Crop receptacle / straw receptacle	223
11.9.1 Putting the straw chopper into operation (swinging the standard spreader to chopping position)	223
11.9.2 Putting the straw chopper out of operation (swinging the standard spreader to swathing position)	225
11.9.3 Swinging the standard distributor into the transport trolley transport position	228
11.9.4 Adjusting the stationary knives (standard straw chopper)	229

11.10 Grain delivery	231
11.10.1 Inspecting the returns	231
11.10.2 Opening / closing the grain tank cover	231
11.10.3 Swinging the grain tank unloading tube out / in (DOMINATOR 150 / 140)	232
11.10.4 Swinging the grain tank unloading tube out / in (DOMINATOR 130)	233
11.10.5 Engaging / disengaging the grain tank unloading	234
11.10.6 Removing / installing the grain tank auger cover plates	236
11.10.7 Clean machine for bulk seed change	237
11.11 Sieve charts / threshing charts	238
11.11.1 Sieve table	238
11.11.2 Threshing table	239
11.12 Disawning	242
11.12.1 Disawner bars	242

12 Faults and remedies

12.1 General Information	243
12.1.1 General warnings Faults and remedy	243
12.2 Cab / Operator's platform	244
12.2.1 Central terminal compartment	244
12.2.2 Air conditioner faults and remedies	244
12.3 Front attachment	247
12.3.1 Front attachment	247
12.4 Feeder unit	249
12.4.1 Feeder unit problem and remedy	249
12.5 Threshing mechanism	250
12.5.1 Threshing mechanism problem and remedy	250
12.5.2 Threshing drum	251
12.6 Separation	252
12.6.1 Separation problem and remedy	252
12.7 Cleaning unit	253
12.7.1 Cleaning problem and remedy	253
12.8 Crop receptacle / straw receptacle	254
12.8.1 Crop / straw discharge problems and remedies	254
12.9 Grain delivery	255
12.9.1 Grain delivery problems and remedies	255
12.9.2 Installing the grain tank unloading shear bolt	257

13 Maintenance

13.1 General Information	258
13.1.1 General warnings Maintenance	258
13.2 General Information	259
13.2.1 Front attachment	259
13.2.2 Cleaning the engine compartment and hazard areas	259
13.2.3 Belts	259
13.2.4 Variable-speed drives	259
13.2.5 Bolts	259
13.2.6 Lubrication	259
13.2.7 Cleanliness of lubricants	260
13.2.8 Brakes	261
13.2.9 Wheels / tyres	261

13.2.10 Hydraulic system	262
13.2.11 Electrical system	263
13.2.12 Air conditioner	264
13.2.13 Protective guards	265
13.2.14 Spare parts	265
13.2.15 Unbalance	266
13.2.16 Welding work on combine harvester	266
13.2.17 Putting the machine out of action	266
13.2.18 Cleaning of surfaces with decals applied	267
13.2.19 Winter storage instructions for combines	267
13.2.20 Coolant	268
13.3 Maintenance schedule	269
13.3.1 Service intervals	269
13.4 Lubricants chart	273
13.4.1 Lubricants	273
13.5 Engine	277
13.5.1 Overview of engine CATERPILLAR C-6.6	277
13.5.2 Overview of engine CATERPILLAR 3056 E	277
13.5.3 Overview of engine PERKINS 1006-6T	278
13.5.4 Overview of cooling units	278
13.5.5 Cleaning the diesel engine surroundings	279
13.5.6 Draining fuel from the fuel tank	279
13.5.7 Fill up the machine's fuel tank	281
13.5.8 Cleaning the fuel tank filler screen	282
13.5.9 Closing / opening the fuel system shut-off tap	282
13.5.10 Bleed fuel system	283
13.5.11 Cleaning the fuel sediment bowl filter	283
13.5.12 Draining condensation at the fuel prefilter (standard equipment)	284
13.5.13 Changing the fuel prefilter (standard equipment)	285
13.5.14 Draining condensation at the fuel prefilter (additional equipment)	286
13.5.15 Changing the fuel pre-filter (accessory)	287
13.5.16 Changing the fuel filter CATERPILLAR C-6.6 / 3056 E	289
13.5.17 Changing the fuel filter PERKINS 1006-6T	290
13.5.18 Checking the diesel engine oil level	291
13.5.19 Changing the diesel engine oil / oil filter	293
13.5.20 Adjusting the diesel engine valves	295
13.5.21 Checking the radiator coolant level	295
13.5.22 Checking the coolant mixing ratio	296
13.5.23 Changing the radiator coolant	297
13.5.24 Draining the radiator coolant	297
13.5.25 Topping up coolant	299
13.5.26 Cleaning the rotary chaff screen	300
13.5.27 Cleaning the cooling unit	300
13.5.28 Changing the coolant hoses	300
13.5.29 Cleaning / changing the diesel engine air cleaner with plastic housing	301
13.5.30 Changing the diesel engine air cleaner safety cartridge with plastic housing	303
13.5.31 Cleaning the air filter intake screen	303

13.5.32	Changing the air intake hoses	304
13.5.33	Retightening the air intake tube clamps	304
13.6	Chassis	306
13.6.1	Wheels / tyres	306
13.6.2	Checking the tightening torque of wheel nuts / wheel bolts	307
13.6.3	Cleaning the surroundings of the drive axle manual gearbox	308
13.6.4	Checking the final drive oil level DOMINATOR 150 / 140	308
13.6.5	Draining the final drive oil DOMINATOR 150 / 140	309
13.6.6	Topping up the final drive oil DOMINATOR 150 / 140	310
13.6.7	Checking the final drive oil level DOMINATOR 130	311
13.6.8	Draining the final drive oil DOMINATOR 130	311
13.6.9	Topping up the final drive oil DOMINATOR 130	312
13.6.10	Checking the drive axle gearbox oil level	313
13.6.11	Draining the oil from the drive axle gearbox	314
13.6.12	Topping up oil in the drive axle gearbox	315
13.6.13	Adjusting the chassis clutch DOMINATOR 130	316
13.6.14	Adjusting the short-circuit valve DOMINATOR 130	316
13.7	Brake	318
13.7.1	Checking / refilling brake fluid	318
13.7.2	Adjusting the parking brake	318
13.7.3	Adjusting the foot brake	319
13.8	Drive belts / drive chains	320
13.8.1	General warnings	320
13.8.2	Drive diagram, left side DOMINATOR 150 / 140 / 130	321
13.8.3	Drive diagram, right side DOMINATOR 150 / 140 / 130	322
13.8.4	Adjusting belt (R1)	323
13.8.5	Adjusting belt (R2)	324
13.8.6	Adjusting belt (R3)	325
13.8.7	Adjusting belt (R4)	326
13.8.8	Adjusting belt (R5)	327
13.8.9	Adjusting belt (R8)	328
13.8.10	Adjusting belt (R9)	329
13.8.11	Adjusting belt (R10)	330
13.8.12	Removing belt (R7)	331
13.8.13	Installing belt (R7)	331
13.8.14	Adjusting belt (R12)	333
13.8.15	Adjusting belt (R13)	334
13.8.16	Removing belt (R14)	335
13.8.17	Installing belt (R14)	336
13.8.18	Adjusting belt (R14)	337
13.8.19	Removing belt (R42)	338
13.8.20	Installing belt (R42)	338
13.9	Hydraulic system	340
13.9.1	Checking the hydraulic system oil level	340
13.9.2	Changing the hydraulic system oil / oil filter / fresh air filter element DOMINATOR 150 / 140	340
13.9.3	Changing the hydraulic system oil / oil filter / fresh air filter element DOMINATOR 130	343

13.10 Electric system / Electronics	347
13.10.1 Checking the battery electrolyte level	347
13.11 Cab / Operator's platform	348
13.11.1 Cleaning / changing the cab air filter	348
13.11.2 Cleaning the cab recirculation air filter	348
13.11.3 Cleaning the cab roof units	349
13.11.4 Putting the air conditioner into operation	350
13.11.5 Precautions for protecting the air conditioner during extended standstill periods - DOMINATOR 130 with York compressor	350
13.11.6 Checking the air conditioner refrigerant moisture saturation	350
13.11.7 Changing the air conditioner refrigerant	351
13.12 Feeder unit	353
13.12.1 Cleaning the feed rake conveyor retainers	353
13.12.2 Adjusting the feeder chains	353
13.12.3 Adjusting the feeder chain slip clutch	354
13.12.4 Checking the rasp plates on the feed rake conveyor	355
13.13 Threshing mechanism	356
13.13.1 Cleaning the stone trap	356
13.13.2 Cleaning the threshing mechanism	356
13.14 Separation	358
13.14.1 Cleaning the straw walker	358
13.14.2 Checking the deflector curtain	359
13.14.3 Cleaning the separation throughput monitor sensor	359
13.15 Cleaning unit	360
13.15.1 Cleaning the cleaning throughput monitor sensor	360
13.15.2 Cleaning the fan	360
13.15.3 Setting the fan speed gauge	360
13.15.4 Cleaning the stepped preparation floors	361
13.15.5 Cleaning the sieves	362
13.16 Grain delivery	363
13.16.1 Adjusting the returns elevator chain	363
13.16.2 Adjusting the grain elevator chain	363
13.16.3 Cleaning the auger troughs	364
13.16.4 Cleaning the grain tank	366
13.16.5 Adjusting the grain tank unloading tube support transport position	366
13.17 Various components / Machine body	367
13.17.1 Checking the fire extinguisher	367

14 Lubrication chart

14.1 Lubrication points	368
14.1.1 General warnings Lubrication chart	368
14.1.2 Lubricants	368
14.1.3 Greasing cycles	369
14.1.4 Lubrication points - 10 h on the left	371
14.1.5 Lubrication points - 10 h on the right	372
14.1.6 Lubrication points - 50 h on the left	373
14.1.7 Lubrication points - 50 h on the right	374
14.1.8 Lubrication points - 100 h on the left	375
14.1.9 Lubrication points - 100 h on the right	377

	67075
14.1.10 Lubrication points - 500 h on the left	378
14.1.11 Lubrication points - 500 h on the right	379

1 Introduction

1.1 General Information

102866

1.1.1 How to use this manual

This operator's manual is the original operator's manual. In the following texts, it will be referred to simply as the operator's manual.

This operator's manual is intended for all users and provides information on the use, operation, adjustment, maintenance, cleaning and transportation of the machine.

Provided all instructions regarding proper maintenance and operation of your machine are followed, you can count on many years of reliable service.

Failure to perform maintenance or incorrect operation lead to an increased safety risk, premature wear, a reduction in performance, loss of earnings and time. Have the post harvest check / annual check performed regularly by your CLAAS dealer. A combination of the prescribed maintenance work with the post harvest check is recommended.

If you use the latest expertise and experience that went into this machine, it will render you consistently excellent service.

There is a separate operator's manual for front attachments and hitched devices.

Texts and figures

Pictures and graphics are neutral. Differences are pointed out by notes beneath the figure.

Texts are short and not machine-specific as far as possible. Differences are pointed out by intermediate headings.

Different types of texts can easily be distinguished from one another by their formats. The following formats are distinguished:

Formatting	Meaning	Description
Description	Text	Further information on the subject.
– Instructions	Operation	Operations which must be carried out one after the other.
<i>Result</i>	Result	Consequence of operations carried out.

References can easily be distinguished by suitable symbols. The following symbols are distinguished:

Symbol	Meaning	Description
	See index	The symbol  indicates that further information on this subject can be found at another point in this manual.
	See index of the relevant Operator's manual	The symbol  indicates that further information on this subject can be found in the Operator's manual of that machine or equipment.

Document structure based on subassemblies

As far as the contents permit, the chapters of this manual are structured according to subassemblies. The structure of these subassemblies is the same in all chapters.

Different product groups have different document structures based on subassemblies. CLAAS always takes care to keep these document structures based on subassemblies identical in any documents.

Search and find

The wanted subject can easily be found with the recurring subassembly structure, using the table of contents or the header line of this manual.

In addition, the index of this manual is a useful tool for locating a specific subject. The index can be found on the last pages of this manual.

Directions

Text elements such as front, rear, right and left always apply to the direction of travel. In figures, the direction of travel may be indicated by a direction arrow.

Optional equipment and accessories

Optional equipment includes equipment variants of the machine where different variants are available, but only one variant can be fitted.

Accessories are equipment items that may be additionally fitted to the machine, but are not included in the standard scope of the machine.

Both terms designate possible variants. Standard scopes and equipment variants may differ in other countries.

Your CLAAS Service Department

1.1.2 Validity of instructions

The present Manual applies to the following machine / front attachment:

Designation	Type	Machine serial number	
		from	to
DOMINATOR 150	200	200 00011	—
DOMINATOR 140	200	200 00011	—
DOMINATOR 130	156	156 00011	—

2475

1.1.3 Specifications

Technical data, dimensions and weights are given as an indication only. CLAAS reserves the right to make changes subsequently as technical developments continue. Responsibility for errors or omissions not accepted.

36993

1.1.4 Road traffic regulations

Road traffic regulations may vary between countries. In case of discrepancies between the instructions provided by the manufacturer and the traffic regulations of the relevant countries, the traffic regulations of the countries concerned apply.

The information below mainly refers to the Federal Republic of Germany.

Before driving on public roads, the self-propelled working machine usually needs an operating permit and a special approval.

When driving the self-propelled working machine on public roads and lanes, all conditions of the operating permit and of the special approval must be observed.

Documents to be carried on the machine

In addition to his driving licence, the operator must always carry the original of the operating permit and of the special approvals.

Objects to be carried on the machine

A warning triangle must be carried on all self-propelled working machines.

On all commercially used machines, a warning triangle, a warning light and a first-aid box must be carried along.

Furthermore, at least one wheel chock must be carried on vehicles with an allowed total weight above 4 t.

CLAAS self-propelled working machines are usually equipped with 1 rigid or 2 folding wheel chocks. These may be used on the front wheels only.

Excess-width machines

In case of excess-width self-propelled working machines (width exceeding 3 m across tyres), an individual operating permit based on an individual expert's opinion, a special approval according to § 70, sect. 1 of the German Regulations Authorising the Use of Vehicles for Road Traffic and a special approval according to § 29 of the German Regulations Authorising the Use of Vehicles for Road Traffic must be carried along.

All conditions and notes specified there must be observed. Especially the information regarding the marking of excess-width road vehicles must be complied with (two red/white marker boards each at the front and rear, two amber flashing warning beacons).

The granting of the special approval and permits is subject to different regulations in every Federal State. Information can usually be obtained from your road traffic authorities in charge.

Additional weights

Self-propelled machines with rear axle steering and fitted with front attachments approved by CLAAS must be equipped with additional weights on the rear axle when driving on public roads.

This is required in order to prevent the machine from lifting off at the rear when braking and on slopes and to maintain the steering function.

The required additional weights can be made up of implements, rear axle weights and liquid filling in the rear axle tyres.

Depending on the type of front attachment and the equipment fitted to the machine, the rear of the self-propelled machine must be ballasted.

Detailed information on this matter can be obtained from CLAAS.

Modifications to the machine

When parts of the machine whose condition is prescribed are subsequently modified or installed, the operation of which may endanger other road users, the Operating permit (individual operating permit) and the special approval expire.

To obtain a new individual operating permit, it is necessary to present the machine to the responsible technical inspection agency (TUEV, DEKRA) in order to prepare an individual expert's opinion according to § 19 of the German Regulations Authorising the Use of Vehicles for Road Traffic.

If you are in any doubt as to whether this situation applies in your case, please contact CLAAS as the manufacturers.

Towing a trailer

A trailer for front attachments may be towed in accordance with the permissible trailed load.

If a trailer is towed behind the machine, then the cable for the entire lighting system must be connected and the good condition of the lighting system assured.

In addition, particular care should be taken to properly latch the trailer hitch.

The towing of other trailers in the trailer hitch is **not** permitted in self-propelled combine harvesters when driving on public streets.

Licence plates

All CLAAS self-propelled working machines must be marked with 3 speed signs at the longitudinal sides and at the rear according to § 58 of the German Regulations Authorising the Use of Vehicles for Road Traffic.

As a self-propelled working machine with a maximum speed of **up to 20 km/h**, the machine is only subject to the operating permit. No official licence plate is required.

According to § 4 FZV however, the machine must be permanently fitted with the first and last name and the place of residence (company and headquarters) of the vehicle owner on the left side which must be clearly legible.

As a self-propelled working machine with an allowed maximum speed of **above 20 km/h**, the machine is subject to having an operating permit and to having licence plates fitted.

The need of having licence plates fitted involved regular vehicle inspections by a technical inspection agency (TUEV, DEKRA).

Warning beacons

When driving on public roads and lanes, the amber warning beacons may be operated only if this is expressly specified in the individual operating permit or in the special approval (e.g. in case of excess-width vehicles).

Work lights

Always switch off the work lights when driving on public roads and lanes.

Folding front attachments

The subsequent fitting of folding front attachments will void the individual operating permit of the machine and its special approval.

To obtain a new individual operating permit, it is necessary to present the machine to the responsible technical inspection agency (TUEV, DEKRA) in order to prepare an individual expert's opinion according to § 19 of the German Regulations Authorising the Use of Vehicles for Road Traffic.

The new individual operating permit must be applied for with the administration office in charge (registration authority) by presenting the new individual expert's opinion and the special approval.

To make the preparation of the individual expert's opinion easier for the technical inspection agency, CLAAS can prepare a sample expert's opinion, stating the machine type, the serial no. and the year of construction upon request.

Especially the necessary weight increase on the rear axle must be observed so that the machine will not come off the ground when braking and its steering capability is maintained.

When the necessary additional weights are missing, the technical inspection agency will usually not prepare an individual expert's opinion.

The above does not apply when the machine in question is a new CLAAS self-propelled working machine with a folding front attachment fitted and the technical inspection agency has carried out acceptance at the works.

1.1.5 Note on electronic engine management

Modern, powerful diesel engines such as those used in CLAAS machines are equipped with an electronic engine management. The engines as well as the electronic engine management are optimally matched to the machine in question and the legal requirements in force regarding the emission of noise and pollutants.

Every intervention into the engine management programmed by the manufacturer results in adverse changes of the factory-set and optimum interplay of engine and machine and in failure to comply with both legal requirements regarding environmental properties and road traffic licensing regulations.

Any subsequent intervention into the electronic engine management will usually void the Operating permit and using the machine on public roads will be prohibited. A fine may be imposed to the owner/user of a machine that has been subsequently fiddled with.

Fiddling with the electronic engine management may result in an increased risk from an insurance law point of view, and consequently in loss of insurance cover in comprehensive and liability insurance.

The manufacturer's warranty shall be excluded in case of damage to the machine caused by subsequent interventions. In case the machine was financed, rented or leased, the forbidden intervention into the engine management may constitute a violation of the contract and may cause liability for damages.

CLAAS expressly dissociates from subsequent interventions into the electronic engine management of CLAAS machines and urgently advises sales partners and end customers not to carry out such interventions. If sales partners participate in such interventions, they may be liable for damage to the machine and any consequential damage.

1.2 Various components / Machine body

1.2.1 Spare parts and technical questions

Please specify the respective identification nos. when ordering spare parts and making technical inquiries:

- Machine
- Front attachment
- Engine
- Subassembly
and/or
- Software version / versions

This is necessary as otherwise, incorrect spare part deliveries may result.

The identification no. can be found on the respective type plate.

The identification no. / nos. of the software can be found in the respective menu.

1.2.2 Machine identification plate

The identification plate is affixed to the right machine side above the drive wheel.

**1**

14519

The diagram shows a rectangular identification plate for a CLAAS self-propelled harvester. It contains the following fields and labels:

- A**: Points to the 'Appellation commerciale' field.
- B**: Points to the 'Typ/Type' field.
- C**: Points to the 'Ident.Nr.' field.
- D**: Points to the 'Zul.Ges. Gewicht' field.
- E**: Points to the 'charge maximale admissible à L'avant' field.
- F**: Points to the 'Pauj. innee kW' field.
- G**: Points to the 'charge maximale admissible à L'arrière' field.
- H**: Points to the 'charge maximale admissible à L'arrière' field.
- I**: Points to the '24 R- 03' field.
- J**: Points to the '24 R- 03' field.

The plate also includes the following text:

- Typ/Type:
- Ident.Nr.:
- Ausführungen vorn u.hinten
- Zul.Ges. Gewicht
- zu .Achslast vorn u.hinten
- Pauj. innee kW
- Poids total autorise en charge
- charge maximale admissible à L'avant
- charge maximale admissible à L'arrière
- Appellation commerciale
- RECEPTION à la DIRE
- CLAAS Selbstfahrende Erntemaschinen GmbH
- 33428 Harzewinkel, Made in Germany

2415

2

	Designation
A	Equipment options
B	Maximum admissible total weight
C	Type
D	Identification no. (machine serial number)
E	Maximum admissible load on front axle
F	Year of construction
G	Rated capacity of engine (kW)
H	Maximum admissible load on rear axle
I	Approval no. according to ECE-R 24
J	Absorption coefficient according to ECE-R 24

67077



14520

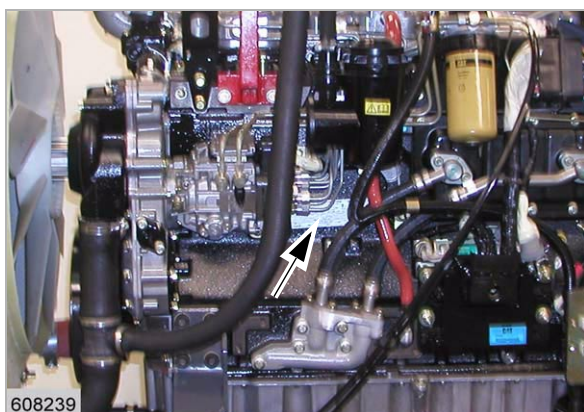
3

In addition, the identification number of the machine is provided on the right side of the machine in the frame under the operator's platform.

71381

1.2.3 Identification plate of CATERPILLAR 3056 E engine

The identification plate is located next to the injection pump.



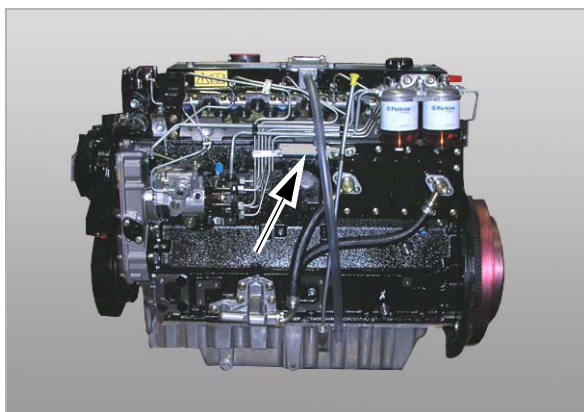
14521

4

1.2.4 Identification plate of PERKINS 1006-6T engine

The identification plate is located next to the injection pump.

71383



24696

5

1.2.5 Identification plate of CATERPILLAR C6.6 engine

The identification plate is located above the oil pan.

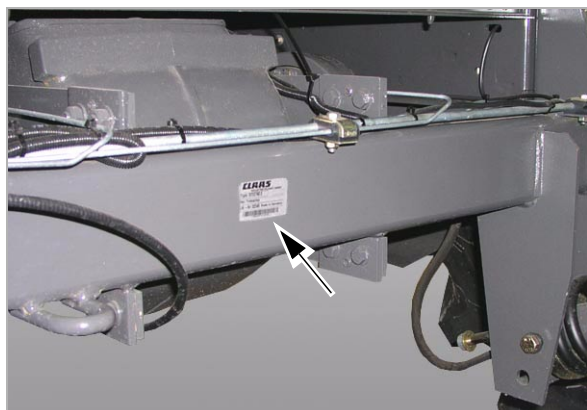


27296

6

1.2.6 Drive axle identification plate

The identification plate is affixed to the front side of the axle.



24558

7

1.2.7 Rear axle identification plate

The identification plate is fixed to the axle.



24551

8

71607

71544

1.2.8 Trailer hitch identification plate

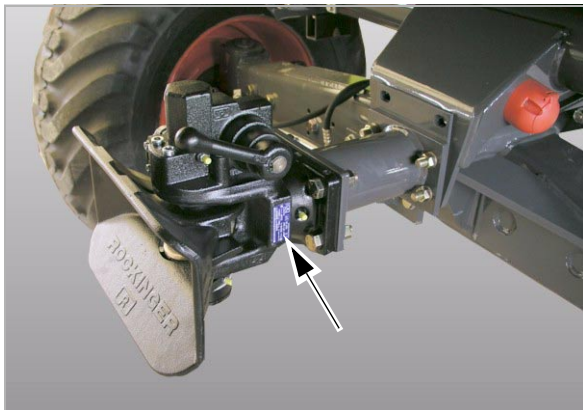
The identification plate is punched into the trailer hitch.



Trailer hitch type AK 64/1 B ...

24699

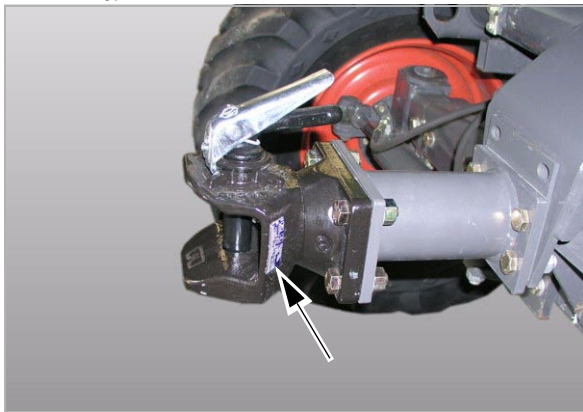
9



Trailer hitch type 841 ...

36440

10



Trailer hitch type 810 ...

40022

11

The identification plate is fixed to the trailer hitch.

1.2.9 Hitch block identification plate

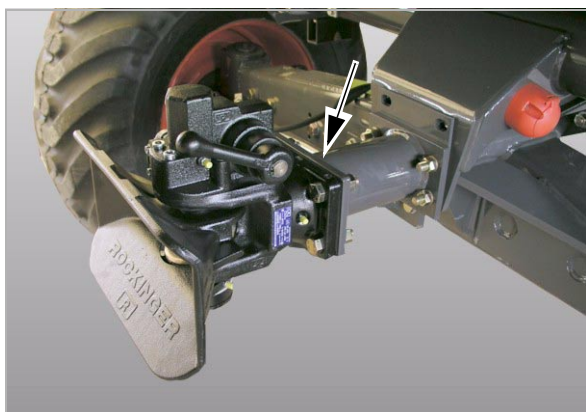
The identification plate is fixed to the hitch block.



12

on trailer hitch type AK 64/1 B ...

24699



13

on trailer hitch type 841 ...

36440



14

on trailer hitch type 810 ...

40022

The type number is punched on the hitch block.

1.2.10 Cab identification plate

The identification plate with the identification number is fitted on the left machine side.



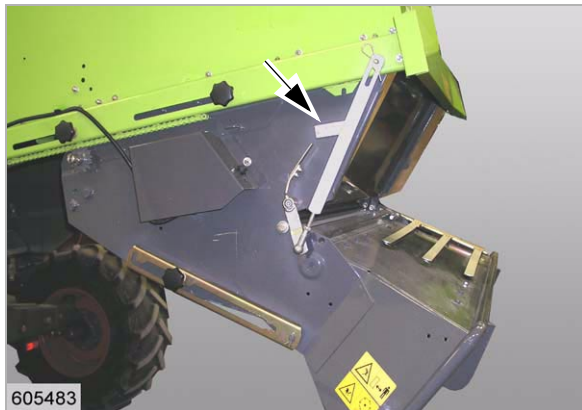
15

14524

1.2.11 Straw chopper identification plate

The identification plate with the identification number is fitted on the left machine side.

71388



16

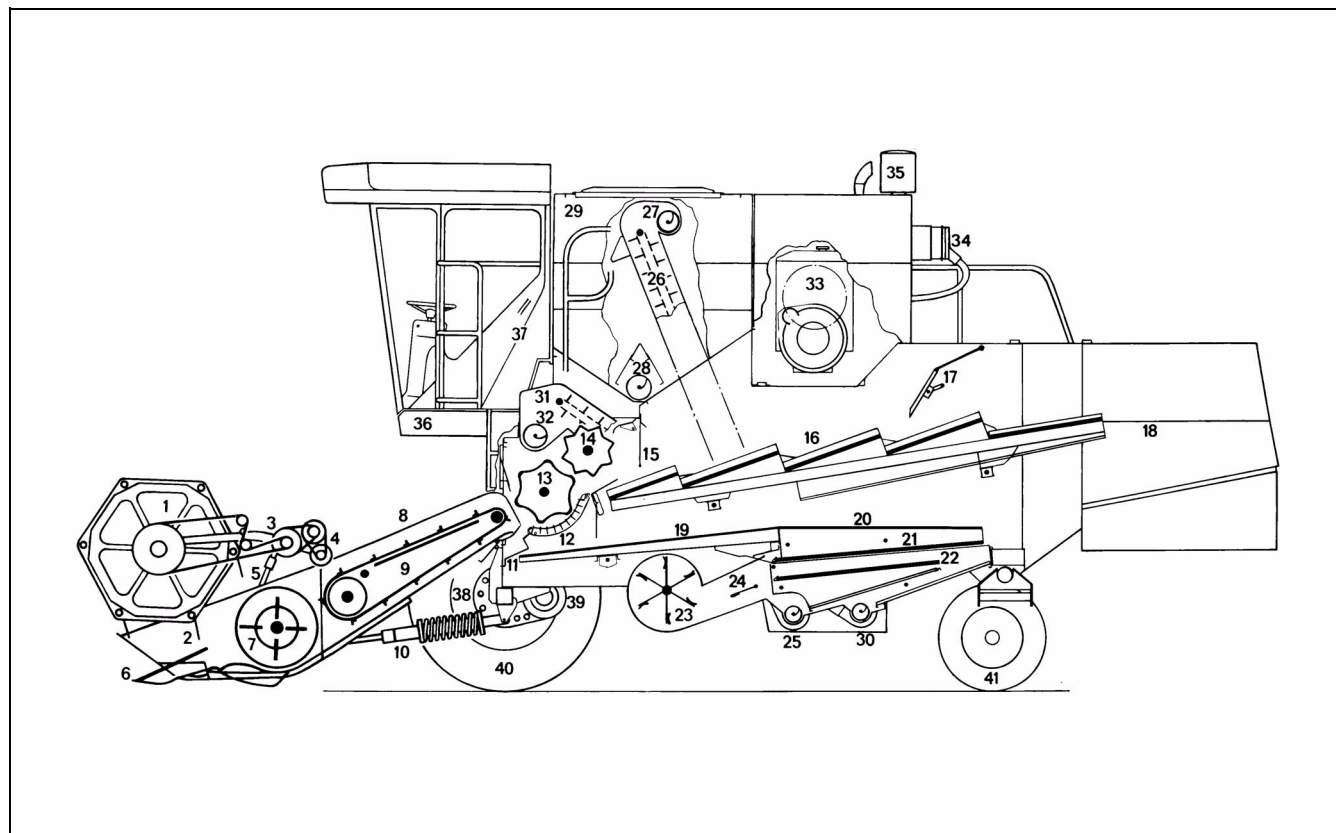
14523

2 Sectional view of machine

2.1 Attachment parts / machine body

72521

2.1.1 Machine overview



19319

1

	Designation
1	Reel
2	Reel tines
3	Reel intermediate drive
4	Reel variable speed drive
5	Reel cylinder
6	Crop lifter
7	Intake auger
8	Feed rake conveyor
9	Feed rake
10	Cutterbar cylinder
11	Stone trap
12	Concave
13	Threshing drum
14	Impeller
15	Deflector curtain

	Designation
16	Straw walker racks
17	Crankshaft with tines
18	Rear panel
19	Preparation floor
20	Sieve pan
21	Upper sieve
22	Lower sieve
23	Cleaning fan
24	Wind board
25	Clean grain auger
26	Clean grain elevator
27	Grain tank filler auger
28	Grain tank unloading auger
29	Grain tank
30	Returns auger
31	Returns elevator
32	Returns delivery auger
33	Engine
34	air filter
35	air filter intake screen
36	Operator's platform
37	Cab
38	Final drive gearbox
39	Manual gearbox
40	Traction wheels
41	Rear wheels

2.1.2 Access to the workplace and maintenance areas

The operator's workplace / driver's seat (1) is in the machine cab. The operating elements in the workplace are used to start or shut down the machine.

The machine maintenance areas allow maintenance or adjustment work to be performed.



Danger!

Danger of falling!

Death or serious injuries!

- Only enter areas that are designated as workplaces or maintenance areas and are secured by railings or similar.
- Other areas must be secured by additional rails / safety measures before they are entered.

- Enter the workplace in the cab via the front ladder (2) and via the maintenance area at the left-hand operator's platform (3).



2

39618



3

39615



39615

4

- Enter the maintenance area at the left-hand operator's platform (3) via the front ladder (2) in order to enter the cab, clean the left-hand cab window and adjust the mirror 👁️ .



39620

5

- Enter the maintenance area at the tank platform (2) via the rear ladder (1) 👁️ to refuel the machine and clean the cooling unit.
- Enter the maintenance area at the engine platform (3) via the engine platform maintenance area (2) to perform maintenance on the diesel engine.

3 Safety

3.1 General Information

45097

3.1.1 General information

The CE mark and the enclosed declaration of conformity document that the self-propelled machine fulfils the safety regulations of the EC Machinery Directive.

Before putting the machine into operation, read and follow the Operator's manual and the safety instructions!

857

3.1.2 Important information

The instructions contained in this manual should be carefully read and observed by all persons involved with the operation, maintenance and inspection of this CLAAS product in order to avoid hazards.

Read in particular the sections "Safety precautions", "Prior to initial operation" and "Prior to operation" in Operator's manual of the machine.

The use of spare parts, accessories and ancillary equipment other than genuine CLAAS products or those which have been tested and approved by CLAAS, may change the specified design characteristics of this CLAAS machine or detract from its functional performance, with a possible adverse effect on the active and/or passive operational safety of the machine and its occupational safety standards (accident prevention).

CLAAS is in no way liable for any damage or personal injury caused through the use of other than original or approved CLAAS parts, accessories and ancillary equipment.

106459

3.1.3 Intended use

The CLAAS combine harvester is designed exclusively for professional use in line with the recognised regulations of agricultural practices in agricultural harvesting of grain.

The combine harvester is a self-propelled harvesting machine with a fitted front attachment (machine), which is approved by the manufacturer, and is suitable and intended for harvesting grain in fields during travel. Grain here refers to cultivated cereal and legume crops such as wheat, rye, barley, oats, rice, rape seed, maize, durra, soya beans and sunflowers.

The combine harvester takes the grain from the front attachment and conveys it via a conveying unit to the threshing and separating units. There, the grains are separated from straw and chaff. The straw and chaff are deposited on the field using the distribution units behind the combine harvester. The grain is stored temporarily in the combine harvester's grain tank and then loaded on a transport vehicle by a conveying unit.

When the combine harvester is driven on public roads, a front attachment approved by the manufacturer can be fitted on the front, depending on the applicable regulations, and driven with the combine harvester, or a trailer approved by the manufacturer that is loaded with the front attachment can be coupled to the trailer hitch and towed.

The machine may only be used, maintained and serviced by persons who are familiar with the machine and briefed on the hazards that may arise as a result of the machine's functions.

Compliance with the conditions of operation, maintenance and servicing as specified in the operator's manual and by the manufacturer also constitute essential elements for the intended use.

The relevant accident prevention regulations, all other generally recognised regulations on safety and occupational medicine and the road traffic regulations must be observed by users and owners at all times.

Any use other than this is considered "unintended", and the manufacturer is not liable for any resulting damage. All liability in this case is borne by the user.

For specific details, you may request information on intended use in exceptional situations from CLAAS.

106464

3.1.4 Reasonable foreseeable misuse

Use outside of intended use  constitutes use not intended by the manufacturer of the machine and therefore amounts to misuse for the purposes of the machinery directive. The manufacturer accepts no liability for damage resulting from this. All liability is borne by the user.

Misuse of the CLAAS combine harvester includes:

- Use of areas and premises that are not described in the operator's manual as workplaces
- Performance of adjustment work, cleaning work and maintenance work against the specifications in the operator's manual
- Performance of fault elimination and servicing work with drives and/or the diesel engine running
- Nonobservance of warning signs on the machine and in the operator's manual
- Performance of servicing and repair work by untrained personnel
- Unauthorised modifications to the machine

- Attachment of non-approved additional equipment
- Use of non-original CLAAS spare parts
- Use in a stationary position
- Use to harvest goods that are not classified as grain
- Use as a carrier vehicle for units not approved by the manufacturer
- Use as a general towing vehicle / carrier vehicle
- Use for compacting goods and subsurfaces
- People transport
- Goods transport

3.1.5 Safety and accident prevention regulations

- In addition to the instructions contained in this operator's manual, also observe the general safety and accident preventive regulations.
- Always check the operating and road safety of the machine before using it.
- Always comply with local traffic regulations when driving on public roads.
- Before starting work, familiarise yourself with all the controls and instruments and their functions. During work or road travel it is too late!
- Before starting the diesel engine ensure that all guards are installed and in their correct position.
- Start the diesel engine only from the operator's seat. Never attempt to start the diesel engine by shortening across the starting motor terminals as the machine may immediately start to move.
- Before starting the diesel engine and before starting up the machine:
 - Ensure that there are no persons / children or objects in the hazard area.
 - Keep an eye on children!
 - Sound the horn!
- Before driving off:
 - Ensure that there are no persons / children or objects in the hazard area.
 - Ensure adequate visibility!
 - Check if persons / children are present near the machine!
 - Keep an eye on children!
 - Sound the horn!
- Never run the diesel engine in a closed building!
- Clothing worn by the operator must be close-fitting. Avoid wearing loose jackets, shirts or ties.
- Handle fuel with care. – It is highly flammable. Never refuel the machine in the vicinity of naked flames or sparks. Do not smoke during refuelling.
- Always stop the diesel engine and remove the ignition key before refuelling. Fill the fuel tank outdoors. Clean up any spilled fuel immediately!

- Prevent fires by keeping the machine clean!
- Take care when handling brake fluid and electrolytes.
Toxic and corrosive!
- Ensure an adequate safety distance from low-elevation power lines. Be careful not to damage any broadcast or radio antennas.
- The warning and instruction signs placed on the cutterbar provide important recommendations for safe operating.
These instructions involve your safety – observe them at all times.
Replace any damaged and illegible safety decals immediately.
When parts with safety decals are replaced, ensure that the suitable safety decals are fitted to the new parts.
- Do not stay in the engine compartment while the diesel engine is running.
- Ensure that the access ladder, the platform and other access areas of the machine are always free from oil and grease.

3.1.6 General safety and accident prevention regulations for combine harvesters

- Never stand inside the range of rotation of the unloading auger tube while the engine is running.
Do not allow any other persons to stand there as well!

3.1.7 Prior to operation, general

- Observe the maximum permissible axle loads and total weights.
- Before starting to drive and operate the forage harvester, adjust the mirrors to give full vision of the road and of the operating area behind.
- Before driving the forage harvester always check brakes for correct function and regularly check the level of the brake fluid. Only use the specified type of brake fluid and change the brake fluid at the recommended intervals.
Take care when handling brake fluid.
Toxic and corrosive!
 - Dispose of used brake fluid in a way that is harmless to the environment and in accordance with existing anti-pollution regulations.
- The left and right brake pedals must be locked together for transport and road travel so that both front wheel brakes will be applied simultaneously.
- Projecting parts must be removed or adjusted to within the normal width of the machine before driving on public roads and lanes.
- Before driving off, always check the front and rear wheels for the correct tyre pressures!

3.1.8 Additional weights

Some front attachments must not be used without fitting the corresponding number of additional weights to the machine. Please take the correct number of additional weights from this Operator's Manual.

2416

3.1.9 Transporting passengers

- Only such persons may be transported on the instructor's seat who provide instructions regarding the machine.
- The carrying of passengers is otherwise not permitted.

2417

3.1.10 General driving operations

- For road travel with a raised front attachment the safety switch must be switched off.
- Never leave the operator's platform when driving.
- The grain tank / hopper must be empty when driving on public roads and lanes.
- When driving on public roads and lanes, the finger bars, crop lifters or divider points of front attachments must be covered.
- Be particularly careful when crossing level crossings. Always stop in front of the St. Andrew's cross when crossing the level crossing quickly and without stopping is not possible due to traffic or an obstacle. Otherwise cross the level crossing without stopping and waiting.
- The handling of the machine is influenced e.g. by the road surface and the attachments. Therefore, the handling of the machine must be adapted to existing terrain and ground conditions. Take particular care when operating or turning on a slope and with a full grain tank / hopper. – Never take the transmission out of gear when driving on a slope!
- When the diesel engine is not running or in case of power steering failure, much more effort is required to steer the machine.
- In case of failures of the steering system and brake system, stop the machine immediately. Have the problems right away rectified!

3701

3.1.11 Automotive operation of combine harvester

- When travelling on public roads swing in the grain tank unloading tube all the way.
- When travelling on public roads close the grain tank cover.
- Existing traffic regulations must be observed.

3.1.12 Driving operations on slopes

- When travelling downhill with a slope of more than 7%, always shift one gear down (braking effect of diesel engine)!
- When travelling downhill in general, never exceed the allowed max. ground speed of 20 (25) km/h.

2419

3.1.13 Leaving the machine

- When leaving the machine, ensure that it will not roll away (apply parking brake, wheel chocks). Shut off the engine. Remove the ignition key and lock the operator's cab.
- When the machine is shut down for an extended period, turn off the battery isolating switch.
- Never leave the machine unattended as long as the engine is still running!
- Lower the front attachments to the ground before leaving the machine!

2420

3.1.14 Front attachments and trailers

- Support raised front attachments securely before doing any work underneath the units.
- Take particular care when mounting front attachments to the basic machine and when attaching a trailer.
- Owing to their function, front attachments and feeder mechanisms such as belts, rollers, chains, worm gears, reels and the like cannot be completely protected by design measures; for this reason, an adequate safety distance must be maintained from these moving elements during operation. These instructions also apply to all other accessories operated on the machine.
- No person must ever be allowed between the machine and the front attachment unless the parking brake is applied and/or the wheels are chocked so that the vehicle can not start to move on its own.
- Front attachments and trailers must only be attached to the coupling devices provided for that purpose. Observe the maximum permissible load capacity of the trailer hitch.
- Hitch the trailer correctly to the forage harvester. Be alert when connecting a trailer to the forage harvester.
- Before disconnecting a front attachment always make sure that it is stable and securely parked.
- When attaching front attachments always make sure that the load on the existing rear axle is sufficient to maintain the forage harvester's steering and braking capabilities.

3.1.15 Crop receptacle / straw receptacle

- Under the guards of the chopping unit dangerous, revolving cutting mechanisms are operating which may run on after the drive has been disengaged. Therefore, always stay a safe distance away from the chopping unit until the unit has come to a complete standstill.

36728

3.1.16 Grain delivery

- The augers located inside the grain tank cannot be shielded completely against accidental contact due to their function.
- Before mounting or entering the grain tank, make sure that no other person can restart the engine.
- Enter the grain tank only through the opening provided for this purpose.

2422

3.1.17 Air conditioner

- The air conditioning system is filled with CFC refrigerant. CFC refrigerants must not be allowed to escape into the atmosphere.
 - Therefore, please take appropriate precautions when working on the air conditioner.
- Maintenance and repair work may only be carried out by specialised air conditioning system service workshops. Refrigerant must always be sucked out and disposed of for recycling.

37000

3.1.18 Adjustment and maintenance work

The drives on the machine will not be automatically secured from moving after the engine has been switched off.

Moreover, when it comes to adjustments, it may be necessary to turn the drives.

For these reasons the following precautions should be observed:

- Before adjustment, cleaning and maintenance operations and before correcting malfunctions:
 - Switch off the threshing mechanism.
 - Switch off the front attachment.
 - Switch off the grain tank unloading mechanism.
 - Stop the engine.
 - Disconnect the battery isolating switch.
- Before adjustment, cleaning and maintenance operations and before correcting malfunctions at the hydraulic system, lower the front attachment and/or feeder unit all the way.
- Always turn off the battery isolating switch before carrying out any electrical repairs on the machine.

67079

- Once the threshing unit has been switched off, the drives will continue turning for a short period of time. One must wait until all the drives have stopped before carrying out any work.
- Please ensure that it is not possible for anyone to accidentally start the machine or turn any of the drives whilst work is being carried out.
- Escaping fluid (fuel or hydraulic oil) under high pressure can penetrate the skin and cause serious injury. If any fluid is injected into the skin, consult a doctor immediately as otherwise serious infections may result.
- Repair work on the hydraulic system may only be carried out by specialist workshops.
- Be careful when opening the radiator cap. The radiator is under pressure when the engine is hot.
- Do not attempt to mount a tyre unless you have the proper equipment and experience to perform the job safely.
- Dispose of oil, fuel and filters in a way that is harmless to the environment and in accordance with existing anti-pollution regulations!
- Retighten the wheel nuts and wheel bolts regularly!

2424

3.1.19 Accumulators

Be especially careful when working on hydraulic systems equipped with accumulators. Hydraulic systems with accumulators are under high pressure!

Only have qualified workshops carry out repair work on the hydraulic system.

2425

3.1.20 Antifreeze

Antifreeze is easily inflammable!

Keep antifreeze away from children!

Vapours may cause sleepiness and a dazed feeling.

Repeated contact may cause chapped or rough skin.

The following problems may arise:

- Irritation of the eyes
- Irritation of the respiratory tract
- Headache
- Giddiness

Effects on the central nervous system in case of high doses:

- Difficulty in breathing
- Unconsciousness

Swallowing:

- Sickness
- Vomiting
- Liver damage

Antifreeze must not come in contact with the environment.

- Collect antifreeze in a suitable container!
- Dispose of antifreeze in a way that is harmless to the environment and in accordance with existing anti-pollution regulations.

2427

3.1.21 First aid measures

Inhaling:

- Make the person inhale fresh air and consult a doctor, depending on the symptoms.
- Remove the person from the hazard area.

Eye contact:

- Thoroughly flush with water for several minutes. If necessary, consult a doctor.

Skin contact:

- Thoroughly clean with plenty of water and soap and remove polluted and soaked clothing immediately, consult a doctor if skin is irritated (redness etc.).

Swallowing:

- Do not cause vomiting, consult a doctor immediately.

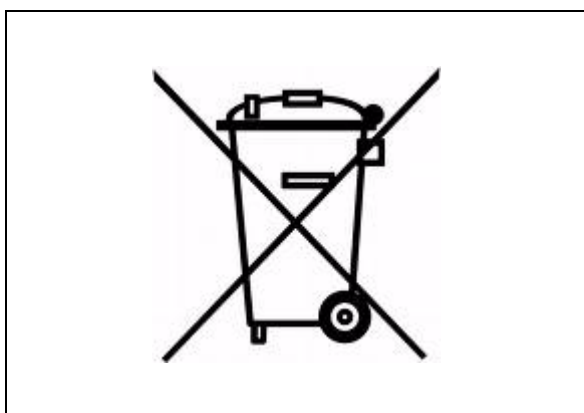
107360

3.1.22 Decommissioning and disposal

When the machine (or its components) reaches the end of its useful life and is surrendered as scrap, the components must be disposed of in the correct manner. The regulations of the local authorities responsible must be observed.

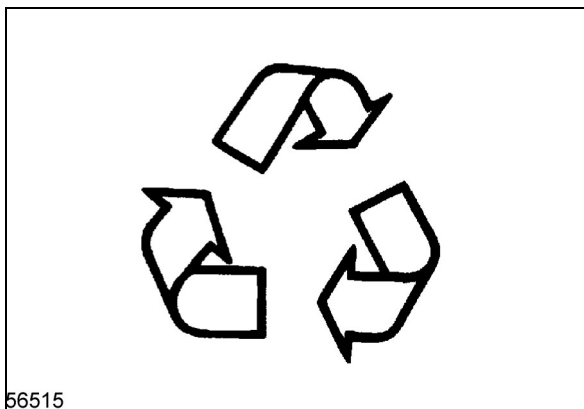
The operating materials in the machine require special disposal and must not be released into the environment. More information on disposal can be obtained from the local authorities responsible, your CLAAS dealer or the CLAAS service department.

- Do not dispose of products marked with the symbol (1) in your domestic waste at the end of their service life.



39207

1



56515

7761

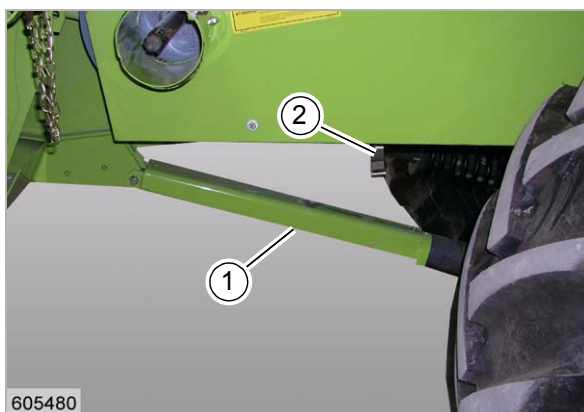
2

- Recycle used materials marked with the symbol (2) in accordance with their labelling.
- Recycle packaging material, do not dispose of it in domestic waste.
- Recycle plastics that are labelled with material information, e.g. PP TV 20, do not dispose of them in domestic waste.
- Used batteries contain hazardous substances and must be taken back by the distributor, disposed of correctly or delivered to a collection point. Do not dispose of used batteries in domestic waste.
- Operating materials, such as oils, hydraulic fluids, brake fluids or fuels, must be treated as hazardous waste and disposed of correctly.
- Have refrigerants disposed of only by specialist companies with experienced personnel and the necessary technical equipment. Refrigerants must never be released into the atmosphere. Have refrigerants disposed of by your CLAAS dealer. Observe country-specific regulations.
- Follow the regulations of the local authorities responsible.

71723

3.1.23 Applying the feeder housing safety lock

The engaged safety lock prevents an uncontrolled drop of the feed rake conveyor and the mounted front attachment.



605480

14528

3



Danger!

Front attachment, reel and feeder unit may drop in an uncontrolled way.

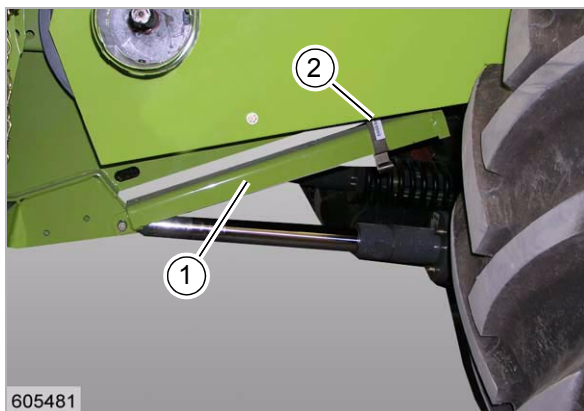
Death or serious injury.

- Fit the safety locks.
- Keep a safe distance from the hazard area.
- Completely raise the feeder housing. 
- Release safety lock (1) at latch (2) and fold onto the hydraulic ram.
- Then lower the feed rake conveyor onto the engaged safety lock.

71724

3.1.24 Moving out the feed rake conveyor safety lock

While the combine-harvester is in operation, the cutter-bar cylinder safety lock (1) must be moved up and arrested by locking pin (2).



14529

4



Danger!

Front attachment, reel and feeder unit may drop in an uncontrolled way.

Death or serious injury.

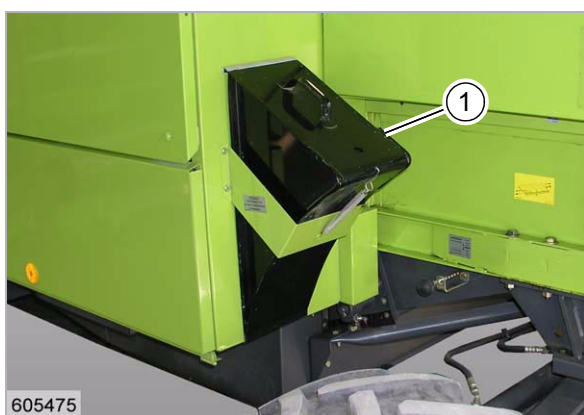
- Fit the safety locks.
- Keep a safe distance from the hazard area.

- Completely raise the feeder housing. 
- Move cutterbar cylinder safety lock (1) up and attach it to locking pin (2).

3.1.25 Secure the machine with wheel chocks so it will not roll away

71740

One wheel chock (1) is provided on the machine.

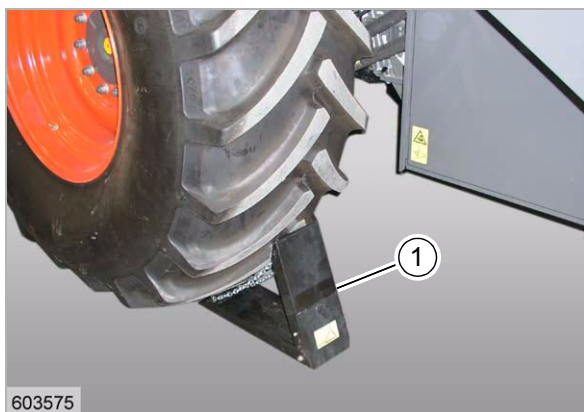


14533

5

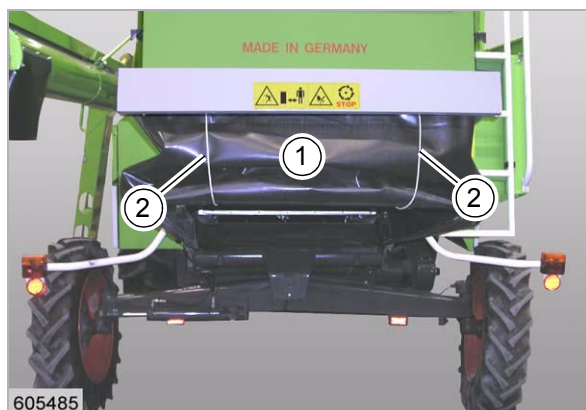
- Place the wheel chock (1) in front of or behind the front wheel, depending on the slope.
- Place the wheel chocks (1) close to the drive wheels.

Now the machine is protected against rolling away.



2732

6



605485

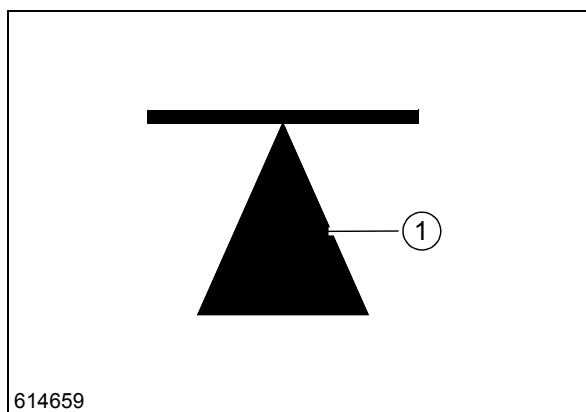
14532

7

3.1.26 Securing the straw guide apron in raised position

Whenever moving the combine on public roads, raise the straw guide apron (1) which is mounted on the rear hood. Secure the apron in the raised position with ropes (2). This way all taillights and reflectors will be visible for all road users.

- Secure straw guide apron (1) in raised position with ropes (2) every time before travelling on public roads.



614659

5298

8

3.1.27 Jack up the machine

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter.



Danger!

Jacking up the machine.

Death or serious injury.

- Use jack / jack stand with sufficient capacity.
- Use reliable jack / jack stand.
- Use jack / jack stand on solid and level ground.
- Apply the jack / jack stand at the position of the machine intended for this purpose.

The jacking points / supporting points are marked by symbol (1) on the axles.

71772

3.1.28 Fire extinguisher

The machine is delivered ex works with one fire extinguisher (1).

- Before operating the machine, mount the fire extinguisher (1) at the position on the machine provided for this purpose.

The functionality of the fire extinguisher (s) must be checked every two years. The date of manufacture or the date last checked is shown on the extinguisher.

The testing intervals may differ in other countries. In this case, the information on the fire extinguisher is valid for the respective countries.

Country variant for Sweden: The machine is delivered ex works with a second fire extinguisher (1).

- Before commissioning the machine, mount the second fire extinguisher (1) at position on the machine provided for this purpose.



605476

14530

9

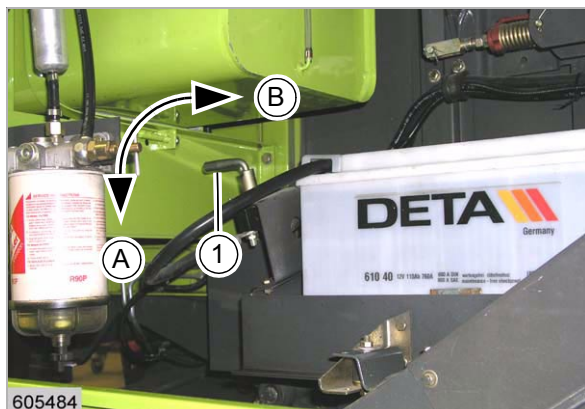
- Observe the regulations in force in the respective countries.

3.1.29 Battery isolating switch

The battery isolating switch (1) switches the power supply of the machine on and off.

Switch the battery isolating switch (1) off every day after machine use is finished and in case of emergency.

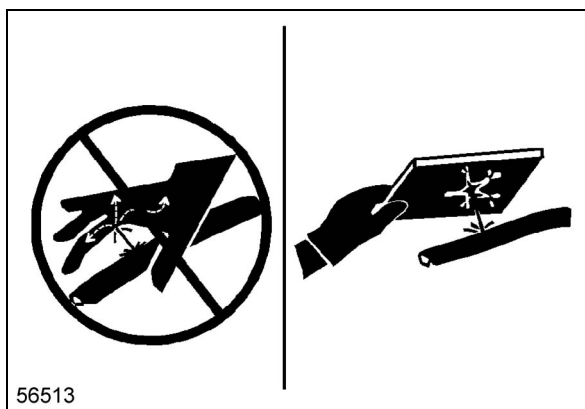
Do not switch off the battery isolating switch (1) while the engine is running!



10

Position	Designation
A	Power supply is OFF (by turning anti-clockwise).
B	Power supply is ON (by turning clockwise).

3.1.30 Danger of injury due to escaping hydraulic liquid



11



Danger!

Liquids under high pressure.

Liquids penetrate the skin and cause serious injury.

- Only have authorised and qualified workshops carry out work on the hydraulic system.
- Check hose lines at regular intervals. Search for leaks using a piece of wood or cardboard.
- Ensure that the oil jet will not be directed towards your body.
- Replace any damaged hose lines.
- Replace hose lines 6 years after the date of manufacture at the latest.



Danger!

Dealing incorrectly with injuries due to hydraulic fluids.

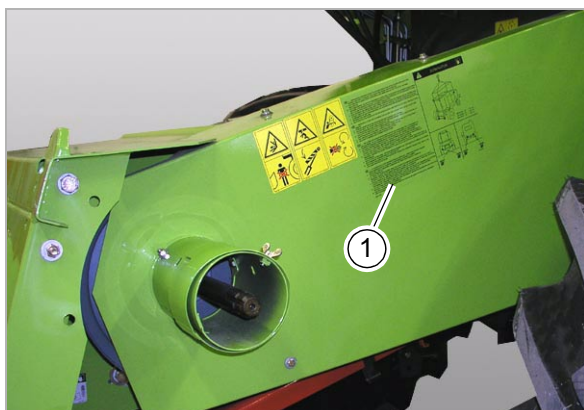
Death or serious injury.

Even a pinhole can result in severe injuries.

- If hydraulic fluid gets in the skin or eyes, have the injury treated by a medical specialist immediately.

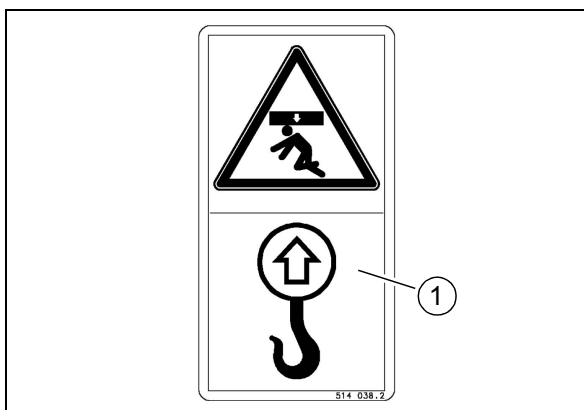
3.1.31 Loading and tying down the machine

The safety decal (1) shows all permitted tie-down points on the machine.



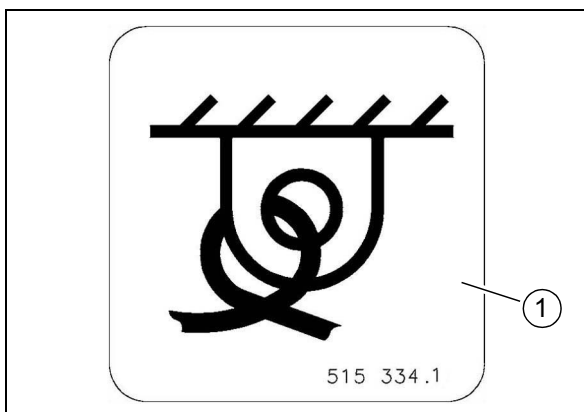
12

24611



13

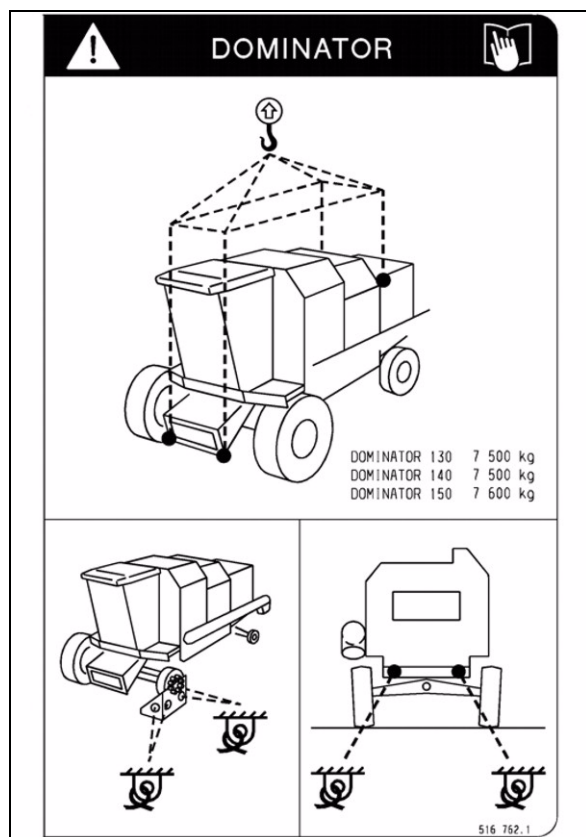
65



14

9602

- Suspend the machine into the devices intended for this purpose and marked with hazard warning signs (1).
- Tie down the machine with the devices intended for this purpose and marked with safety decals (1).



30867

15



Danger!

Lifting of heavy components.

Death or serious injuries!

- Never stand in the hazard area beneath a suspended load.
- Use only the marked slinging points and tie-down points.
- Improper lifting or tying down may result in machine displacement and cause injury or damage.
- Before slinging or tying down the machine, apply the parking brake.
- The feed rake conveyor must be fully raised before slinging the machine. Before persons are allowed beneath the feed rake conveyor, its support fitted on the lift cylinders must be applied.
- Use lift eyes and/or a carrier beam for lifting the machine at the front. If no lift eyes and/or carrier beam is available, please contact your CLAAS dealer.
- Use only flawless and sufficiently dimensioned lifting devices for lifting the machine.
- Protect your lifting devices against sharp corners and edges, e.g. by protectors.

3.1.32 Removing the lift eyes

- Remove the lift eyes and keep them for future transport.

**WARNING:**

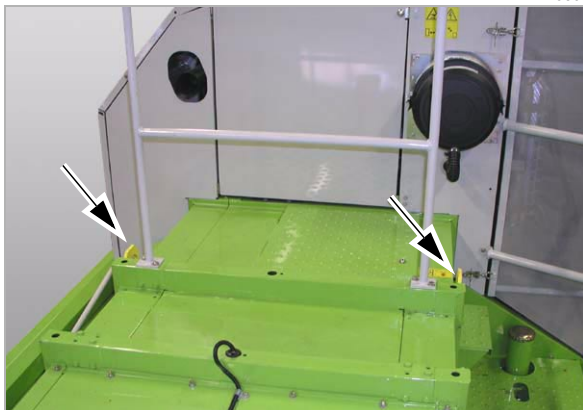
Improper transport!

Material damage to the machine.

- Lift eyes removed during the initial machine delivery must be kept for future transport.

**16**

24680

**17**

27269

3.2 Safety rules

Before putting the machine into operation, read and follow the Operator's manual and the safety instructions!

76

3.2.1 Identification of warning and danger signs

All parts of this operator's manual having to do with your safety or the safe operation of the front attachment or the machine are marked with the following signs. Please pass on all safety precautions to any other users of the machine as well.



Danger!

Nature and source of danger

Consequences: death or serious injury

– Countermeasures



Warning!

Nature and source of danger

Consequences: injuries

– Countermeasures



Caution!

Nature and source of danger

Consequences: material damage

– Countermeasures



Note!

Nature and source of information

Consequences: enhanced machine economy or easy assembly

– Measures



Environment!

Nature and source of danger

Consequences: damage to the environment

– Countermeasures

3.3 Safety decals

859

3.3.1 General information on safety decals

The danger zones on the machine or on the front attachment which cannot be eliminated by design or protective measures, are identified by safety decals. These safety decals help to alert persons to hazards which can cause personal injury.

The safety decals consist of two components:

- Part 1 shows the risk of injury in a warning triangle.
- Part 2 shows how injury and accidents can be prevented by appropriate actions.

The pictures on the safety decals consist of generally understandable pictograms. As far as possible, the safety decals must be located in close proximity to the hazardous area.

The original CLAAS safety decals are equipped with the CLAAS part number and the date of manufacture.

The positioning and meanings of the safety decals are explained below:

- When ordering, please use the 10-digit CLAAS part number given ahead of every safety decal,
- the safety decal number given in () shows the correct position of the safety decals in the associated picture,
- followed by an explanation of the safety decal graphics in text form.

**Danger!**

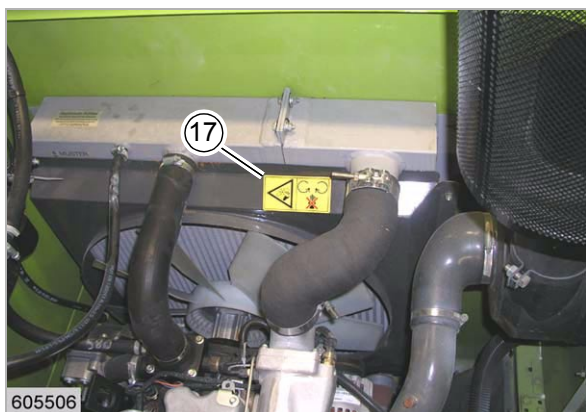
Hazard points on the machine.

Death or serious injury!

- Hazard warning signs / safety decals that are damaged or unrecognisable must be replaced immediately by new ones.
- When parts that have hazard warning signs / safety decals are replaced, always make sure to attach the relevant new hazard warning signs / safety decals to each new part.

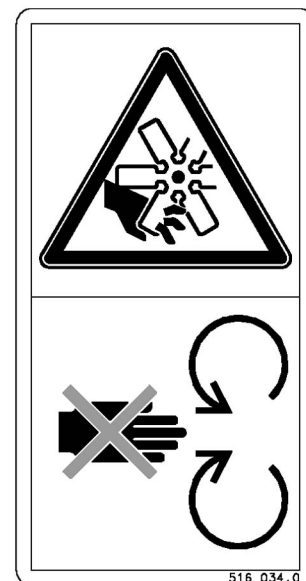
3.3.2 Engine

00 0516 034 0 (17)



18

14569



19

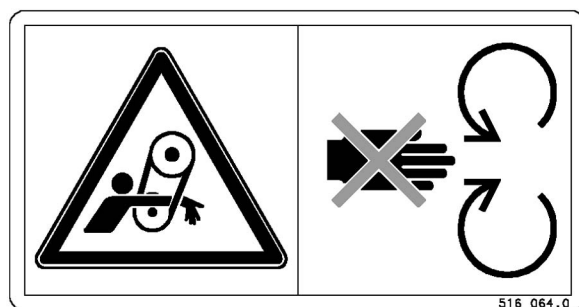
Do not open or remove safety shields while engine is running.

00 0516 064 0 (22)



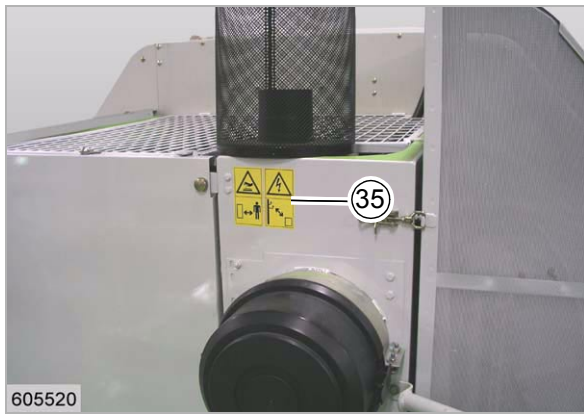
20

14578



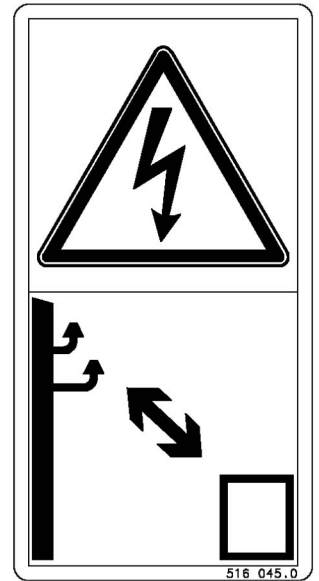
21

Do not open or remove safety shields while engine is running.



22

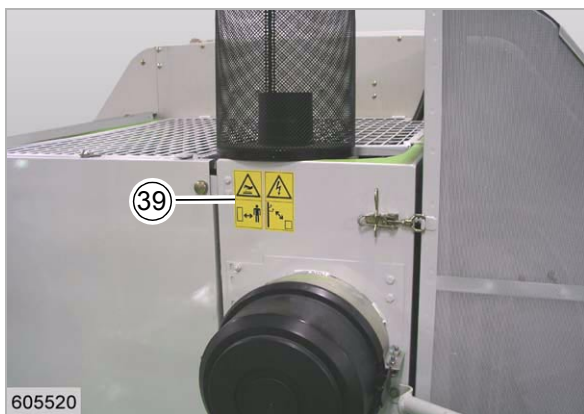
00 0516 045 0 (35)



23

Keep sufficient distance away from electrical power lines.

00 0516 046 0 (39)



24



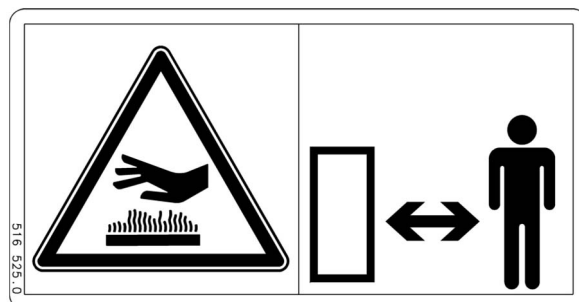
25

Stay clear of hot surfaces.



26

00 0516 525 0 (39)



27

Stay clear of hot surfaces.



28

3.3.3 Chassis

71830

00 0516 047 0 (40)



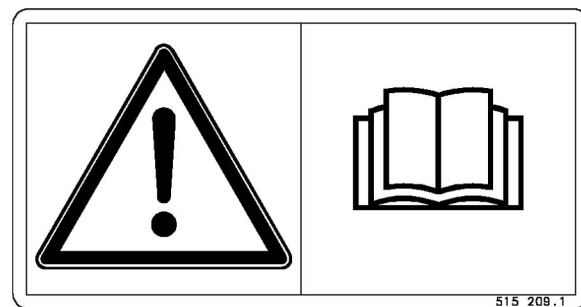
30

Use wheel chock before machine is uncoupled or parked.

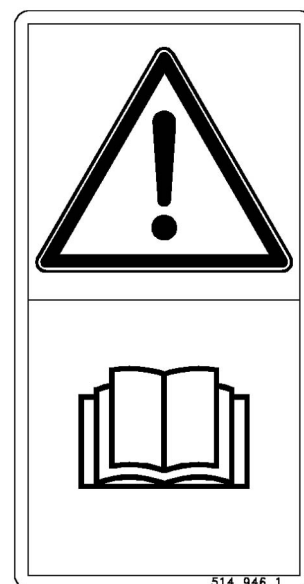


29

14674

3.3.4 Cab / Operator's platform**00 0515 209 1 (2)****31****32**

Carefully read operator's manual before handling the machine. Observe instructions and safety rules when operating.

00 0514 946 1 (2)**33****34**

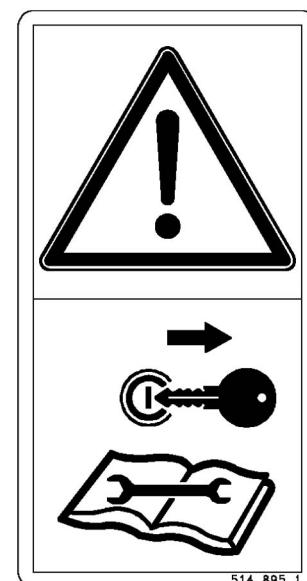
Carefully read operator's manual before handling the machine. Observe instructions and safety rules when operating.



14538

35

00 0514 895 1 (33)



36

Shut off engine and remove key before performing maintenance or repair work.

00 0516 044 0 (34)



14575

37



38

Do not ride on platform or ladder.



39

00 0516 058 0 (53)



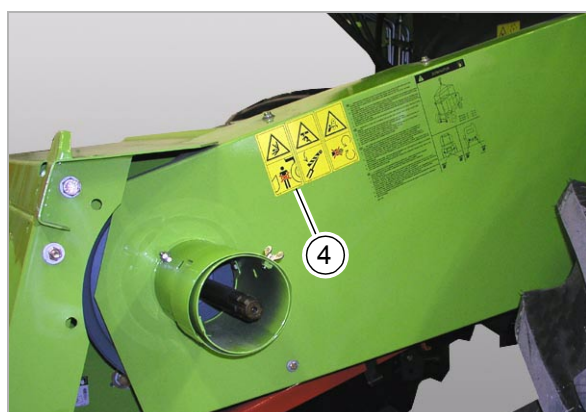
40

Do not operate machine unless an approved fire extinguisher is installed.

71915

3.3.5 Feeder unit

00 0516 042 0 (4)



41

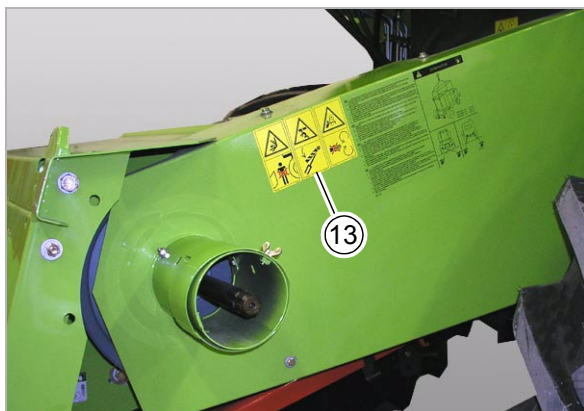


42



43

Never stand in the hazard area between the front attachment and the machine.



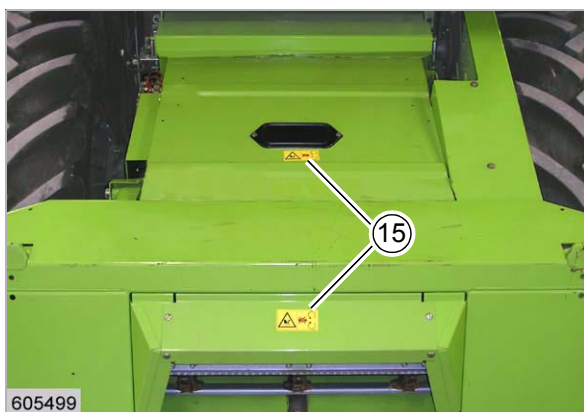
44

24611



45

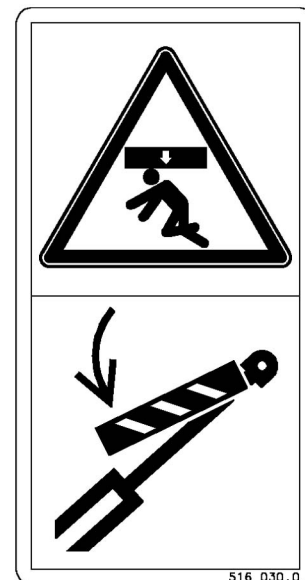
14540



47

14560

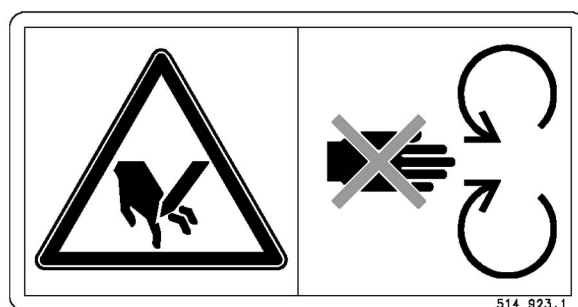
00 0516 030 0 (13)



46

Secure lifting cylinder with locking device before getting in hazardous area.

00 0514 923 1 (15)



48

Do not open or remove safety shields while engine is running.



24611

49

00 0516 039 0 (22)



516 039.0

50

Do not open or remove safety shields while engine is running.

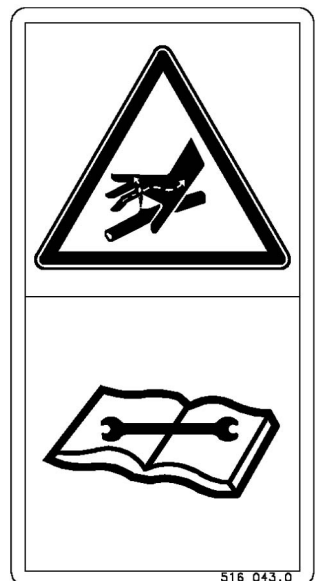
00 0516 043 0 (36)



605491

14540

51



516 043.0

52

Avoid fluid escaping under pressure. Consult technical manual for service procedures.

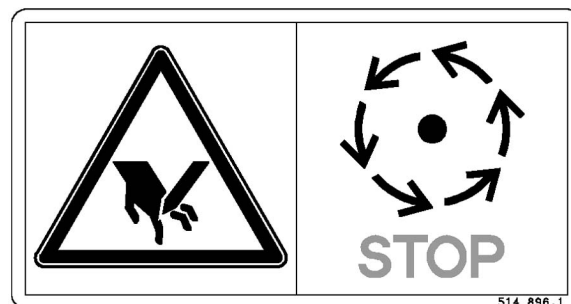
3.3.6 Threshing mechanism

00 0514 896 1 (5)



53

Touch machine parts only after they have come to a complete halt.



56



54



55



57



58

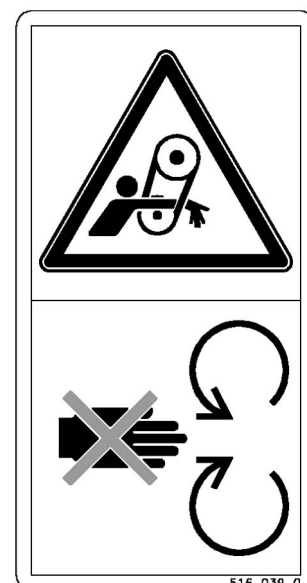


59



61

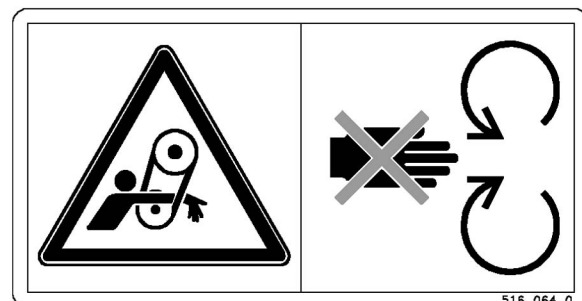
00 0516 039 0 (22)



60

Do not open or remove safety shields while engine is running.

00 0516 064 0 (22)



62

Do not open or remove safety shields while engine is running.

3.3.7 Separation

00 0516 039 0 (22)



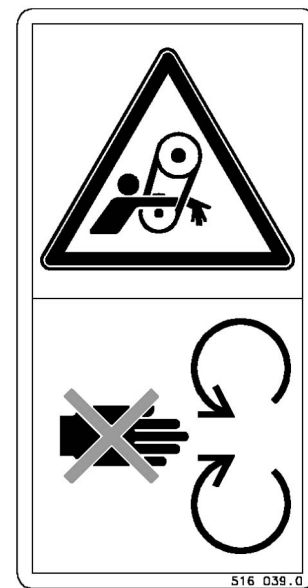
63

14676



64

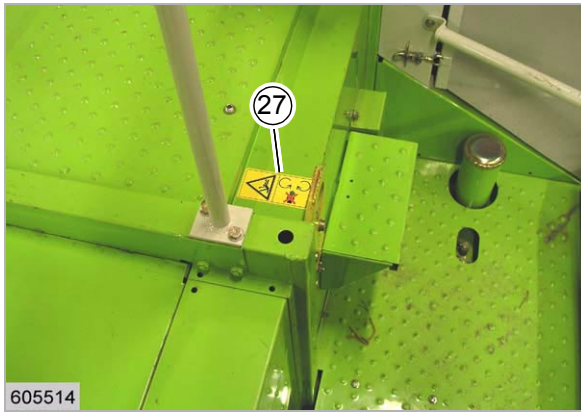
14677



65

Do not open or remove safety shields while engine is running.

00 0516 054 0 (27)



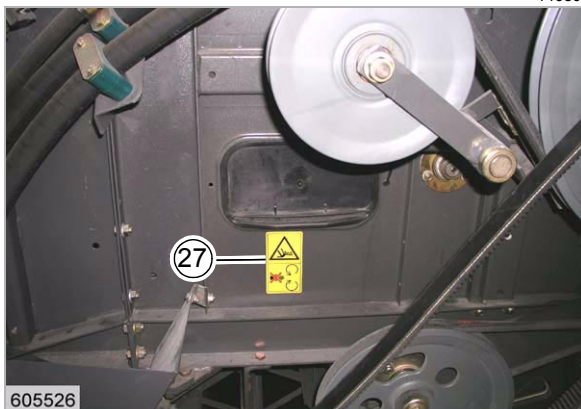
66

14571



67

14680



68

14681

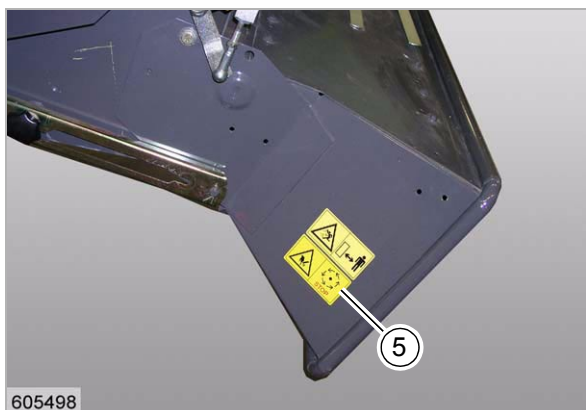


69

Do not open or remove safety shields while engine is running.

3.3.8 Crop receptacle / straw receptacle

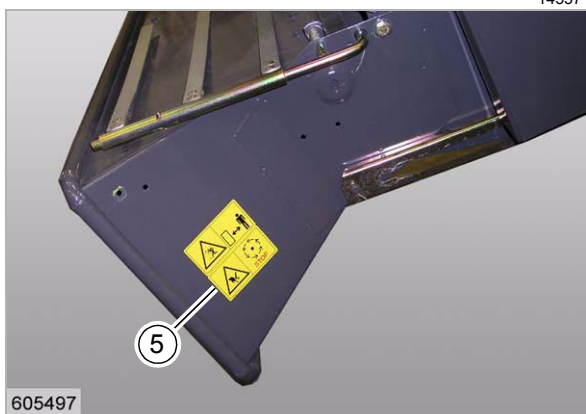
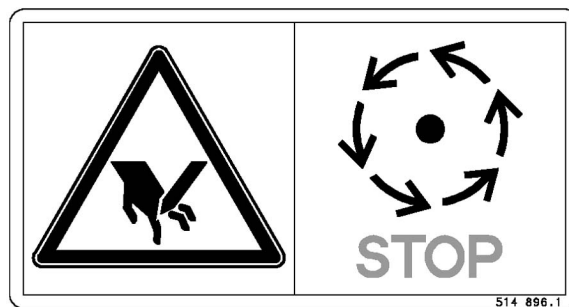
00 0514 896 1 (5)



70

Touch machine parts only after they have come to a complete halt.

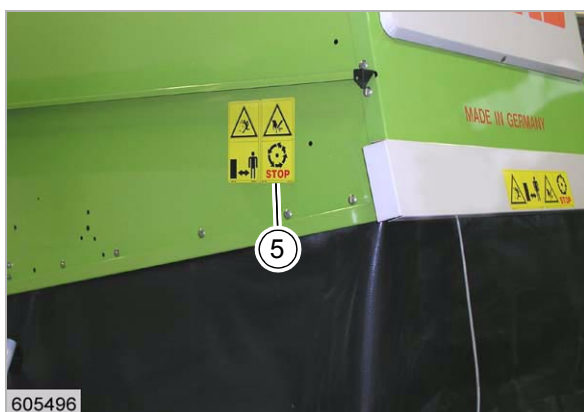
73



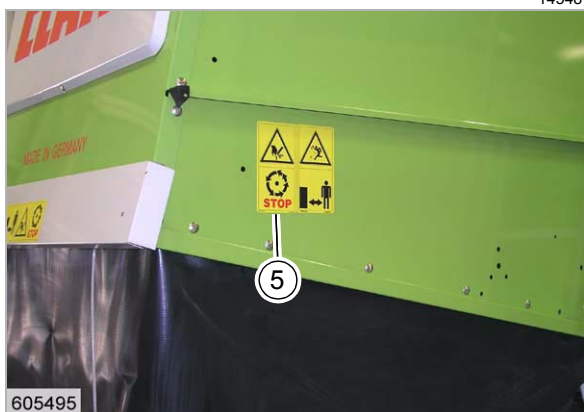
71



72



74

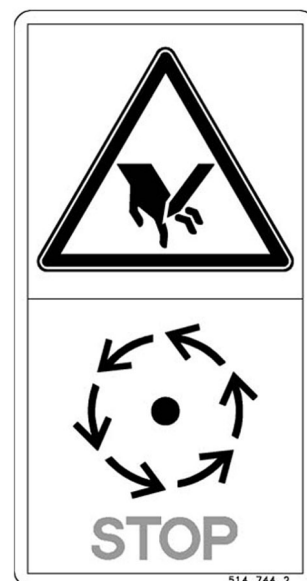


75



77

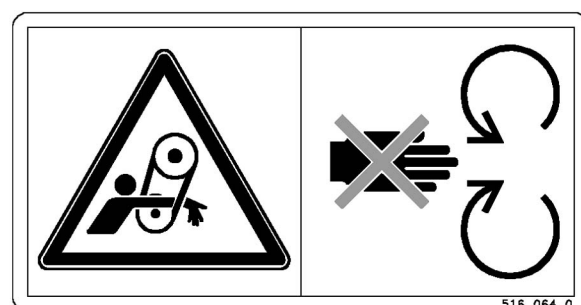
00 0514 744 1 (5)



76

Touch machine parts only after they have come to a complete standstill.

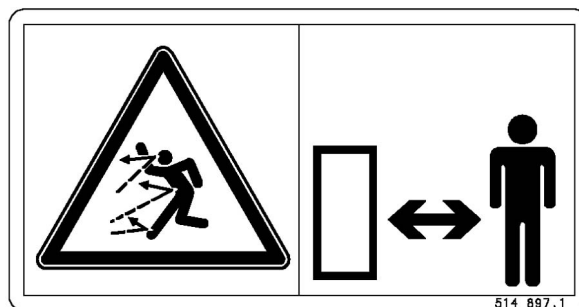
00 0516 064 0 (22)



78

Do not open or remove safety shields while engine is running.

00 0514 897 1 (32)



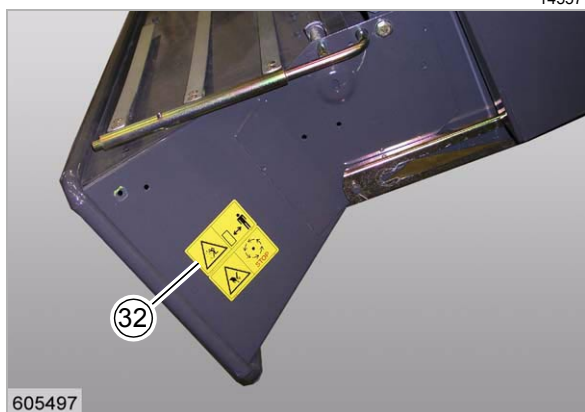
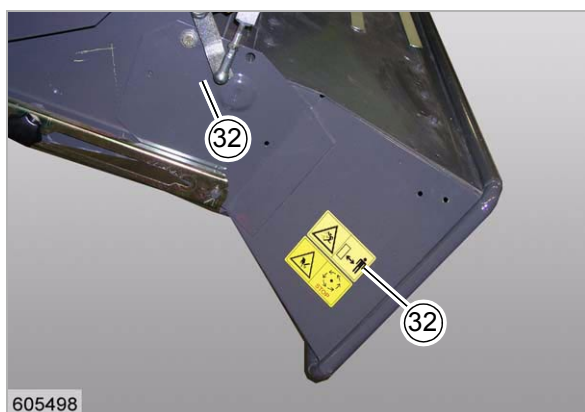
79

Danger - flying objects; keep safe distance from the machine as long as the engine is running.

82

80

81





605496

14548

83



605495

14549

84

00 0514 876 1 (32)



514 876.1

85

Danger - flying objects; keep safe distance from the machine as long as the engine is running.



605500

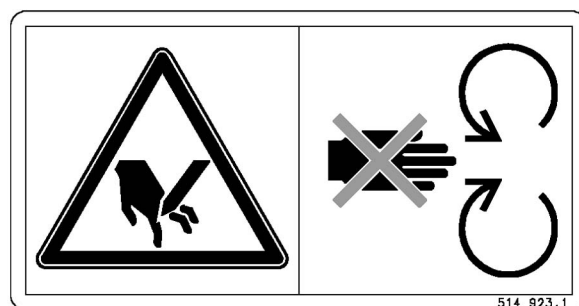
14561

86

3.3.9 Grain delivery

71938

00 0514 923 1 (15)



514 923.1

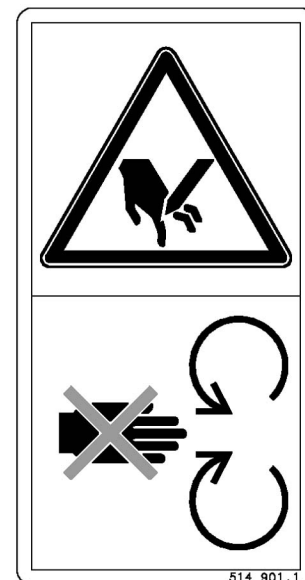
87

Do not open or remove safety shields while engine is running.



88

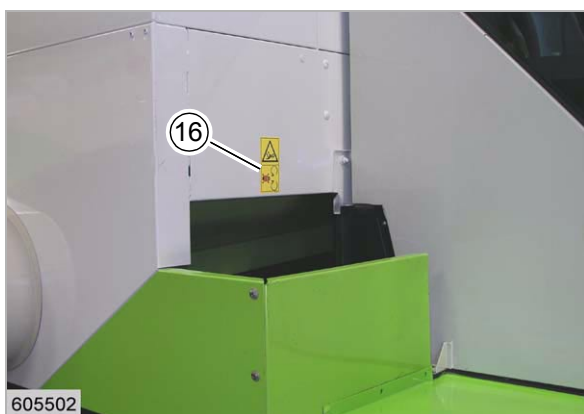
00 0514 901 1 (15)



89

Do not open or remove safety shields while engine is running.

00 0516 033 0 (16)

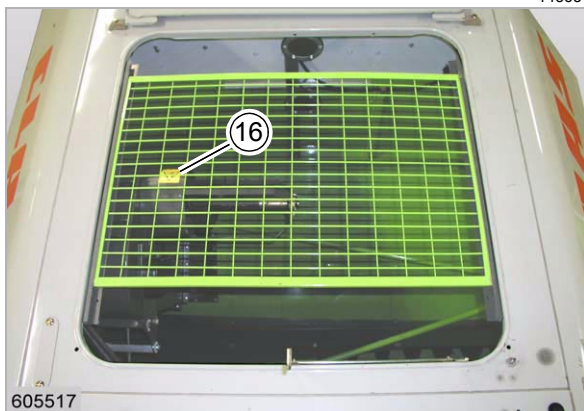


90



92

Never move your hands into the rotating auger.



91



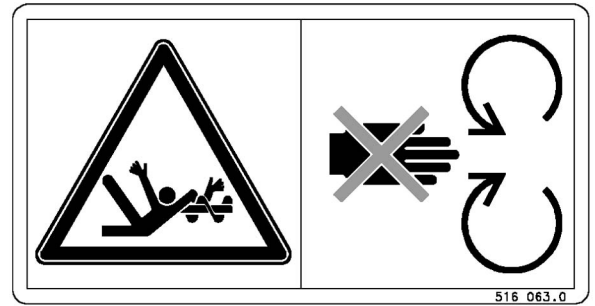
14564



605522

14565

00 0516 063 0 (16)



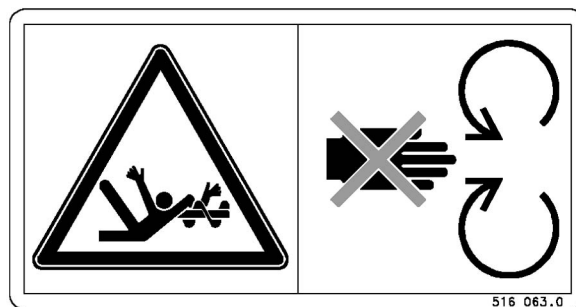
516 063.0

93

Never reach into rotating auger.

95

00 0516 063 0 (16)



96

Never reach into rotating auger.

99

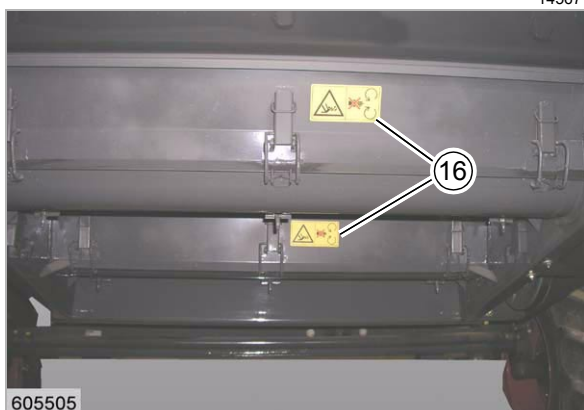


14566



14567

97

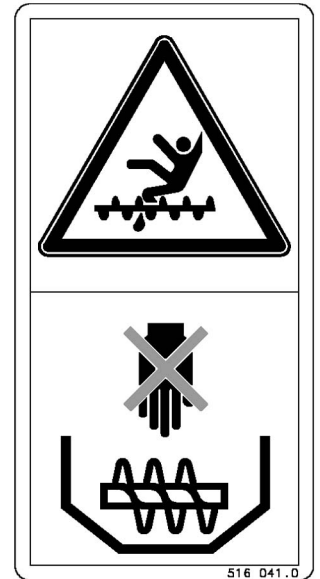


14568

98



00 0516 041 0 (24)



100

14538

101

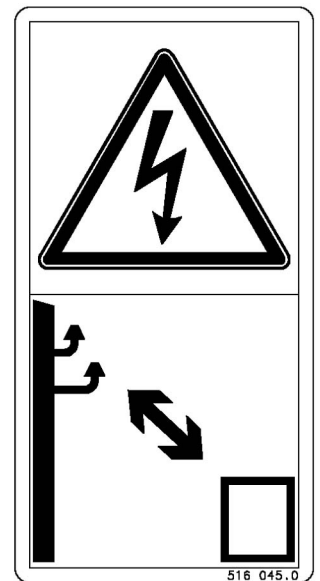
Never reach or climb into grain tank while engine is running.

00 0516 045 0 (35)



102

14538

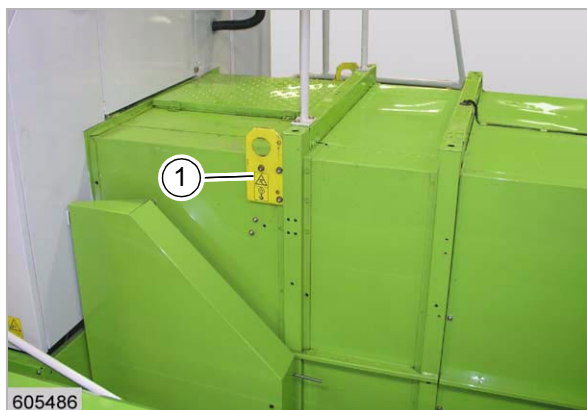


103

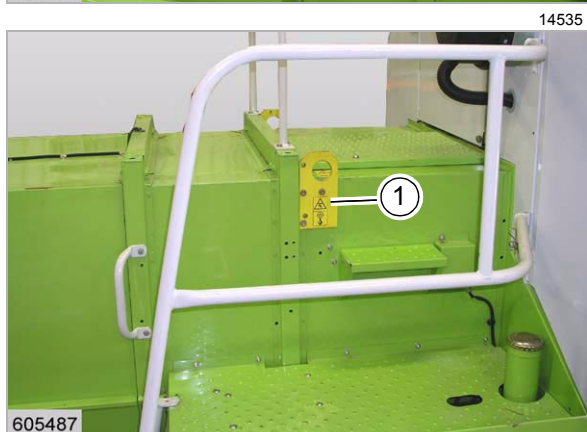
Keep sufficient distance away from electrical power lines.

3.3.10 Various components / Machine body

00 0514 038 2 (1)



104



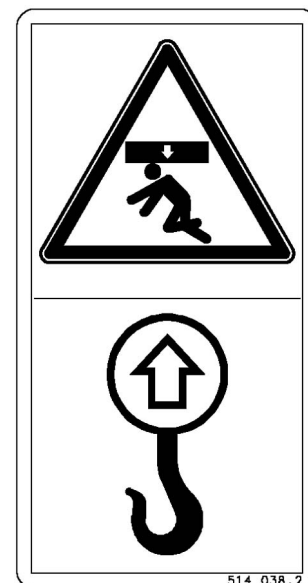
105



107



108



106

Use the marked points only to lift the machine. Never stand in the hazardous area below the suspended machine.

00 0516 753 0 (1)



109

Use only the marked points for raising the machine. Never stand in the hazard area below the suspended machine.



110

00 0516 044 0 (34)



111

Do not ride on platform or ladder.

3.4 Safety decals

39016

3.4.1 General instructions on safety decals



Danger!

Hazard points on the machine.

Death or serious injury!

- Hazard warning signs / safety decals that are damaged or unrecognisable must be replaced immediately by new ones.
- When parts that have hazard warning signs / safety decals are replaced, always make sure to attach the relevant new hazard warning signs / safety decals to each new part.

89475

3.4.2 Chassis

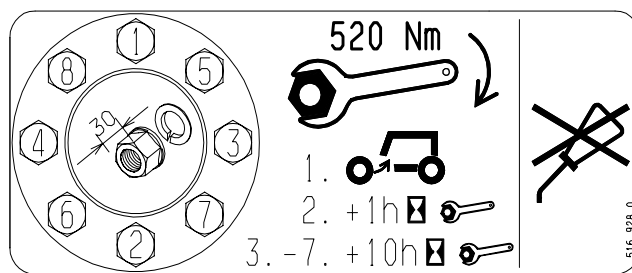
00 0516 928 0



Drive axle

9617

112



113

Observe instructions provided on the decal (1). Check wheel nut / wheel bolt tightening torque.

00 0514 234 0

Schrauben nachziehen.

Screws to be tightened.

Serrez les boulons.

Reapretar las tuercas.

Serrare i bulloni.

Se till att navbultarna är ordentligt atdragna.

514 234 0

115

Observe instructions provided on the decal (1). Check wheel nut / wheel bolt tightening torque.



Rear axle

30792

114

4 Specifications

4.1 DOMINATOR 150 / 140 / 130

72071

4.1.1 General information

Specifications determined on a combine equipped with 6-cylinder engine, full fuel tank and 18.4 - 30 12 PR and 11.5/80 - 15.3 6 PR tyres, without cab.

72072

4.1.2 CATERPILLAR C6.6 engine

Designation CAT C6.6	DOMINATOR			
	150	140	130	
Engine manufacturer	•	•	•	CATERPILLAR
Engine type	•	•	•	CAT C6.6
Exhaust stage	•	•	•	Exhaust gas category 3a
Cubic capacity	•	•	•	6.6 litres
Maximum no-load speed	•	•	•	2290 ^{+10/-40} rpm
Rated speed	•	•	•	2200 ± 10 rpm
Minimum no-load speed	•	•	•	1200 ± 20 rpm
Reduced speed in third gear at 20 km/h	•	•		1580 ^{+20/-30} rpm
			•	1800 ^{+20/-30} rpm
Reduced speed in third gear at 25 km/h	•	•		1970 ^{+20/-30} rpm
Speed in third gear at 25 km/h			•	2290 ^{+10/-40} rpm
Engine power at rated speed	•	•	•	2200 ± 10 rpm
Power (EEC 80/1296)	•			116 (158), kW (hp)
		•		100 (136), kW (hp)
			•	100 (136), kW (hp)
Power (ECE R 24)	•			110 (150), kW (hp)
		•		91 (124), kW (hp)
			•	94 (128), kW (hp)
Alternator	•	•	•	100 A / 12 V
Fuel tank capacity	•	•	•	280 litres
			•	200 litres

4.1.3 CATERPILLAR 3056E engine

Designation CAT 3056E	DOMINATOR			
	150	140	130	
Engine manufacturer	•	•	•	CATERPILLAR
Engine type	•	•	•	CAT 3056E
Exhaust stage	•	•	•	Exhaust gas category 2
Cubic capacity	•	•	•	5.9 litres
Maximum no-load speed	•	•	•	2290 ^{+10/-40} rpm
Rated speed	•	•	•	2200 ± 10 rpm
Minimum no-load speed	•	•	•	1200 ± 20 rpm
Reduced speed in third gear at 20 km/h	•	•		1580 ^{+20/-30} rpm
			•	1800 ^{+20/-30} rpm
Reduced speed in third gear at 25 km/h	•	•		1970 ^{+20/-30} rpm
Speed in third gear at 25 km/h			•	2290 ^{+10/-40} rpm
Engine power at rated speed	•	•	•	2200 ± 10 rpm
Power (EEC 80/1296)	•			112 (152), kW (hp)
		•		97 (132), kW (hp)
			•	97 (132), kW (hp)
Power (ECE R 24)	•			104 (141), kW (hp)
		•		89 (121), kW (hp)
			•	92 (125), kW (hp)
Alternator	•	•	•	85 A / 12 V
Fuel tank capacity	•	•	•	280 litres
			•	200 litres

72121

4.1.4 Perkins 1006-T6 engine

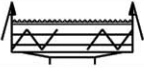
Designation Perkins 1006-T6	DOMINATOR			
	150	140	130	
Engine manufacturer			•	Perkins
Engine type			•	Perkins 1006-T6
Exhaust stage			•	Exhaust gas category 0
Cubic capacity			•	6 litres
Maximum no-load speed			•	2290 ^{+10/-40} rpm
Rated speed			•	2200 ± 10 rpm
Minimum no-load speed			•	1200 ± 20 rpm

Designation Perkins 1006-T6	DOMINATOR			
	150	140	130	
Speed in third gear at 25 km/h			•	2290 ^{+10/-40} rpm
Engine power at rated speed			•	2200 ± 10 rpm
Power (EEC 80/1296)			•	112 (152), kW (hp)
Power (ECE R 24)			•	104 (141), kW (hp)
Alternator			•	85 A / 12 V
Fuel tank capacity			•	200 litres

4.1.5 Chassis

Designation	DOMINATOR			
	150	140	130	
Ground drive	•	•		Hydrostatic, actuated by a lever
			•	Mechanical, variable-speed drive, hydraulically controlled
Clutch			•	dry single disc clutch
Manual gearbox	•	•		Three gears each for forward and reverse travel 1st and 2nd gears: fieldwork gear 3rd gear: road gear
			•	three forward, one reverse gear 1st and 2nd gears: fieldwork gear 3rd gear: road gear
Forward ground speed (with 18.4 - 30 12 PR tyres)	•	•		1st gear from 0 to 7.4 km/h 2nd gear from 0 to 13.9 km/h 3rd gear from 0 to 20.0 km/h (from 0 to 25.0 km/h)
Forward ground speed (with 18.4 - 30 12 PR tyres)			•	1st gear from 1.9 to 4.9 km/h 2nd gear from 4.7 to 12.9 km/h 3rd gear from 7.6 to 20.0 km/h
Reverse ground speed	•	•		Approx. 70% of the forward ground speed.
			•	Reverse gear from 3.6 to 9.9 km/h
Differences in ground speed for different tyre sizes.	•	•	•	± 10%.
Front wheel drive	•	•	•	Final drives running in oil

4.1.6 Tyre pressures

CLAAS DO 150  Min bar/psi 516 661.0 TYP 200 4 0001										
	 									
		max. 20km/h		max. 25km/h						
		C300	C360 C390	C300	C360 C390	C420 C450	C510	C600	4R	Max
18.4-30	12PR	1.9/28	2.0/29	1.9/28	2.3/33	2.1/30	2.2/32	2.3/33	-	3.0/44
23.1-26 R2	10PR	1.1/16	1.2/17	1.2/17	1.4/20	1.3/19	1.4/20	1.4/20	-	1.8/26
23.1-26	12PR	1.1/16	1.2/17	1.2/17	1.4/20	1.3/19	1.4/20	1.4/20	-	2.2/32
28LR26 (750/65R26)	155A8	1.0/15	1.0/15	1.0/15	1.0/15	1.0/15	1.0/15	1.0/15	-	2.0/29
										
11.5/80-15.3 IMP	8PR	2.2/32								3.7/54
12.5/80-18 (320/80-18) IMP	10PR	1.7/25								4.0/58
14.5/75-20 (360/80-20) IMP	8PR	1.2/17								3.0/44
9.5-24	6PR	-								2.6/38

24769

1

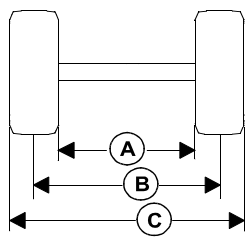
CLAAS DO 140  Min bar/psi 516 560.0 TYP 200 3 2001										
	 									
		max. 20km/h		max. 25km/h						
		C300	C360 C390	C300	C360 C390	C420 C450	C510	C600	4R	Max
18.4-30	12PR	1.7/25	1.9/28	1.9/28	2.3/33	2.0/29	2.1/30	2.2/32	-	3.0/44
23.1-26 R2	10PR	1.0/15	1.1/16	1.2/17	1.4/20	1.2/17	1.3/19	1.3/19	-	1.8/26
23.1-26	12PR	1.0/15	1.1/16	1.2/17	1.4/20	1.2/17	1.3/19	1.3/19	-	2.2/32
28LR26 (750/65R26)	155A8	1.0/15	1.0/15	1.0/15	1.0/15	1.0/15	1.0/15	1.0/15	-	2.0/29
										
11.5/80-15.3 IMP	8PR	2.2/32								3.7/54
12.5/80-18 (320/80-18) IMP	10PR	1.6/23								4.0/58
14.5/75-20 (360/80-20) IMP	8PR	1.2/17								3.0/44
9.5-24	6PR	-								2.6/38

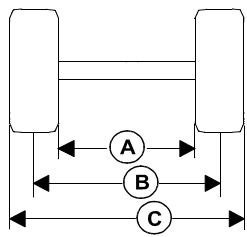
24770

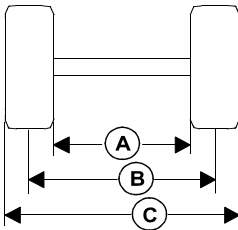
2

CLAAS DO 130  Min bar/psi 516 559.0 TYP 156 3 2001										
	 									
		max. 20km/h		max. 25km/h						
		C300	C360 C390	C300	C360 C390	C420 C450	C510	C600		
									4R	Max
18. 4-30	12PR	1. 7/25	1. 9/28	1. 9/28	2. 3/33	2. 0/29	-	-	-	3. 0/44
23. 1-26 R2	10PR	1. 0/15	1. 1/16	1. 2/17	1. 4/20	1. 2/17	-	-	-	1. 8/26
23. 1-26	12PR	1. 0/15	1. 1/16	1. 2/17	1. 4/20	1. 2/17	-	-	-	2. 2/32
28LR26 (750/65R26)	155A8	1. 0/15	1. 0/15	1. 0/15	1. 0/15	1. 0/15	-	-	-	2. 0/29
										
11. 5/80-15. 3 IMP	8PR	2. 2/32							3. 7/54	
12. 5/80-18 (320/80-18) IMP	10PR	1. 6/23							4. 0/58	
14. 5/75-20 (360/80-20) IMP	8PR	1. 2/17							3. 0/44	
9. 5-24	6PR	2. 6/38							2. 6/38	

4.1.7 Chassis track width

SP	Inside spacer								
FW	Flange width								
A	Width between the tyres								
B	Track width								
C	Width over tyres								
	Tyres	DOMINATOR			SP (mm)	FW (mm)	A (mm)	B (mm)	C (mm)
		150	140	130					
Drive axle 00 0723 790 5	18.4-30 12PR R1 TT KB	•	•	•		2283	1679	2183	2687
	23.1-26 12PR R1 KB F20	•	•	•		2283	1771	2405	3039
	23.1-26 12PR R1 KB F16	•	•	•		2283	1660	2243	2826
	23.1-26 R2 Dia	•	•	•		2283	1771	2405	3039
	620/75 R26 16EA8 F20	•	•	•		2283	1775	2405	3035
	28LR26 (750/65 R26) 155A8	•	•	•		2283	1643	2413	3183
	750/65 R26) 166A8 TL Mi	•	•	•		2283	1686	2413	3140
	Steel half-tracks			•		2283	1993	2693	3393

LA-P	Rear axle position, 1 = bottom hole 2 = top hole 3 = rear axle rise								
FW	Flange width								
A	Width between the tyres								
B	Track width								
C	Width over tyres								
	Tyres	DOMINATOR			LA-P	FW (mm)	A (mm)	B (mm)	C (mm)
		150	140	130					
Rear axle	11.5/80-15.3 IMP	•	•	•	1	2040	1790	2080	2370
00 0637 630 2	12.5/80-18 IMP (320/80-18)	•	•	•	2	2040	1790	2110	2430

LA-P	Rear axle position, 1 = bottom hole 2 = top hole 3 = rear axle rise								
FW	Flange width								
A	Width between the tyres								
B	Track width								
C	Width over tyres								
	Tyres	DOMINATOR			LA-P	FW (mm)	A (mm)	B (mm)	C (mm)
		150	140	130					
Rear axle 00 0649 950 1	11.5/80-15.3 IMP	•	•	•	1	2291	2041	2331	2621
		•	•	•	1	2491	2241	2531	2821
		•	•	•	1	2691	2441	2731	3021
	12.5/80-18 IMP (320/80-18)	•	•	•	2	2291	2041	2361	2681
		•	•	•	2	2491	2241	2561	2881
		•	•	•	2	2691	2441	2761	3081
	14.5/75-20 IMP(360/80-20)	•	•	•	2	2291	1986	2351	2716
		•	•	•	2	2491	2186	2551	2916
Rear axle 00 0770 350 1	9.5-24 R1			•	3	2391	2200	2441	2682

72235

4.1.8 Brake

Designation	DOMINATOR			
	150	140	130	
Foot brake	•	•	•	Hydraulically actuated brakes, also designed to work as independent brakes
Parking brake	•	•	•	mechanical, independent of foot brake

72237

4.1.9 Steering

Designation	DOMINATOR			
	150	140	130	
Steering, type	•	•	•	hydrostatic

4.1.10 Electric system / Electronics

Designation	DOMINATOR			
	150	140	130	
Battery	•	•	•	12 volts, 110 Ah

72252

4.1.11 Cab / Operator's platform

Designation	DOMINATOR			
	150	140	130	
A-valuated equivalent permanent sound pressure level	•	•	•	77 - 79 dB (A)*
* This A-valuated equivalent permanent sound pressure level has been determined in the cab (door and window closed) when the machine is in operating mode during intended use. The permanent sound pressure level is influenced by various external factors. These factors, such as crop, setting and load from the operator, environment on the field and weather conditions, cannot be influenced by the machine manufacturer.				
Total vibration value (vibrations), to which the upper limb dimensions are subjected.	•	•	•	$\leq 2.5 \text{ m/s}^2$ **
Effective value (vibrations), of the weighted acceleration to which the entire body is subjected.	•	•	•	$\leq 0.5 \text{ m/s}^2$ **
** Measuring methods (vibrations),	•	•	•	EN 1032:2003
** Measurement inaccuracy (vibrations),	•	•	•	EN 12096:1997
** The vibrations were determined in operating mode during intended use. The vibrations are influenced by various external factors. These factors, such as crop, setting and load from the operator, environment on the field and weather conditions, cannot be influenced by the machine manufacturer.				

72248

4.1.12 Intake

Designation	DOMINATOR			
	150	140	130	
Cutterbar widths	•	•	•	3.05 m, 3.66 m, 3.96 m, 4.27 m, 4.57 m
	•	•		5.18 m (country-specific)
	•			6.09 m (country-specific)
Feed rake conveyor	•	•	•	Feeder chain

4.1.13 Threshing mechanism

Designation	DOMINATOR			
	150	140	130	
Threshing drum diameter	•	•	•	450 mm
Threshing drum width	•	•	•	1060 mm
Threshing drum speed	•	•	•	650 - 1500 rpm
	•	•	•	500 - 1400 rpm (optional equipment)
Threshing drum chain drive (optional equipment)	•	•	•	304 rpm, 432 rpm, 556 rpm, 268 rpm,
Threshing drum rasp bars	•	•	•	6
Stone trap	•	•	•	
Main concave, continuous concave (optional equipment)	•	•	•	continuous concave
- Grain	•	•	•	Wire concave N10 **
- Grain	•	•	•	Wire concave N12 **
- Maize	•	•	•	Wire concave N18 **
- Rice			•	Spike tooth concave **
Main concave, multicrop concave (optional equipment)	•	•	•	3 concave segments
- Grain	•	•	•	Wire concave N10 ***
- Grain	•	•	•	Sheet-metal concave (10 x 38)***
- Maize	•	•	•	Sheet-metal concave (19 x 40)***
Main concave contact angle	•	•	•	117°
Disawner bars	•	•	•	2 one-piece disawner bars (optional equipment)
	•	•	•	2 three-piece disawner bars (optional equipment)
Threshing concave adjuster	•	•	•	1 lever (proportional from the cab)
** = continuous concave, *** = multicrop concave with 3 concave segments				

72293

4.1.14 Separation

Designation	DOMINATOR			
	150	140	130	
Straw walker racks (number)	•	•	•	4
Speed of straw walker shafts	•	•	•	220 ± 5 rpm
Straw walker area	•	•	•	4.13 m ²
Straw walker separating area	•	•	•	4.80 m ²
Intensive separators (number)	•	•	•	4

4.1.15 Cleaning unit

Designation	DOMINATOR			
	150	140	130	
Fan	•	•	•	paddle-type cleaning fan
Fan adjustment	•	•	•	mechanical
Preparation floor	•	•	•	removable
3-D cleaning system	•	•	•	(optional equipment)
Sieve separating area	•	•	•	3.00 m ²

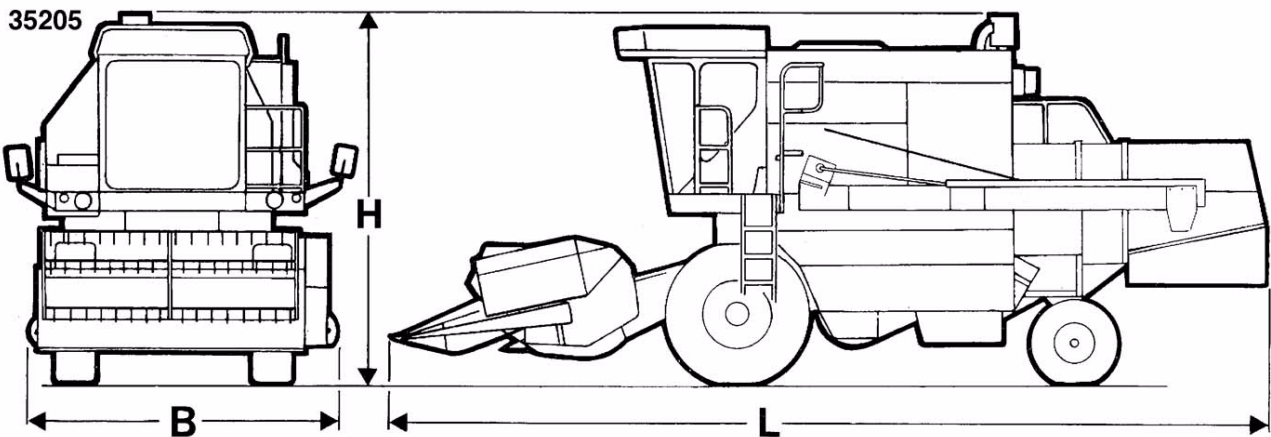
72299

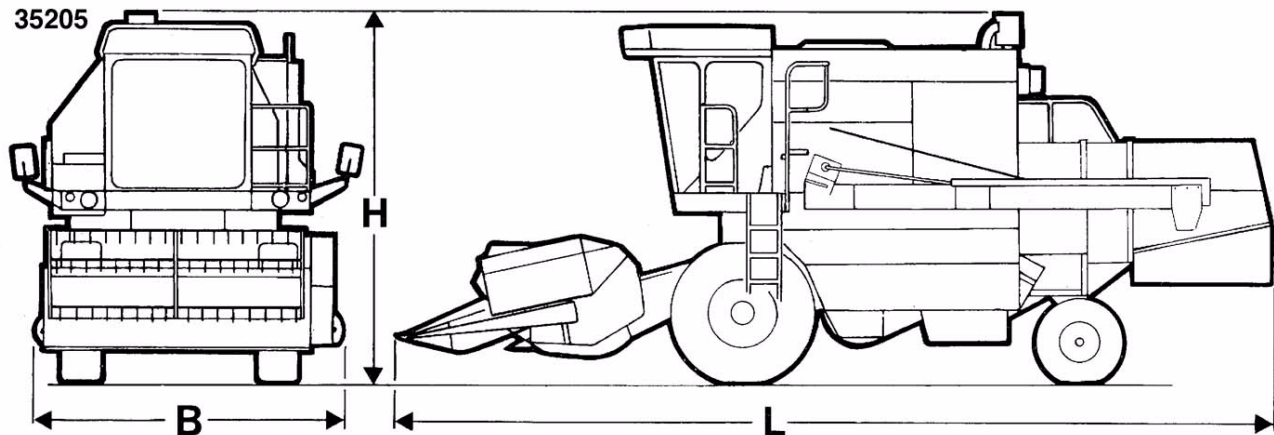
4.1.16 Grain delivery

Designation	DOMINATOR			
	150	140	130	
Returns	•	•	•	returned to threshing drum
Grain tank capacity	•			4000 litres (approx. 3.1 metric tons of wheat)
basis for calculation in t = litre weight of 780 g/l		•	•	3200 litres (approx. 2.5 metric tons of wheat)

72313

4.1.17 Attachment parts / machine body dimensions

					
Designation		DOMINATOR			
		150	140	130	
B	Width of the body (machine width with tyres – see chassis wheel track)	•	•	•	3000 mm

35205 					
Designation		DOMINATOR			
		150	140	130	
H	Height, up to top edge of air filter suction screen, grain tank closed	•	•		3850 mm*
				•	3840 mm*
	Height up to upper edge of grain tank, open	•	•		4100 mm*
				•	4080 mm*
* Height determined with 18.4 - 30 12 PR and 11.5/80 - 15.3 6 PR tyres					
L	Length, feed rake conveyor to tailgate	•	•	•	7200 mm**
	Length, feed rake conveyor to straw chop- per protective cover	•	•	•	7400 mm**
	Length, feed rake conveyor to straw spreader safety frame	•	•	•	8020 mm**
	Length, feed rake conveyor up to straw collector	•	•	•	8050 mm**
	Wheel base	•	•	•	3335 mm
	Ground clearance (up to elevator boot) Deviations of up to ±50 mm possible, depending on the tyre manufacturer.	•	•	•	435 mm**
	Left turning circle diameter DIN 70020	•	•	•	15150 mm
	Right turning circle diameter DIN 70020	•	•	•	15250 mm
** (Height of bottom edge of feed rake conveyor 500 mm)					

4.1.18 Attachment parts / machine body weights

Designation	DOMINATOR			
	150	140	130	
Empty weight *	•			7330 kg
		•	•	7250 kg
Chopper weight	•	•	•	+ 290 kg
Straw spreader	•	•	•	+ 97 kg
Straw collector	•	•	•	+ 235 kg
* Empty weight without cutterbar, chopper and chaff spreader, with full fuel tank				

5 Prior to initial operation

5.1 General Information

37391

5.1.1 General warnings Prior to initial operation

In the following sections of this chapter, a procedure instruction refers to the following general warnings.

**Danger!**

Always stop the engine before carrying out any work on the machine.

Moving machine parts and / or unexpected machine movement.

Death or serious injury.

- Diesel engine OFF.
- Apply parking brake.
- Remove the ignition key.
- Remove key of battery isolating switch.
- Wait for machine parts which run on have come to a complete halt.
- Secure machine by wheel chocks.
- Ensure that the machine cannot be started by any third persons.

**Danger!**

The front attachment, reel and feeder unit may drop uncontrolled.

Death or serious injuries!

- Apply safety locks.
- Keep a safe distance from the hazard area.

79390

5.1.2 Initial operation check list

The following must be done before putting the machine into operation.

- Complete all necessary items on the checklist for daily putting the machine into operation.
- Observe instructions for loading and tying down the machine.
- After sea transport or road transport in winter road conditions, clean the machine to protect it from salt damage.

Engine

- Check the correct seat of air filter.
- Check the diesel engine oil level.
- Check the radiator coolant level.

Chassis

- Fit the wheels.👁️
- Check the tyre pressure and correct if necessary.
- Check condition and permissibility of tyres.
- If necessary adjust the rear axles / rear wheel drive axles from transport position to working position.👁️
- If necessary adjust the wheel track for the given tyres.👁️
- Check tightening values of wheel fixing elements and correct if necessary.👁️
- Check oil level in all gearboxes and refill if necessary.👁️

Brake

- Check brake fluid level and top up if required.👁️

Drives

- Check all belt tensions and adjust if necessary.👁️
- Check all safety guards and put them into their correct position, if required.
- Check oil level in all gearboxes and top up if necessary.👁️

Hydraulic system

- Check hydraulic oil level and tightness of hydraulic system.👁️

Electrical / electronic equipment

- Fill and charge battery, if required.👁️
- Install fan / air conditioner fuse.👁️
- If necessary, install side lights in case of excess width.

Intake

- Remove the lift eyes.👁️
- Fit mounting plates.👁️
- Check the front attachment float springs.👁️
- Align the coupling lugs (machines without Auto-Contour)👁️

Separation

- Remove the lift eyes.👁️

Grain delivery

- Close the service aperture on the grain tank unloading tube.👁️
- Install the grain tank safety device.👁️
- Putting the air conditioner into operation (with Sanden compressor)

5.2 Chassis

5.2.1 Removing / installing the wheels

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the Prior to initial operation chapter. 
- Jack up the machine. 
- Remove / install wheel.
Ensure that large tyres cannot tip over, if necessary use a carriage.
- After fitting the wheel, tighten all wheel nuts / wheel bolts (1) to the specified tightening torque as instructed. 



9617

1

5.2.2 Overview of rear axle

Either one or several different types of rear axles are available.

The part number for identifying the rear axle is provided on the identification plate of the axle.

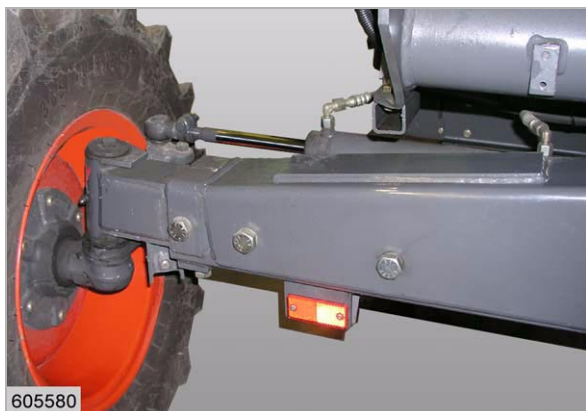
Rear axle

00 0770 350 1



27215

2



3

19471

Rear axle
00 0649 950 1

79317

5.2.3 Converting the rear axle from transport to working position

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the Prior to initial operation chapter.

The following installation steps must be carried out, depending on the tyres used on the rear axles 00 0637 630 2, 00 0649 950 1 and 00 0770 350 1: See table of rear axle positions.

Rear axle position						
LA-P	Rear axle position, 1 = bottom hole, 2 = top hole, 3 = rear axle rise (rice)					
FW	Flange width					
	Tyres	DOMINATOR			LA-P	FW (mm)
		150	140	130		
Rear axle 00 0637 630 2	11.5/80-15.3 IMP	•	•	•	1	2040
	12.5/80-18 IMP (320/80-18)	•	•	•	2	2040
Rear axle 00 0649 950 1	11.5/80-15.3 IMP	•	•	•	1	2291
		•	•	•	1	2491
		•	•	•	1	2691
	12.5/80-18 IMP (320/80-18)	•	•	•	2	2291
		•	•	•	2	2491
		•	•	•	2	2691
	14.5/75-20 IMP(360/80-20)	•	•	•	2	2291
		•	•	•	2	2491
Rear axle 00 0770 350 1	9.5-24 R1			•	3	2391

**WARNING:**

The tyres may collide with the vehicle body.

Damage to tyres and vehicle body.

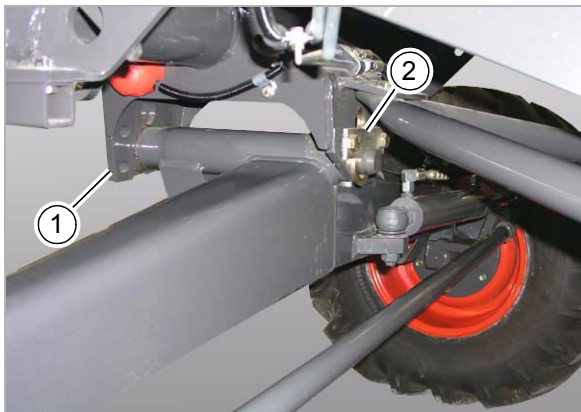
- Adjust track width to the tyres used.
- Adjust the rear axle position of the central axle pivot pin with the axle. See table of rear axle positions

**Danger!**

Jacking up the machine.

Death or serious injury.

- Use jack / jack stand with sufficient capacity.
- Use reliable jack / jack stand.
- Use jack / jack stand on solid and level ground.
- Apply the jack / jack stand at the position of the machine intended for this purpose.



4

27234

- Suspend the machine in the lift eyes at the rear and lift it (see loading and tying down the machine) until the rear axle wheels have only slight ground contact.
- Securely underpin axle against lowering and tipping over.
- Unscrew flat bar (2) and pull out pin (1).
- Raise or lower machine.
- Insert pin (1) into the bottom or top hole and bolt down flat bar (2). For rear axle rise (rice) see rice threshing equipment.

- If necessary, adjust rear wheel drive axle 00 0649 950 1 wheel track.

79261

5.2.4 Rear axle 00 0649 950 1 – Adjusting the track width

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the Prior to initial operation chapter.

**Warning:**

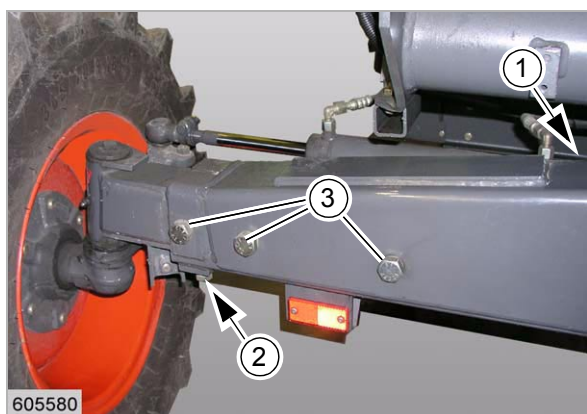
The tyres may collide with the vehicle body.

Damage to tyres and vehicle body.

- Adjust track width to the tyres used.

The track width depends on the flange width (F) to be set and on the tyres.

The axle can be set to three different flange widths.



5



Danger!

Jacking up the machine.

Death or serious injury.

- Use jack / jack stand with sufficient capacity.
- Use reliable jack / jack stand.
- Use jack / jack stand on solid and level ground.
- Apply the jack / jack stand at the position of the machine intended for this purpose.

- Jack up the machine a little at the rear until the rear axle wheels only have slight ground contact.
- Remove the right-hand ball joint of the track rod.
- Remove steering cylinder mounting bracket (1) from the axle body.
- Slacken off the clamping bolts (2) on both sides.
- Unscrew mounting bolts (3) on both sides.
- Slide the adjustable axle sections in or out to obtain the desired track width (2300 mm, 2500 mm, 2700 mm). Install mounting bolts (3), but do not tighten them at this time.
- Tighten clamping bolts (2) first, then tighten mounting bolts (3).
- Bolt down mounting bracket (1) in the corresponding tapped holes.
- Set the wheels to zero toe-in by adjusting the right-hand ball joint on the track rod. In order to obtain accurate measurements, measure from the inside edges of the rim, where the beading of the tyres rests. Secure the track rod. Use new self-locking nuts. Tightening torque = 140 Nm

5.3 Hitch

102219

5.3.1 Installing the trailer hitch (accessories)

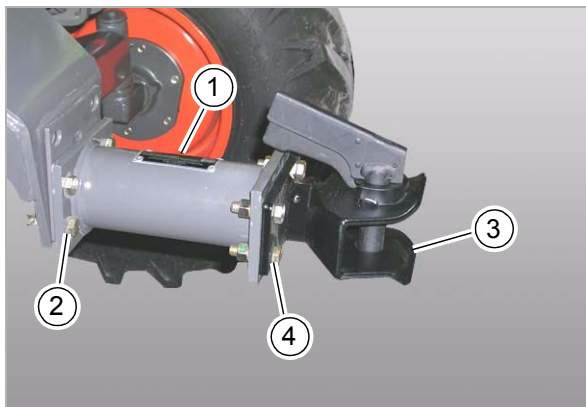
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the Prior to initial operation chapter. 

**Danger!**

Improper mounting of the trailer hitch.

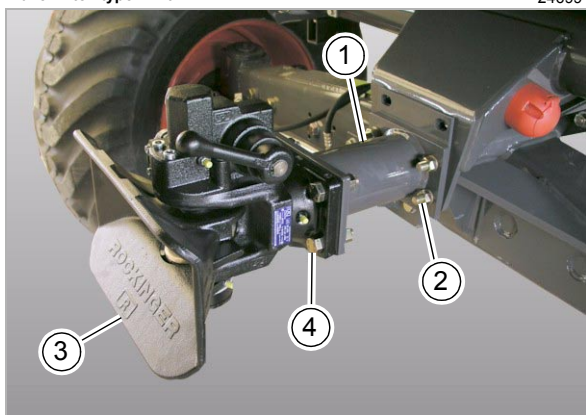
Death or serious injuries!

- Note the prescribed tightening torque for the trailer hitch.



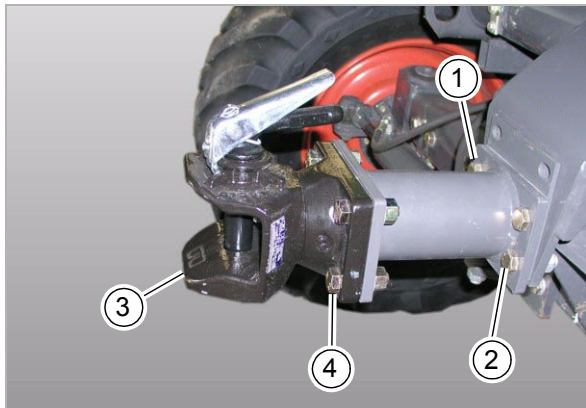
Trailer hitch type AK 64/1 B ...

24699



Trailer hitch type 841 ...

36440



Trailer hitch type 810 ...

40022

- Bolt down hitch block (1) with bolts (2). The bolt heads must point to the rear.

Tightening torque M14 = 133 Nm

- Bolt down trailer hitch (3) with bolts (4). The bolt heads point to the rear.

Tightening torque M16 = 207 Nm

- If required, bolt down the bracket for the cutterbar trailer brake system tear-off cord to bolt (4).

5.4 Electrical / electronic equipment

5.4.1 Installing the fan / air conditioner fuse

The fan / air conditioner fuse is enclosed as a pack joint (cab) on machines with an air conditioner in order to prevent compressor damage.

- Install fan / air conditioner fuse. 
- Put the air conditioner into operation. 

5.5 Feeder unit

79358

5.5.1 Fitting / adjusting the mounting plates

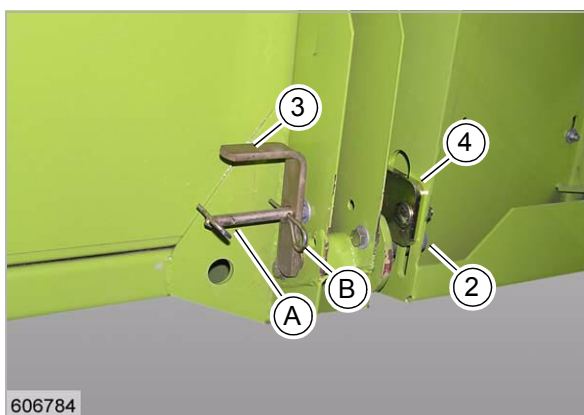
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the Prior to initial operation chapter. 

**DANGER!**

The front attachment is not sufficiently secured.

Death or serious injury.

- Comply precisely with procedure instructions.
- Check the safe locking of the front attachment.

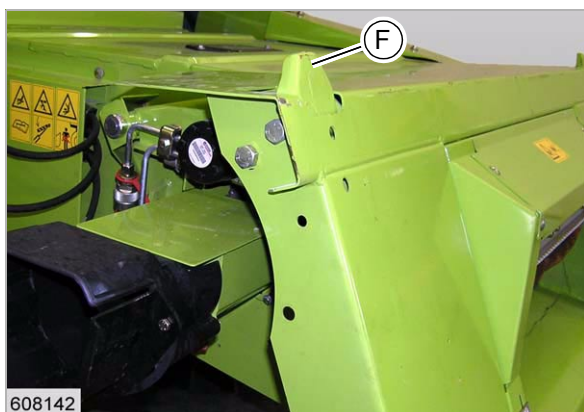


606784

19523

9

- Bolt down mounting plate (4) hand-tight on both sides of the machine.
- Fit front attachment.
- Pull out cotter pin at position (A).
- Slide lock pin (2) up into the feeder unit opening of the machine, using lever (3).
- Secure lever (3) in position (B), using the cotter pin.
- Slacken off mounting plate (4) and slide it as closely to the lock pin (2) as possible. Bolt down mounting plate (4).



608142

19525

10

5.5.2 Aligning the coupling pin

89422

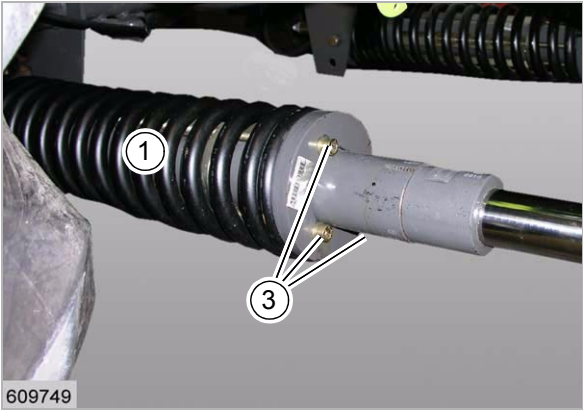
The front attachment must be parallel with the drive axle of the machine. To achieve this, the coupling pins must be aligned.

- Drive the machine with the front attachment fitted on a flat and level surface.
- Check the alignment. The finger bar must be parallel with the ground while the machine stands on a flat and level surface.
- If necessary, put down the front attachment.
- Slacken off coupling pins (1) and raise or lower the pins so that the finger bar is parallel with the ground on a flat and level surface.

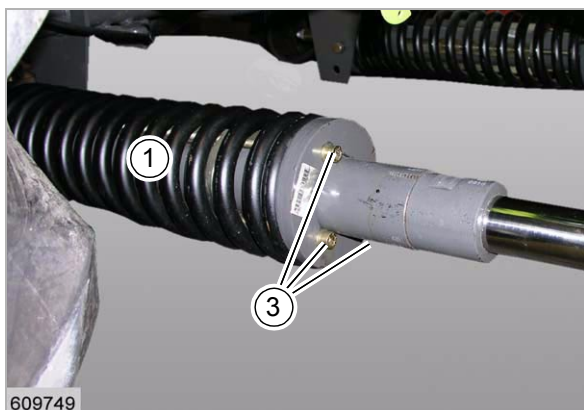
5.5.3 Checking the front attachment cylinders

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the Prior to initial operation chapter. 👁

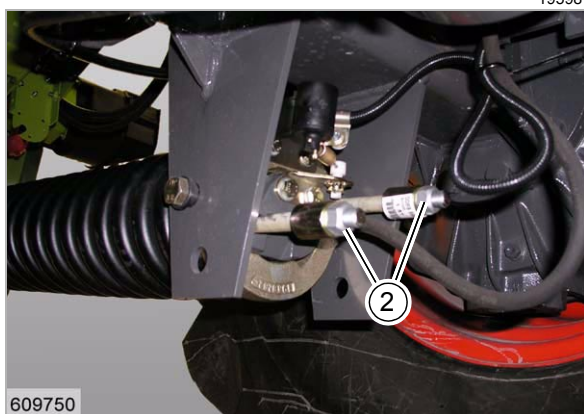
The front attachment cylinders (1) are fitted ex works to suit the ordered front attachment width. When changing the front attachment width at a later date, the cylinder diameter must be checked / adapted.



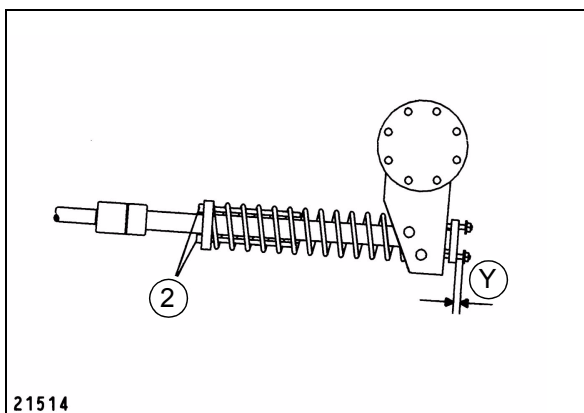
Number of cutterbar cylinders Dominator 130 / 140 / 150	Diameter Cutterbar cylinder	Cutterbar cylinder
	mm	Number
Cutterbar 3.05 m – 4.57 m	45	2
Cutterbar 5.18 m – 6.09 m	55	2



12



13



14

5.5.4 Checking the cutterbar float springs

The cutterbar float springs (1) are pre-set ex works.

The cutterbar float springs (1) must be checked and adjusted with the front attachment fitted.

- Fit the front attachment.
- Fit the crop dividers.
- Lower the cutterbar until the skids are about 100 mm above the ground.

The distance (Y) between the coupling pin cylinder plate and the nuts should be 5 mm.

- Adjust the cutterbar float springs if required.
 - To do this, adjust the cutterbar float springs accordingly at the socket head bolts (2).
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the Prior to initial operation chapter.



Danger!

Bolts may break when tilting the spring plates.

Death or serious injuries!

- Ensure that the tilted position of the spring plate near the bolt pitch circle diameter may be **1 mm** max.
- Grease bolt threads.
- Now turn the bolts in or out by **3 revolutions each** (5 mm) max., one after the other.

Adjusting the bolts (2):

Increasing the distance	Turn bolts in
Reducing the distance	Turn bolts out

- Check adjustment after changing the front attachment and readjust if required.

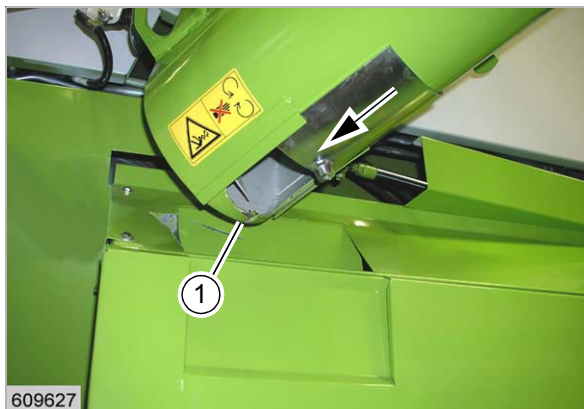
5.6 Grain delivery

79443

5.6.1 Closing the service aperture on the grain tank unloading tube

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the Prior to initial operation chapter. 

The service aperture on the grain tank unloading tube serves as a water drain, e.g. for cleaning.



15

19660

**Warning!**

Sharp edges and pointed machine parts.

Slight injuries.

- Do not touch sharp edges of the auger flights.
- Wear safety gloves.

**Note!**

Open service aperture.

Trickling losses.

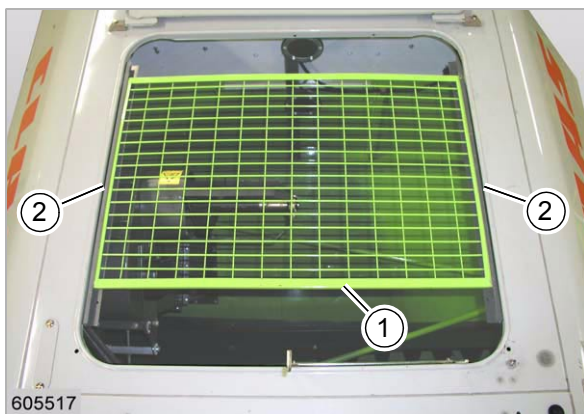
- Close the service aperture and screw in bolt (1).

- Close the service aperture and screw in bolt (1) before putting the machine into operation for the first time.

83027

5.6.2 Installing the grain tank safety device

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the Prior to initial operation chapter. 



16

10456

**Danger!**

Danger of falling!

Death or serious injuries!

- Arrange for additional safety precautions.
- Only enter areas protected by railings.
- Areas originally without railings must be protected by additional railings.

- Open the grain tank cover and fold it open to the rear as far as possible.
- Install safety device (1) into the rails (2).



Danger!

Missing or damaged safety devices.

Death or serious injury.

- Fit safety devices before putting the machine into operation.
- Check function of safety devices at regular intervals.
- Replace worn or damaged safety devices by new ones.

6 Prior to each operation

6.1 General Information

85051

6.1.1 General warnings Prior to operation

In the following sections of this chapter, a procedure instruction refers to the following general warnings.

**Danger!**

Always stop the engine before carrying out any work on the machine.

Moving machine parts and / or unexpected machine movement.

Death or serious injury.

- Diesel engine OFF.
- Apply parking brake.
- Remove the ignition key.
- Remove key of battery isolating switch.
- Wait for machine parts which run on have come to a complete halt.
- Secure machine by wheel chocks.
- Ensure that the machine cannot be started by any third persons.

**Danger!**

The front attachment, reel and feeder unit may drop uncontrolled.

Death or serious injuries!

- Apply safety locks.
- Keep a safe distance from the hazard area.

87926

6.1.2 Check list for daily operation

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the Prior to operation chapter.

Every time before operating the unit, the following activities must be carried out.

- Complete all necessary steps according to the maintenance chart.

Chassis

- When changing the tyres, adjust the permitted rear axle track width if necessary.
- Check tyre pressure according to the front attachment and adjust according to the tyre pressure table if required.

Straw chopper

- Check the knives for damage and the rotating knives for secure fit. 
- Check that the fixed stationary knives are adjusted in such a way that the desired length of cut is obtained. 
- Check the tension of the belt (40). 
- Check the free run of the belt (40). 
- Adjust the chopper speed to the crop. 
- Adjust the chopper equipment to the crop. 

7 Overview of controls

7.1 General Information

85053

7.1.1 General warnings - Overview of controls

In the following sections of this chapter, a procedure instruction refers to the following general warnings.

**Danger!**

Always stop the engine before carrying out any work on the machine.

Moving machine parts and / or unexpected machine movement.

Death or serious injury.

- Diesel engine OFF.
- Apply parking brake.
- Remove the ignition key.
- Remove key of battery isolating switch.
- Wait for machine parts which run on have come to a complete halt.
- Secure machine by wheel chocks.
- Ensure that the machine cannot be started by any third persons.

**Danger!**

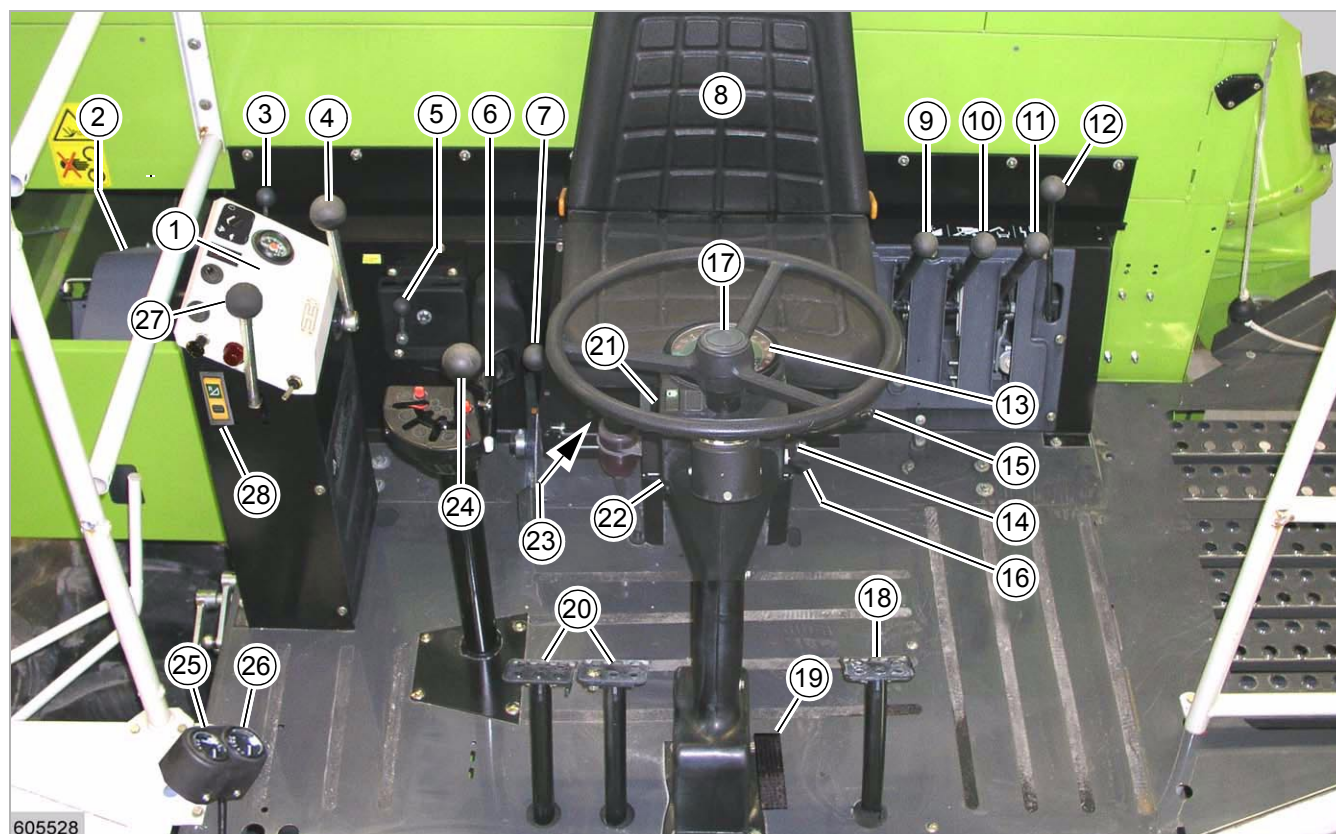
The front attachment, reel and feeder unit may drop uncontrolled.

Death or serious injuries!

- Apply safety locks.
- Keep a safe distance from the hazard area.

7.2 Cab / Operator's platform

7.2.1 Overview of operator's platform (DOMINATOR 130)



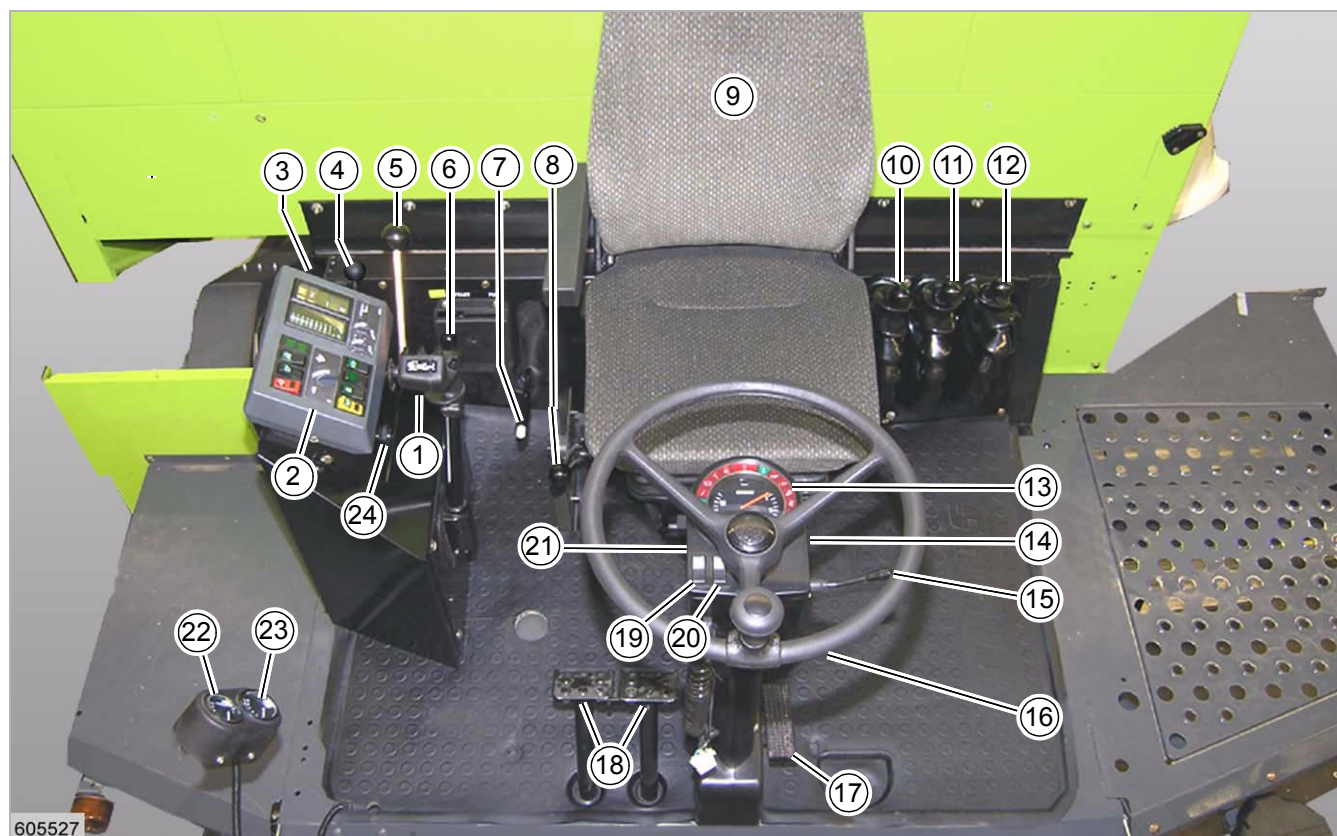
19305

1

	Designation
1	Switch console
2	Returns inspection door
3	Reel speed adjustment crank
4	Gearshift lever
5	Returns inspection door lever
6	Handbrake lever
7	Concave adjusting lever
8	Operator's seat
9	Switches front attachment on and off
10	Switches threshing mechanism on and off
11	Engaging / disengaging the grain tank unloading
12	Grain tank unloading tube swing out / in
13	Combined instrument gauge
14	Hazard warning flasher switch
15	Turn flasher and horn switch
16	Tachometer, gearbox input shaft speed and threshing drum speed switch

	Designation
17	Steering wheel
18	Clutch pedal
19	Steering column locking pedal
20	Foot brake pedals
21	Headlights switch
22	Ignition switch
23	Buzzer
24	Gear shift gate with control lever for hydraulic control unit (lift hydraulics)
25	Cutterbar height indicator
26	Cutterbar spring pressure indicator
27	Fore and aft reel adjustment
28	Cutterbar reverser On/Off locking rocker switch

7.2.2 Overview of operator's platform (DOMINATOR 150/140)



19306

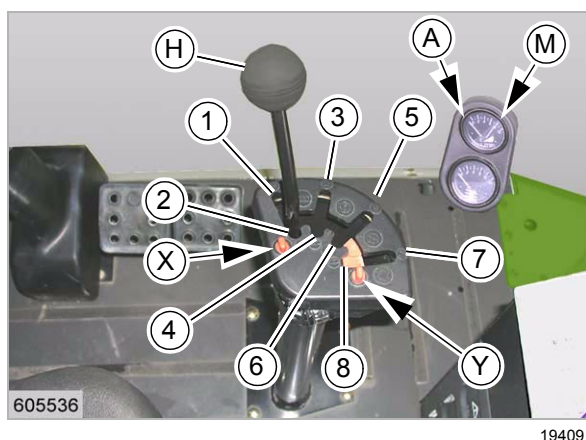
2

	Designation
1	Ground speed control lever with multifunction handle
2	Switch console
3	Returns inspection door
4	Reel speed adjustment crank
5	Gearshift lever
6	Returns inspection door lever
7	Handbrake lever
8	Concave adjusting lever
9	Operator's seat
10	Switches front attachment on and off
11	Switches threshing mechanism on and off
12	Engaging / disengaging the grain tank unloading
13	Combined instrument gauge
14	Hazard warning flasher switch
15	Turn flasher and horn switch
16	Steering wheel
17	Steering column locking pedal

	Designation
18	Foot brake pedals
19	Headlights switch
20	Switch, windscreen wiper
21	Ignition switch
22	Cutterbar height indicator
23	Cutterbar spring pressure indicator
24	Buzzer

7.2.3 Hydraulic system control unit (DOMINATOR 130 lift hydraulic system)

Cutterbar height, reel height and ground speed can be infinitely varied by means of control lever (H).



3

	Designation
1	Lower front attachment / feed rake conveyor
2	Raise front attachment / feed rake conveyor
3	Reduce ground speed
4	Increase ground speed
5	Lower reel
6	Raise reel
7	Reduce drum speed
8	Increase threshing drum speed

After changing the speed of the threshing drum, block the drum speed gate by turning lock (Y) in order to prevent accidental variation of drum speed.

After actuating the control unit, the hydraulic control lever automatically returns to neutral from any position.

During road travel, the front attachment gate (1 / 2) must be blocked with lock (X).



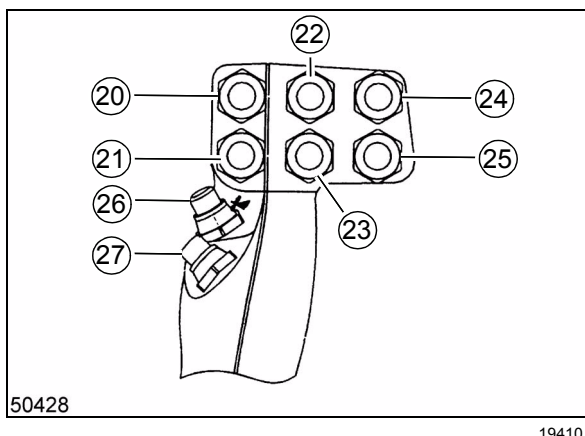
Danger!

Unexpected machine movements.

Death or serious injuries!

- During road travel, the front attachment gate must be blocked.

7.2.4 Multifunction handle (DOMINATOR 150 / 140)

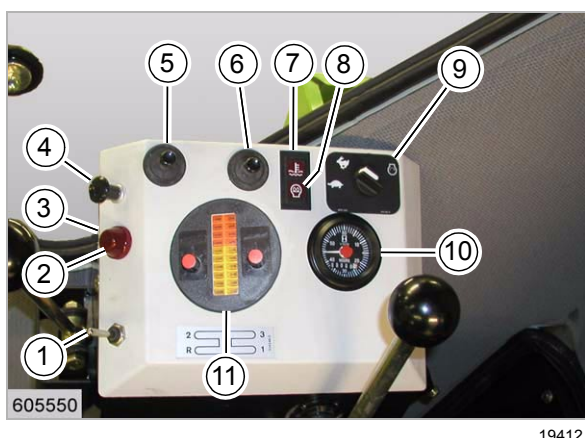


4

	Designation
20	Raise front attachment / feed rake conveyor
21	Lower front attachment / feed rake conveyor
22	Raise reel
23	Lower reel
24	Reel forward
25	Reel reverse
26	Swing out unloading auger tube
27	Swing in unloading auger tube

54976

7.2.5 Switch console (DOMINATOR 130)



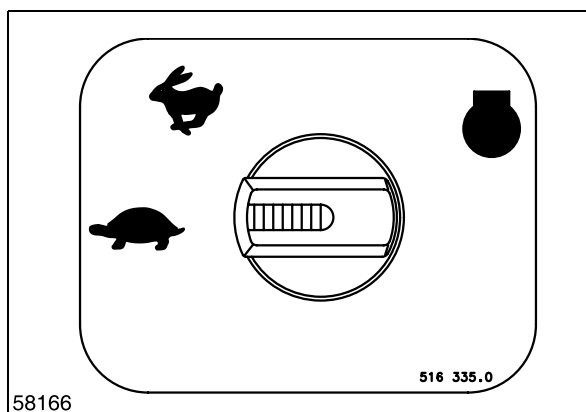
5

	Designation
1	Electric reel speed adjustment (optional equipment)
2	Indicator light, warning beacon*
3	Front attachment reversing ON / OFF switch with lock
4	Warning beacon switch
5	Chopper speed control ON / OFF switch*
6	Work lights switch*
7	Warning light - See function of warning lights 7 and 8 (DOMINATOR 130)
8	Warning light - See function of warning lights 7 and 8 (DOMINATOR 130)
9	Diesel engine speed adjustment rotary switch (CATERPILLAR C6.6, 3056E)
10	Hour meter
11	Combine performance monitor*
* = Accessory	

7.2.6 Diesel engine speed adjustment rotary switch (DOMINATOR 130, CATERPILLAR C-6.6, 3056 E)

Function of rotary switch (9):

	Designation
	Slow idle speed
	Max. no-load speed



58166

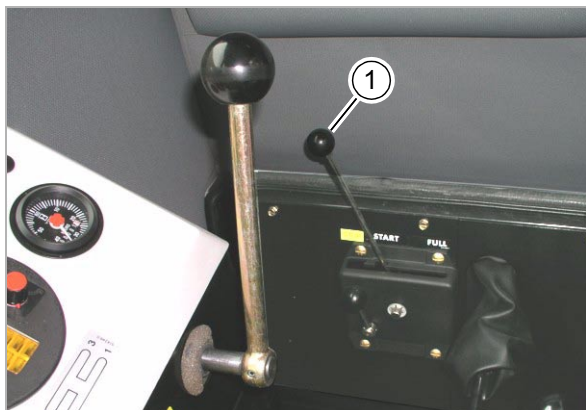
19413

6

7.2.7 Diesel engine speed lever (DOMINATOR 130, Perkins 1006-T6)

Function of lever (1):

	Designation
(STOP) (hidden)	without function  Stopping the diesel engine (DOMINATOR 130)
START	Slow idle speed
FULL	Max. no-load speed



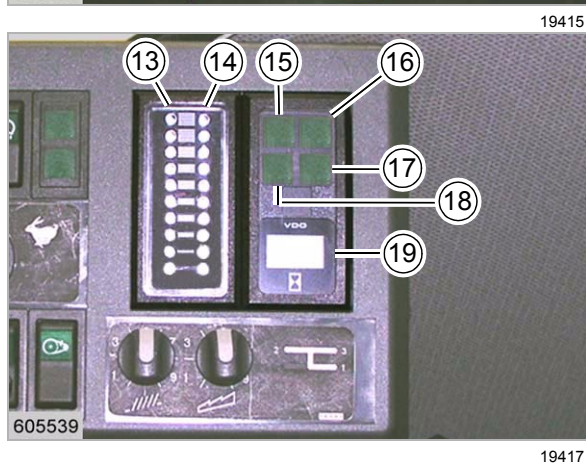
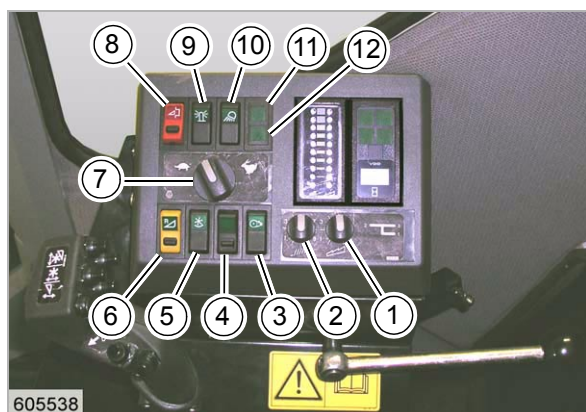
29771

7

87106

7.2.8 Function of warning lights 7 and 8 (DOMINATOR 130)

Engine operating status	Red warning light (8)  Cold start Engine preheating	Red warning light (7)  Stop engine	Status
Ignition On	Both lights light up for 2 seconds (lamp test)		OK
Before starting (Preheating)	Light lights up as long as preheating is active	off	OK
Before starting (Preheating complete)	off	off	OK
During starting	off	off	OK
	off	on	Oil pressure too low!
Engine running	flashing	off	Warning: Oil pressure, Coolant temperature, Air intake temperature, Fuel temperature, Engine power limiting active
	flashing	flashing	Warning: Oil pressure, Coolant temperature, Air intake temperature, Fuel temperature, Engine power limiting active, Engine shutdown because of low oil pressure
	on	off	Active electronics fault
	on	on	Active electronics fault and insufficient oil pressure
	on	flashing	Active electronics fault and engine shutdown due to insufficient oil pressure
	flashing	on	Warning: Oil pressure, Coolant temperature, Air intake temperature, Fuel temperature, Engine power limiting active

7.2.9 Switch console (DOMINATOR 150 / 140)

8

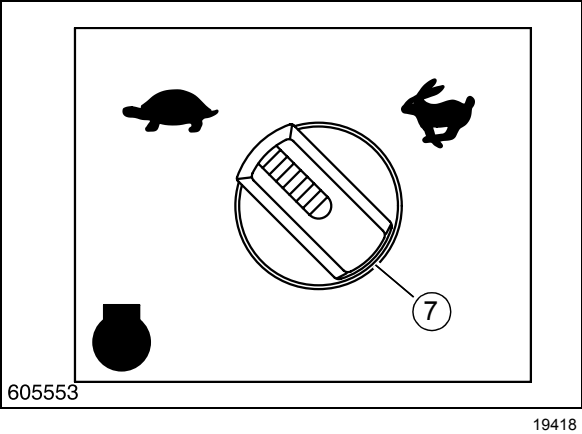
9

	Designation
1	Straw walker performance monitor rotary control
2	Sieve pan performance monitor rotary control
3	Threshing drum speed adjustment switch
4	Speed display switch with lock Switch is locked = Gearbox input shaft speed display in vehicle information unit, threshing drum speed adjustment is blocked. Switch is unlocked = Threshing drum speed display in vehicle information unit, threshing drum speed adjustment is enabled.
5	Reel speed adjustment switch
6	Front attachment reversing ON / OFF switch with lock
7	Diesel engine speed adjustment rotary switch
8	Master safety switch with ON / OFF lock
9	Warning beacon switch
10	Worklights
11	Direction-of-steering indicator, left (only on rice machines)
12	Direction-of-steering indicator, right (only on rice machines)
13	Sieve pan performance monitor
14	Straw walker performance monitor
15	Warning light - See function of warning lights 15 and 18 (DOMINATOR 150 / 140)
16	not used
17	not used
18	Warning light - See function of warning lights 15 and 18 (DOMINATOR 150 / 140)
19	Hour meter

7.2.10 Diesel engine speed rotary switch
(DOMINATOR 150 / 140)

Function of rotary switch (7):

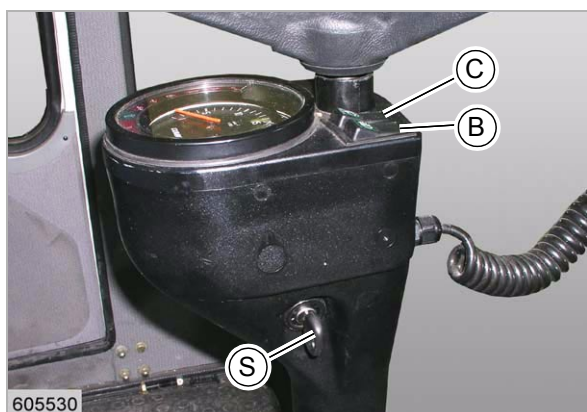
	Designation
	Slow idle speed
	Max. no-load speed



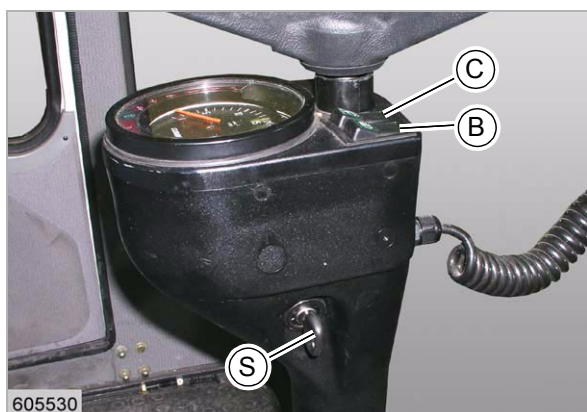
7.2.11 Function of warning lights 15 and 18 (DOMINATOR 150 / 140)

Engine operating status	Red warning light (15)  Cold start Engine preheating	Red warning light (18)  Stop engine	Status
Ignition On	Both lights light up for 2 seconds (lamp test)		OK
Before starting (Preheating)	Light lights up as long as preheating is active.	off	OK
Before starting (Preheating complete)	off	off	OK
During starting	off	off	OK
	off	on	Oil pressure too low!
Engine running	flashing	off	Warning: Oil pressure, Coolant temperature, Air intake temperature, Fuel temperature, Engine power limiting active
	flashing	flashing	Warning: Oil pressure, Coolant temperature, Air intake temperature, Fuel temperature, Engine power limiting active, Engine shutdown because of low oil pressure
	on	off	Active electronics fault
	on	on	Active electronics fault and insufficient oil pressure
	on	flashing	Active electronics fault and engine shutdown due to insufficient oil pressure
	flashing	on	Warning: Oil pressure, Coolant temperature, Air intake temperature, Fuel temperature, Engine power limiting active

7.2.12 Overview of steering column



11



12

	Designation
S	Ignition key
C	Windscreen wiper switch (only with cab)
B	Lighting switch

Position	Function
0	Ignition OFF
1	Ignition ON
	– Turn ignition key (S) up to the first stop.
2	Preheating the engine
	– Turn ignition key (S) up to the second stop and hold it there for 15 seconds max.
3	Starting the engine
	– Turn the ignition key (S) up to the limit stop

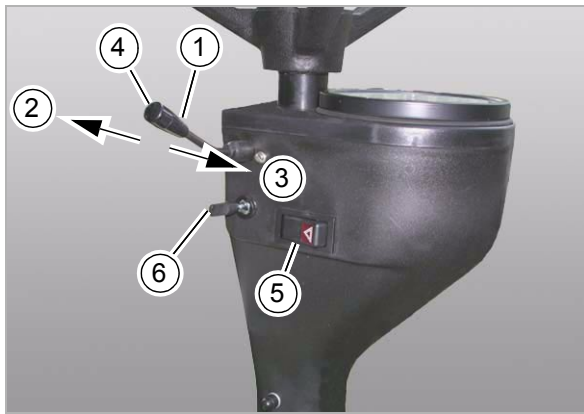


Attention!

- Only operate the starter for a max. of 10 to 15 seconds.
- Once the engine has started, release the key immediately.

Repeating the starting procedure:

- Should a second attempt be necessary to start the engine, then turn the key back to the "0" position and wait for a short moment.
- Then repeat the starting procedure.



28458

13

	Designation
1	Turn signal and horn switch
2	Turn signal indicator, right
3	Turn signal indicator, left
4	Horn
5	Warning flasher with indicator light
6	Speed display switch (DOMINATOR 130) Switch to the front = Gearbox input shaft speed display in vehicle information unit. Switch in centre position = No display. Switch to the rear = Threshing drum speed display in vehicle information unit.



605532

19367

14

	Combined instrument gauge
1	Fuel gauge
2	Engine temperature
3	not used
4	Turn flasher indicator for trailer
5	Machine turn signal indicator control
6	Engine oil pressure indicator
7	Alternator charging light
8	Handbrake indicator
9	air filter indicator
Grain tank full indicator:	
10	Red indicator = grain tank completely filled
11	Green indicator = grain tank 70% filled
Functions monitor:	
12	not used
13	Straw chopper speed-loss monitor
14	Feed rake conveyor speed control
15	Clean grain elevator speed-loss monitor
16	Returns elevator speed-loss monitor
17	Intensive separation system speed-loss monitor
18	Display of gearbox input shaft speed or of threshing drum speed

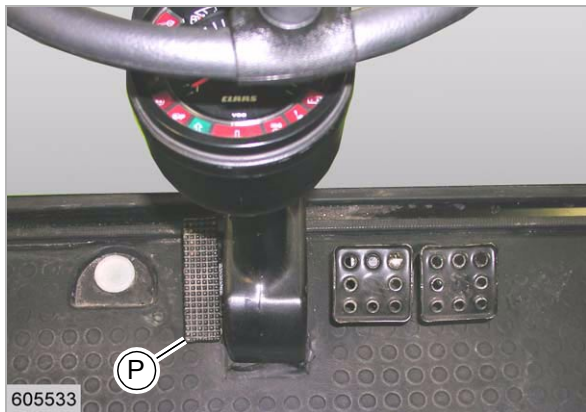


Danger!

Never adjust the steering column whilst driving!

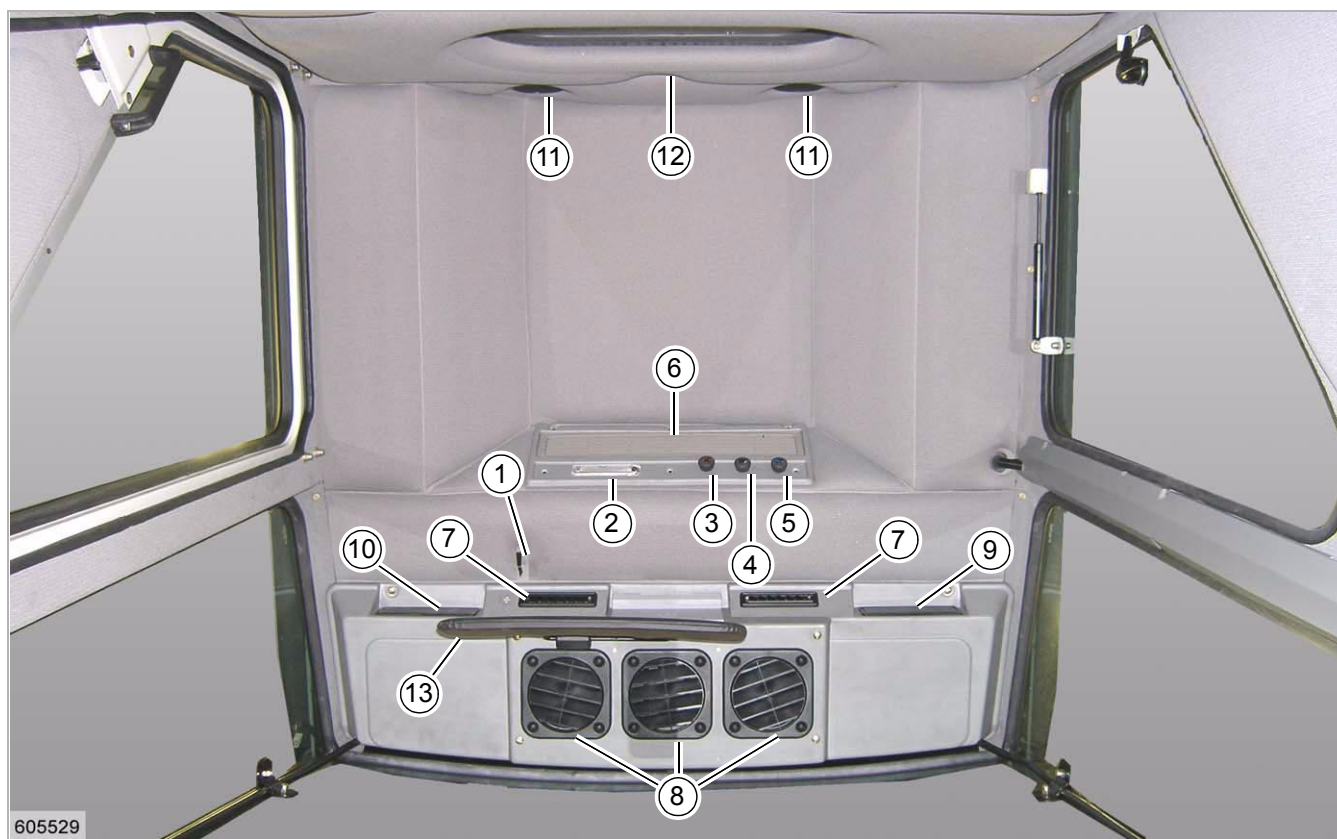
Failure to do this may lead to injuries or death.

Pressing pedal (P) with your foot releases the lock of the steering column for moving it to the desired position.



15

19369

7.2.13 Cab roof controls

605529

19295

16

	Designation
1	Lever for bypass flap (cab with heater only)
2	Cab lighting with switch
3	Rotary knob for heater valve
4	Three-position switch for double fan
5	AC thermostat rotary switch
6	Air circulation grille (only in cabs equipped with air conditioner)
7	Adjustable air louvres, can be closed
8	Adjustable air louvres
9	Storage compartment or space for CB radio
10	Storage compartment or space for broadcast radio
11	Pressuriser fans
12	Press here to open cab roof
13	Sun visor

7.2.14 Cab with fan

The cab is equipped with an efficient double fan which blows fresh air into the cab.

The fan can be set to three different speeds by means of the 3-position switch (4).

Air louvres (7) and (8) allow the operator to control the direction of air flow.

54693

7.2.15 Cab with air conditioner (with York compressor)

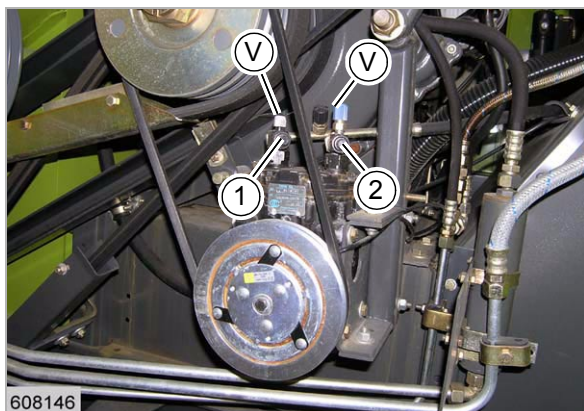


Danger!

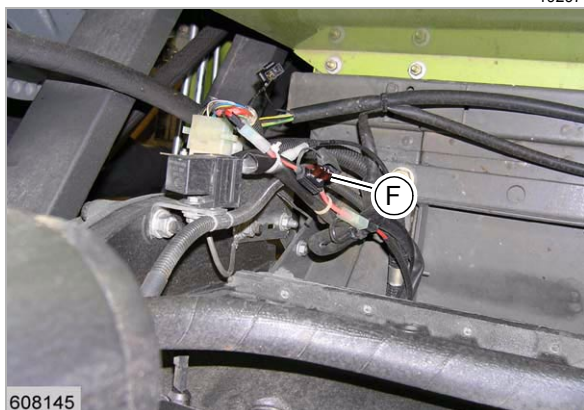
Contact with refrigerant.

Death or serious injury!

- Avoid any contact with refrigerant.
- If refrigerant splashes into the eyes, consult a doctor immediately!
- Have maintenance and repair work carried out by specialist air conditioning system workshops only.
- Do not weld any components of the refrigerant circuit and in the immediate vicinity of any parts of the refrigerant circuit. – **Danger of poisoning!**
- Maximum ambient temperature for refrigerant is 80°C.



17



18

Putting the air conditioner into operation (with York compressor)

- Unscrew the seal caps of service valves at (1 and 2).
- Completely open both service valves (1 and 2) to their fully open position and tighten them in that position so that the valve seating faces will seal off properly toward the outside as well.
- Screw on the plugs of service valves at (1 and 2). Ensure that the seal caps (V) are tight.
- Insert the flat fuse (F) (the cable with the flat fuse (F) is located between the grain tank and the engine).



Caution!

The flat fuse (F) for the air conditioner must never be inserted as long as the valves on the compressor are closed.

On cabs equipped with a cab heater, open the bypass flap by moving lever (1) to the down position. Start the diesel engine. Set the double fan to the desired speed 1 – 3 using switch (4). Turn air conditioner thermostat switch (5) in clockwise direction to set the desired temperature. The air conditioning system is now turned on.

Precooled air from inside the cab is drawn in through recirculating air grille (6) and mixed with filtered outside air. The blend is further cooled and pushed into the cab through louvres (8) and (7). The adjustable air louvres (8) and (7) allow the operator to control the direction of air flow. Air louvres (7) can be closed, if required.

When the desired temperature is reached, a thermostat switch in conjunction with an electro-magnetic clutch disengages the compressor.

The compressor is automatically engaged as the temperature rises.

The air conditioner can only work properly if the door and the windows are closed.

The air conditioner is shut down automatically if a malfunction occurs:

The air conditioner was shut down via the high-pressure switch.

After the system has cooled down, the air conditioner is switched on again automatically.

If the air conditioner is shut down very frequently at very short intervals, it must be checked for any possible faults.

Possible causes – see Problem, possible cause and remedy – Air conditioner.



Note!

Differences in temperature between the inside air and outside air of more than 8 °C to 10 °C (46 °F to 50 °F) are a danger to your health!

7.2.16 Cab with air conditioner (with Sanden compressor)



Danger!

Contact with refrigerant.

Death or serious injury!

- Avoid any contact with refrigerant.
- If refrigerant splashes into the eyes, consult a doctor immediately!
- Have maintenance and repair work carried out by specialist air conditioning system workshops only.
- Do not weld any components of the refrigerant circuit and in the immediate vicinity of any parts of the refrigerant circuit. – **Danger of poisoning!**
- Maximum ambient temperature for refrigerant is 80°C.

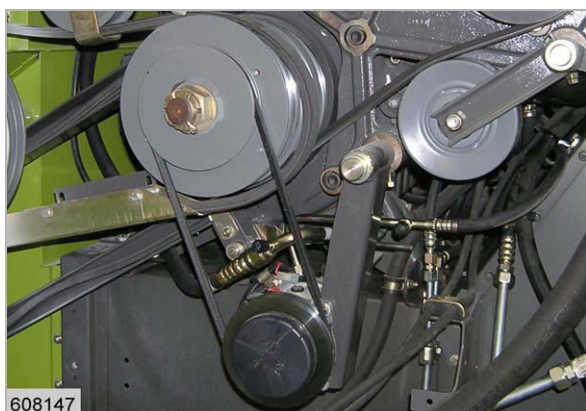
The cab is equipped with an efficient fresh air fan.

The fan can be set to three different speeds by means of the 3-position switch (4).

Putting the air conditioner into operation (with Sanden compressor)

On cabs equipped with a cab heater, open the bypass flap by moving lever (1) to the down position. Start the diesel engine. Set the double fan to the desired speed 1 – 3 using switch (4). Turn air conditioner thermostat switch (5) in clockwise direction to set the desired temperature. The air conditioning system is now turned on.

Precooled air from inside the cab is drawn in through recirculating air grille (6) and mixed with filtered outside air. The blend is further cooled and pushed into the cab through louvres (8) and (7). The adjustable air louvres (8) and (7) allow the operator to control the direction of air flow. Air louvres (7) can be closed, if required.



19303

19

When the desired temperature is reached, a thermostat switch in conjunction with an electro-magnetic clutch disengages the compressor.

The compressor is automatically engaged as the temperature rises.

The air conditioner can only work properly if the door and the windows are closed.

The air conditioner is shut down automatically if a malfunction occurs:

The air conditioner was shut down via the high-pressure switch.

After the system has cooled down, the air conditioner is switched on again automatically.

If the air conditioner is shut down very frequently at very short intervals, it must be checked for any possible faults.

Possible causes – see Problem, possible cause and remedy – Air conditioner.

**Note!**

Differences in temperature between the inside air and outside air of more than 8 °C to 10 °C (46 °F to 50 °F) are a danger to your health!

7.2.17 Cab with fan and heater

A hot water heating unit is installed downstream of the fresh air fan.

The hot water flow rate through the heater coil and thus the temperature of the heated air can be controlled by means of turn switch (3).

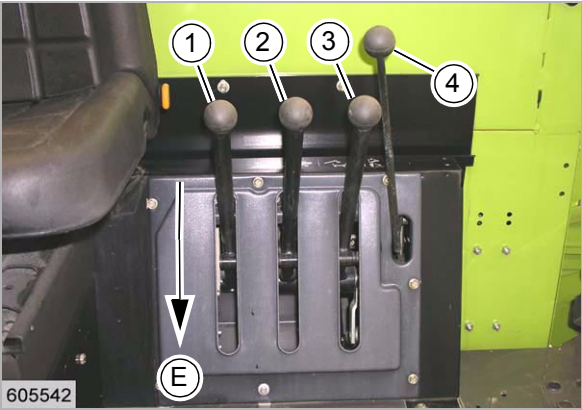
Putting the heater into operation:

Open the taps on the engine. Close the bypass flap by moving lever (1) to the up position. Turn switch (3) in clockwise direction. The further the switch is turned to the right, the higher the heating capacity. The adjustable air louvers (7) and (8) allow the operator to control the direction of air flow (heated air and fresh air).

Clean the filters in the cab roof at regular intervals – see cleaning the filters.

7.2.18 Control levers

	Designation
1	Switches front attachment on and off
2	Switches threshing mechanism on and off
3	Engaging / disengaging grain tank unloading Swinging the grain tank unloading tube out / in
4	Swinging the grain tank unloading tube out / in (DOMINATOR 130)



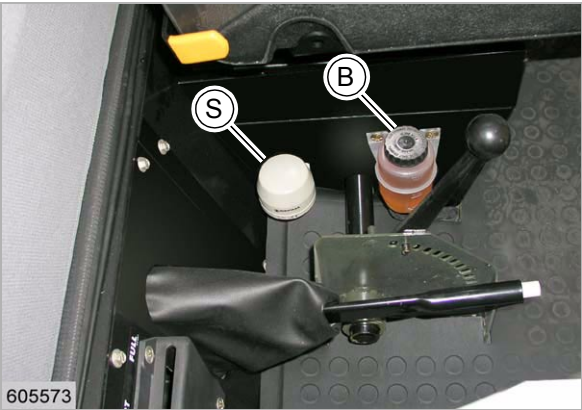
20

7.2.19 Functions monitor

The speed loss monitor monitors the speeds of the upper feed rake shaft, clean grain and returns elevators, straw walker shafts and of the straw chopper. It also monitors the air filter and the engine oil pressure.

The appropriate red indicator light in the combined instrument gauge lights up and a buzzer sounds when shaft speed slows down, when the air filter is soiled and when the engine oil pressure is too low. The buzzer (S) located on the right-hand side of the operator's seat goes on and off intermittently.

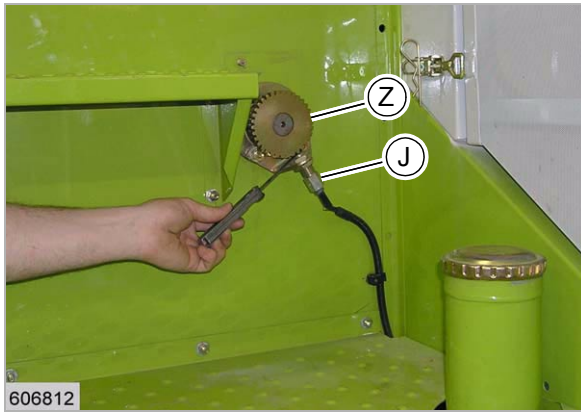
	Designation
S	Buzzer
B	Brake fluid reservoir



21



22

**23**

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Overview of controls" chapter. 👁

All magnetic pick-ups (J) must be set to a gap of 1 ± 0.5 mm between gear wheels (Z) and the magnetic pick-up.

When the engine is being started, the buzzer sounds briefly until the engine oil pressure has built up.

The shaft speed-loss monitors are switched on and off by means of a switch that is activated by the cutterbar drive control mechanism.

7.3 Attachment parts / machine body

54990

7.3.1 Worklights

Two worklights (A) on the railing of the operator's platform or on the front frame of the operator's cab and one worklight (B) on the left side of the grain tank allow the combine to be operated even in the dark.



24



25

7.3.2 Cab

As an option, the machine can be equipped with an operator's cab in one of four versions.

- Cab with fan
- Cab with fan and heater
- Cab with fan and air conditioner
- Cab with fan, heater, and air conditioner

These variants make operation of the combine far more comfortable for the operator even under the most unfavourable weather conditions (dust, heat or cold).



26

7.3.3 Sun roof

As an option, the machine can be equipped with a sun roof. The height of the sun roof is adjustable.

**27**

19435

7.3.4 Tool box

81986

The tool box with on-board tools can be found behind the doors on the left machine side.

The tool box is secured by a wire rope. The lock is located at position (1).

**28**

28347

8 Mounting/removing front attachment

8.1 General Information

38920

8.1.1 General warnings Installing / removing the front attachment

In the following sections of this chapter, a procedure instruction refers to the following general warnings.



Danger!

Moving machine parts and / or unexpected machine movements.

Death or serious injury.

- Advise everyone to leave the hazard area.



Danger!

The front attachment, reel and feeder unit may drop uncontrolled.

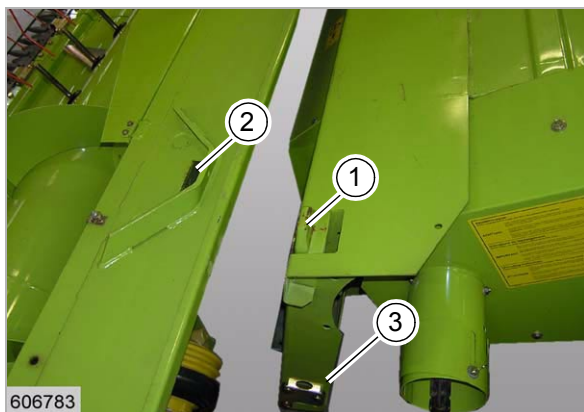
Death or serious injuries!

- Apply safety locks. 
- Keep a safe distance from the hazard area.

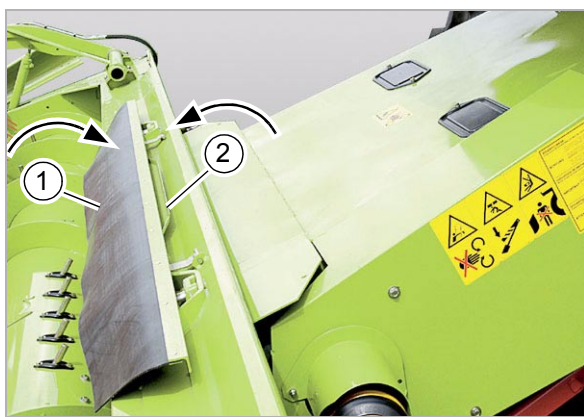
8.2 Installing the front attachment

8.2.1 Suspending front attachment

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the Fitting / removing the front attachment chapter. 
- Fitting / adjusting mounting plates (3)
- On machines fitted with AUTO-CONTOUR system, align the coupling lug (1) with the front attachment.
- Slowly approach the front attachment with the machine until the coupling lug (1) is positioned beneath the pockets (2).
- Raise the front attachment with the feed rake conveyor.
- Apply the parking brake of the machine and stop the engine.
- If provided, swing rubber blanket (1) over and place it on the feed rake conveyor.
- If provided, swing plate (2) over the intake auger.



1



2

8.2.2 Interlocking the front attachment

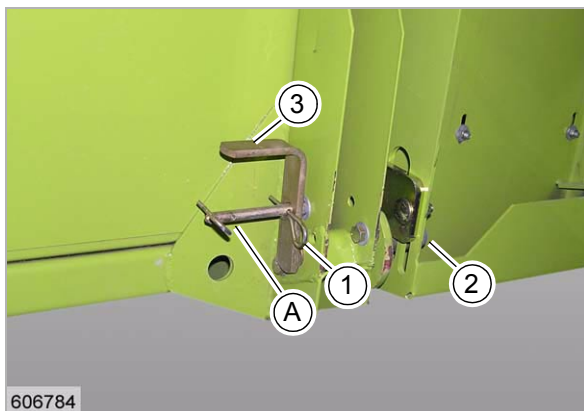
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the Fitting / removing the front attachment chapter. 

**DANGER!**

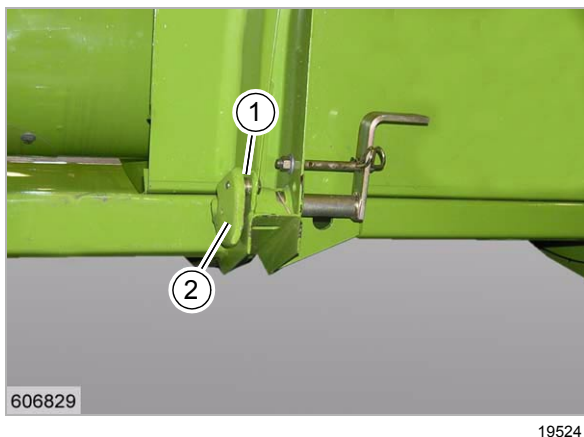
The front attachment is not sufficiently secured.

Death or serious injury.

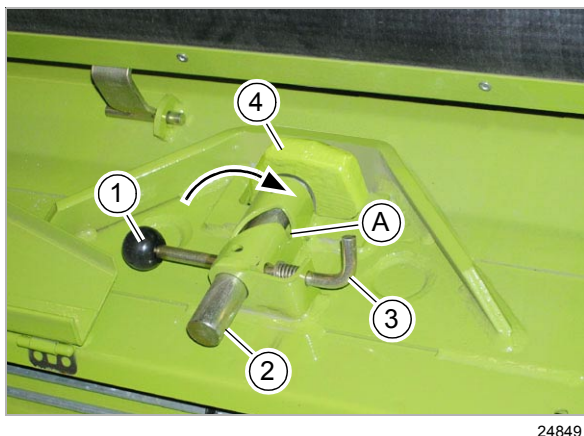
- Comply precisely with procedure instructions.
- Check the safe locking of the front attachment.



3



4



5

- Pull out cotter pin (1) at (A).
- Slide lock pin (2) up into the opening of the feed rake conveyor of the machine, using lever (3).
- Secure lever (3) in this position, using a cotter pin (1).

- Checking / adjusting stop plates.
 - Install shims (1) on both sides between the stop plates (2) and the cutterbar frame and adjust the stop plates so that there is no lateral tension on the feed rake conveyor from either side.

only front attachments and machines equipped with AUTO-CONTOUR:

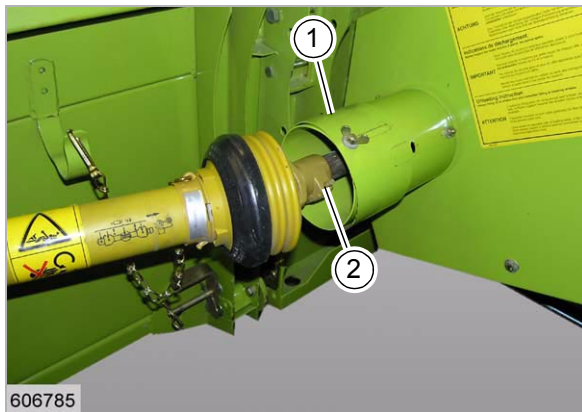
- Swing lever (1) up to position (A).
- Ensure that locking pin (2) engages in the bore of peg (4) of the machine.
- Ensure that locking pin (2) is secured against twisting by locking pin (3).

- Repeat this procedure on the other side of the machine.

70765

8.2.3 Installing universal drive shaft

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the Fitting / removing the front attachment chapter. 



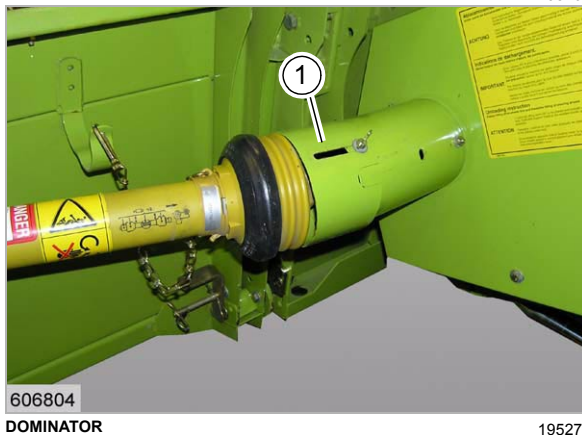
6

**Danger!**

Rotating universal drive shafts.

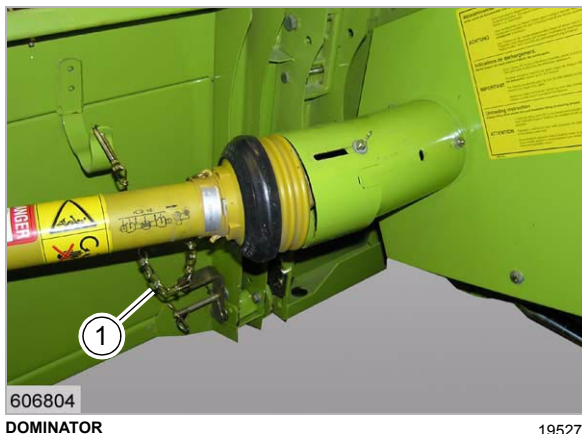
Death or serious injury.

- Check for secure latching of the locks or locking pins.
- Never operate universal drive shaft without protective guard.
- Replace defective protective guards on the universal drive shaft immediately.
- Observe the recommendations of the drive shaft manufacturer.



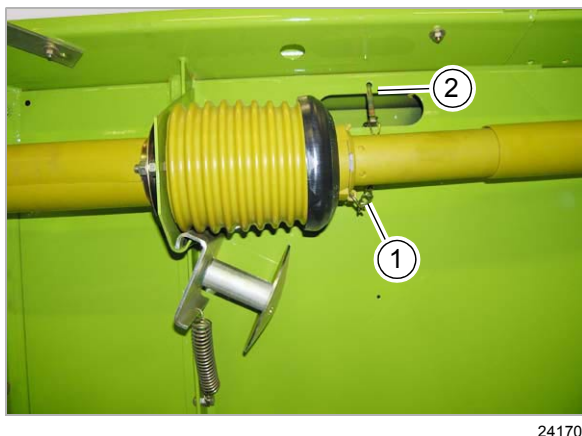
7

- Push back or swing up protective guard (1), depending on the version.
- Push in the locking pin (2).
Slide universal drive shaft onto the drive pin.
- Pull out or fold down protective guard (1), depending on the version.



8

- Turn universal drive shaft in such a manner that the chain (1) does not wrap around the universal drive shaft more than 90°.
If necessary, cut off excess length of the chain (1) or hang chain (1) so that it is shorter.



9

- Hang chain (1) on the bracket (2).
- Turn universal drive shaft in such a manner that the chain (1) does not wrap around the universal drive shaft more than 90°.
If necessary, cut off excess length of the chain (1) or hang chain (1) so that it is shorter.

8.2.4 Connecting the hydraulic system

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the Fitting / removing the front attachment chapter. 👁



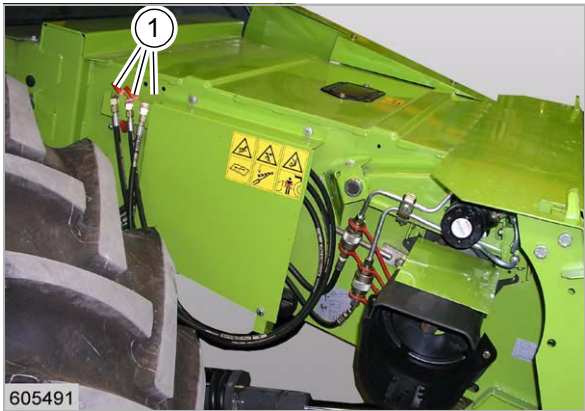
Caution!

Machine operation with polluted utilities.
Machine damage.

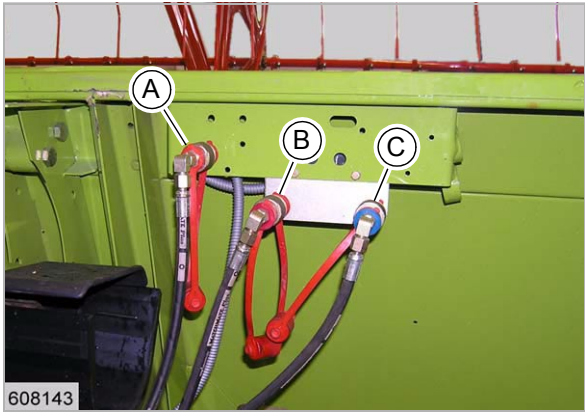
- Ensure that no dirt will get into the removed lines.
- Ensure a clean environment.

Connection	Colour
A	colourless
B *	red
C *	blue
* (accessory)	

- Connect the male couplings with a colour marking (1) to the corresponding female couplings (A/B/C).



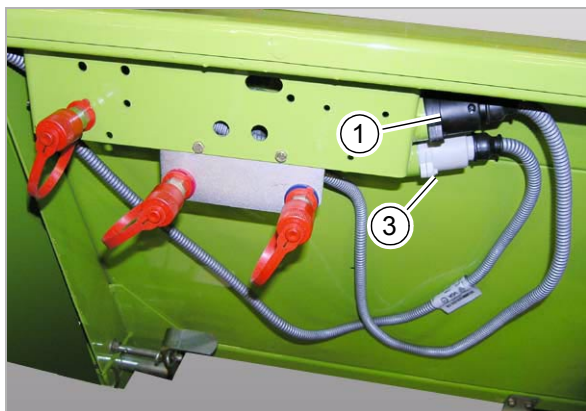
10



11

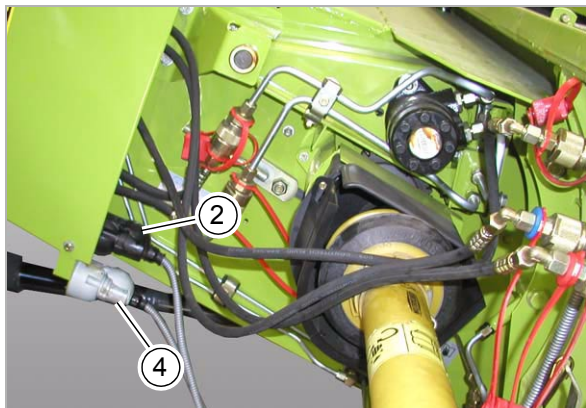
8.2.5 Connecting the electric equipment (accessory)

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the Fitting / removing the front attachment chapter. 👁



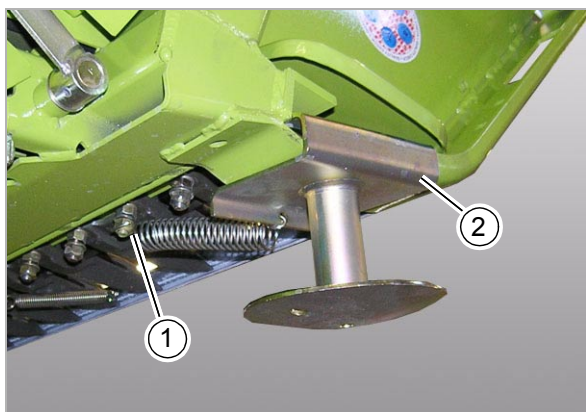
12

24274



13

24275



14

17304

- Plug connector (1) into socket (2).
- Plug connector (3) into socket (4).

8.2.6 Removing the stands

71387

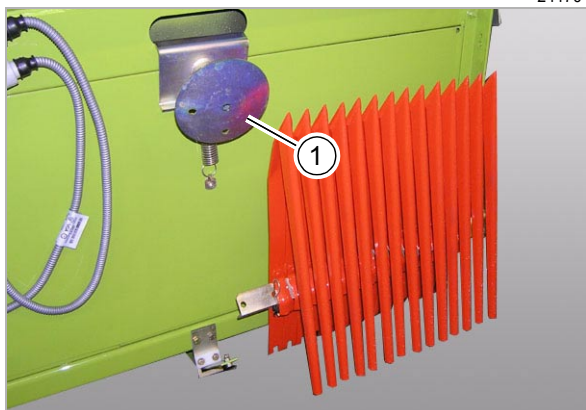
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the Fitting / removing the front attachment chapter. 
- Loosen spring at (1).
- Remove stand (2) from the base frame.
- Repeat this process on the other side of the front attachment.

- Fit stands (1) to the brackets.



15

24170



16

24512

8.3 Removing the front attachment

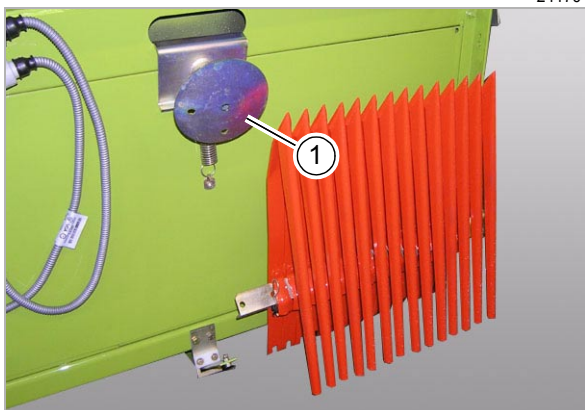
8.3.1 Fitting the stands

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the Fitting / removing the front attachment chapter. 
- Remove support (1) from bracket.



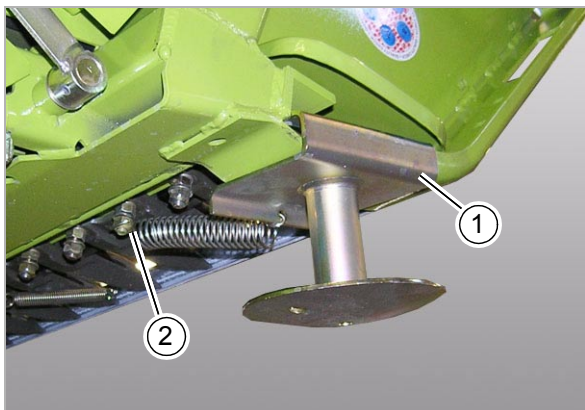
17

24170



18

24512



19

17304

- Suspend the stand (1) at the base frame.
- Secure stand (1) to bolt (2) by means of the spring.
- Repeat this process on the other side of the front attachment.

8.3.2 Disconnecting the hydraulic system

- Lower the reel completely, using the machine.

The load on the hydraulic system of the front attachment is relieved. Disconnecting and, later on, connecting of the hydraulic system coupling is made easier.

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the Fitting / removing the front attachment chapter. 👁

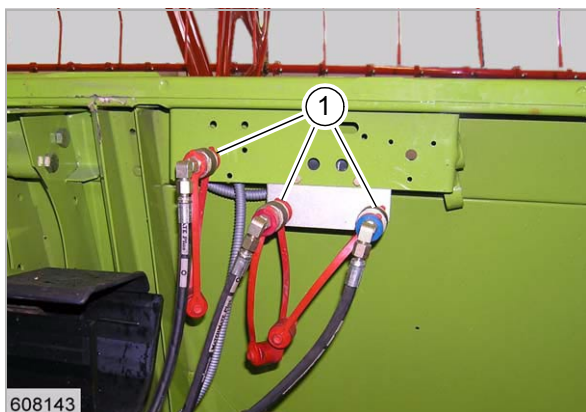


Caution!

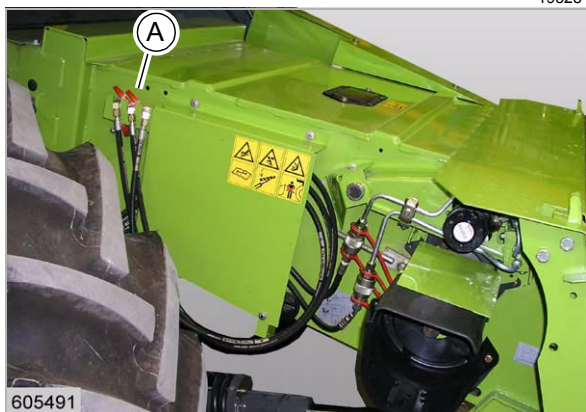
Machine operation with polluted utilities.

Machine damage.

- Ensure that no dirt will get into the removed lines.
 - Ensure a clean environment.
-
- Disconnect male coupling (1).
Partly accessory.
 - Place lid on the male coupling (1).
 - Hang in male coupling (1) at (A).



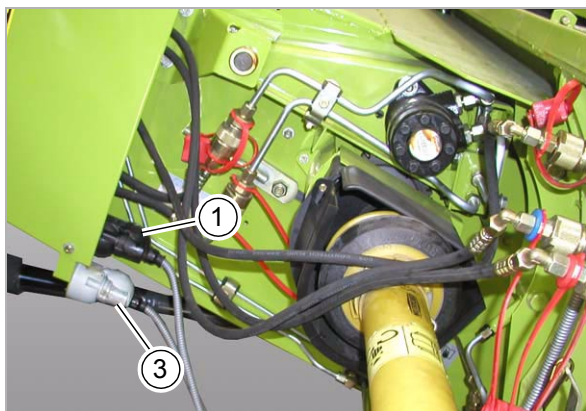
20



21

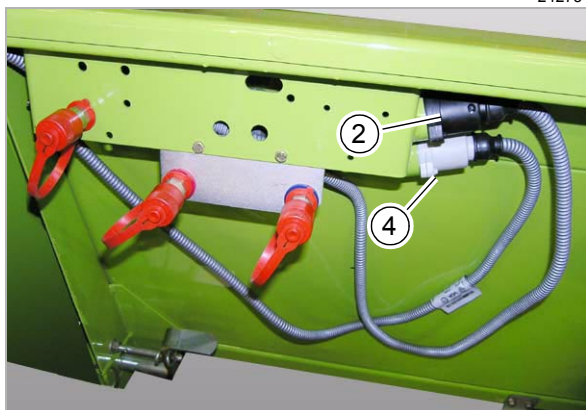
8.3.3 Disconnecting the electric equipment (accessory)

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the Fitting / removing the front attachment chapter. 👁



22

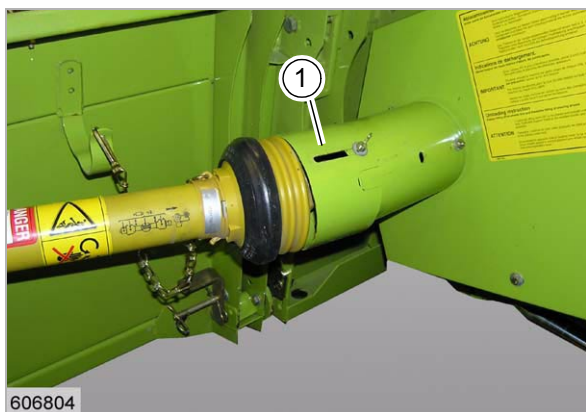
24275



23

24274

- Disconnect connector (1) and place it in holder (2).
- Disconnect connector (3) and place it in holder (4).



24

606804

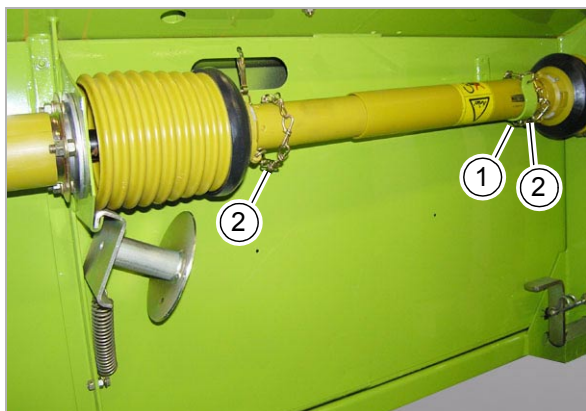
DOMINATOR

19527

8.3.4 Removing universal drive shaft

71364

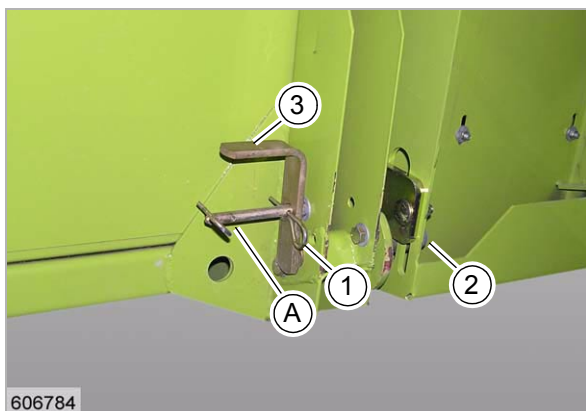
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the Fitting / removing the front attachment chapter.
- Push back or swing up protective guard (1), depending on the version.
- Push in the locking pin (2).
Pull universal drive shaft off of drive pin.
- Pull out or fold down protective guard (1), depending on the version.



25

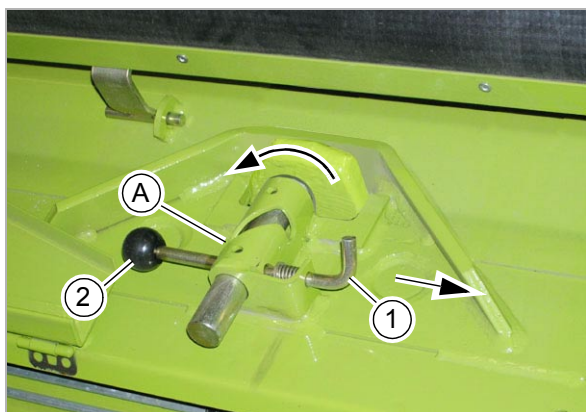
24506

- Place universal drive shaft in holder (1).
- Hang in chains (2) as short as possible.



26

19523



27

24849

8.3.5 Unlocking the front attachment

71365

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the Fitting / removing the front attachment chapter.
- Pull out cotter pin (1).
- Pull lock pin (2) out of the feeder unit of the machine, using lever (3).
- Shift lever (3) all the way to the outside and secure in that position by means of cotter pin (1) at (A).

only front attachments and machines equipped with AUTO-CONTOUR:

- Pull out lever (1) and swing lever (2) up to position (A).

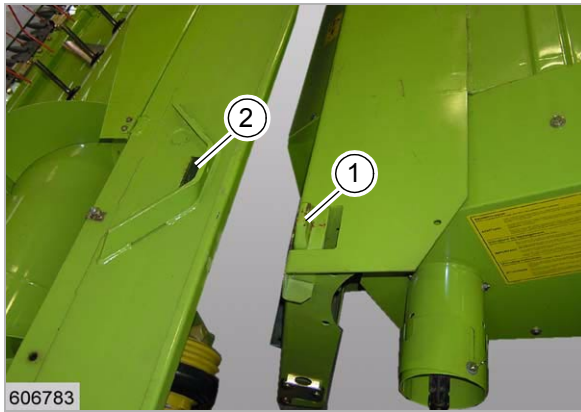
Lever (1) does not engage in that position.

- Repeat this procedure on the other side of the machine.

71375

8.3.6 Unhitching front attachment

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the Fitting / removing the front attachment chapter.



19522

- Bring front attachment into the horizontal position.
- Lower feed rake conveyor of the machine all the way down until coupling pin (1) is positioned outside of coupling receptacle (2).
- Carefully back-up the machine.

9 Driving and transportation

9.1 General Information

85056

9.1.1 General warnings - Driving and transportation

In the following sections of this chapter, a procedure instruction refers to the following general warnings.



Danger!

Always stop the engine before carrying out any work on the machine.

Moving machine parts and / or unexpected machine movement.

Death or serious injury.

- Diesel engine OFF.
- Apply parking brake.
- Remove the ignition key.
- Remove key of battery isolating switch.
- Wait for machine parts which run on have come to a complete halt.
- Secure machine by wheel chocks.
- Ensure that the machine cannot be started by any third persons.



Danger!

The front attachment, reel and feeder unit may drop uncontrolled.

Death or serious injuries!

- Apply safety locks.
- Keep a safe distance from the hazard area.

81876

9.1.2 Preparing road travel

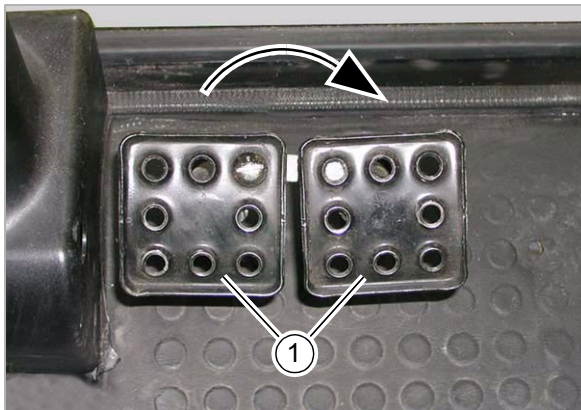


Danger!

Insufficient knowledge about machine functions.

Death or serious injury.

- Before putting the machine into operation, make yourself familiar with the controls.



27491

1

**Danger!**

Persons are in the driving range of the machine.

Death or serious injury.

- Before and while driving, ensure that there are no persons or objects in the driving range.
- Do not carry any persons outside of the cab.

**Danger!**

Machine starts to move unexpectedly.

Death or serious injury.

- Never shift gears while driving!
- Never shift gears while driving on slopes.
- Do not let the machine roll.

- Clean coarse dirt off of the machine.
- Take a seat.
- Adjust the driver's seat. 👁️
- Adjust the steering column. 👁️
- Sound the horn.
- Start the diesel engine. 👁️

**Danger!**

Use of independent brake on public roads and lanes.

Death or serious injury.

- Lock the foot brake pedals together before travel on public roads and lanes.
- Use the independent brakes exclusively during work in the field.

- Couple the foot brake pedals (1).
- Disengage parking brake. 👁️

**Danger!**

Unexpected machine movements.

Death or serious injuries!

- Do not drive in 3rd gear on gradients of more than 7%.



Danger!

Unexpected machine movements.

Death or serious injuries!

Machine damage.

- Adapt the ground speed to the field conditions in areas with a slope.
- Never exceed the permitted ground speed of 20 (25) km/h on surfaces with a slope.

- Shift machine to desired gear. 👁
- Swing in unloading auger tube. 👁
- Close grain tank cover. 👁
- Move the front attachment to transport position and prepare it for road travel.
- Raise / lower the feed rake conveyor (front attachment) until the clearance between the bottom edge of the feed rake conveyor and the ground is 500 mm.



Danger!

Unexpected machine movements.

Death or serious injuries!

- For road travel the road travel / fieldwork switch must be OFF.

- Switch off switch (1).

2



Danger!

Unexpected machine movements.

Death or serious injuries!

- During road travel, the front attachment gate must be blocked.

- Block the front attachment gate (1 / 2) with lock (X).

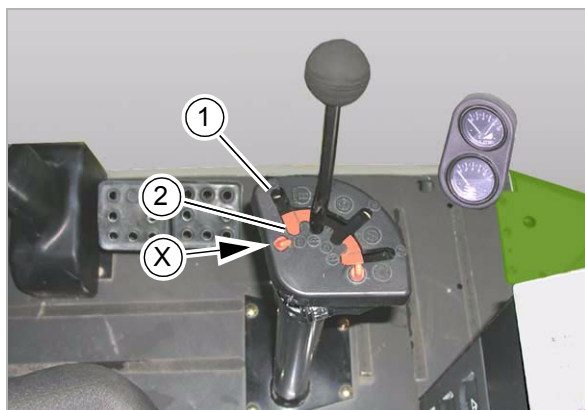
3

- Adjust the diesel engine speed. 👁
- Switch on the warning beacon. 👁
- If necessary, switch on the drive lights. 👁
- Switch off the work lights. 👁



605538
DOMINATOR 150 / 140

19415



DOMINATOR 130

28327

9.1.3 Preparing fieldwork

**Danger!**

Insufficient knowledge about machine functions.

Death or serious injury.

- Before putting the machine into operation, make yourself familiar with the controls.

**Danger!**

Persons are in the driving range of the machine.

Death or serious injury.

- Before and while driving, ensure that there are no persons or objects in the driving range.
- Do not carry any persons outside of the cab.

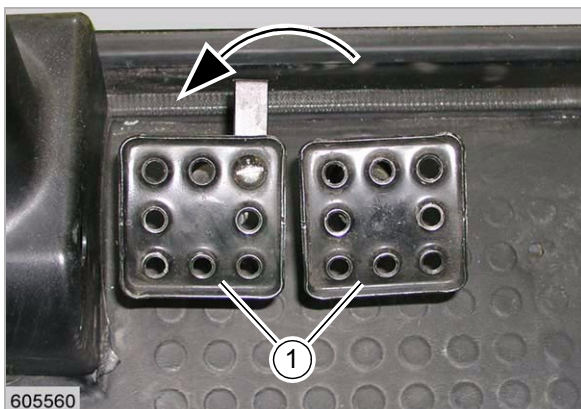
**Danger!**

Machine starts to move unexpectedly.

Death or serious injury.

- Never shift gears while driving!
- Never shift gears while driving on slopes.
- Do not let the machine roll.

- Sit on the operator's seat.
- Adjust the operator's seat.
- Adjust the steering column.
- Sound the horn.
- Start the diesel engine. 👁️

**4**

19469

**Danger!**

Use of independent brake on public roads and lanes.

Death or serious injury.

- Lock the foot brake pedals together before travel on public roads and lanes.
- Use the independent brakes exclusively during work in the field.

- If necessary, uncouple the foot brake pedals (1).
- Disengage parking brake. 👁️
- Shift machine to desired gear. 👁️



Danger!

Unexpected machine movements.

Death or serious injuries!

- Do not drive in 3rd gear on gradients of more than 7%.



Danger!

Unexpected machine movements.

Death or serious injuries!

Machine damage.

- Adapt the ground speed to the field conditions in areas with a slope.
- Never exceed the permitted ground speed of 20 (25) km/h on surfaces with a slope.

- Switch on switch (1).

5

- Unblock the front attachment gate (1 / 2) with lock (X).

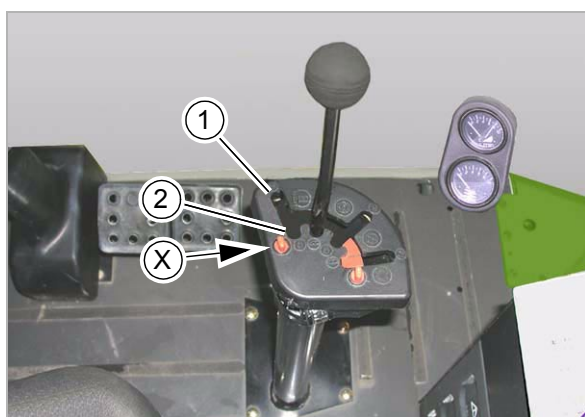
6

- Move the front attachment to working position and prepare it for fieldwork.
- Prepare machine for fieldwork.
- Adjust the diesel engine speed. 👁
- Switch off warning beacon. 👁
- If necessary, switch on the drive lights. 👁
- Switch on the work lights. 👁



DOMINATOR 150 / 140

19415



DOMINATOR 130

28328

9.2 Engine

9.2.1 Adjusting the diesel engine speed (DOMINATOR 150 / 140)

The diesel engine speed is set using the rotary control switch (1).

The engine speeds are needed for different kinds of work with the machine.



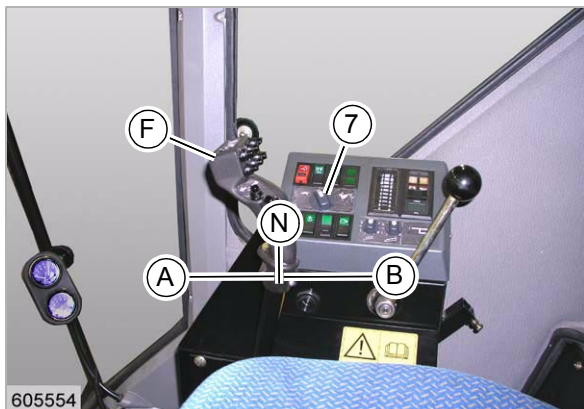
Slow idle speed:

- Starting the diesel engine
- Manoeuvring, for example on level surface

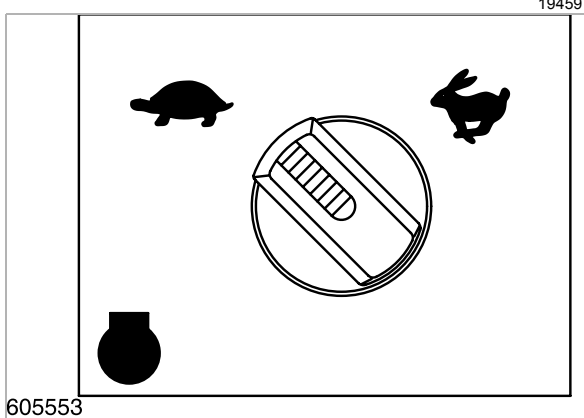


Max. no-load speed:

- Road travel
- Fieldwork



7



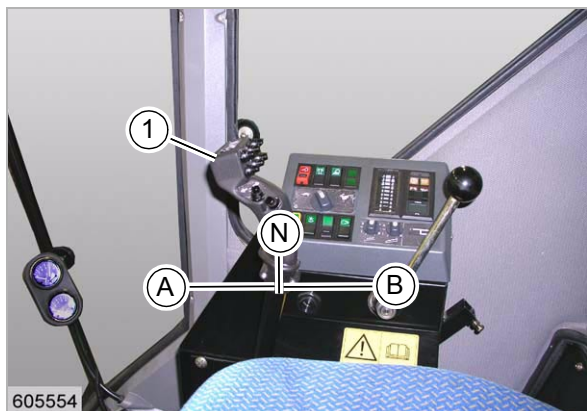
8

9.2.2 Starting the diesel engine (DOMINATOR 150 / 140)

- Sit on the operator's seat.
- Adjust the operator's seat.
- Adjust the steering column.
- Disengage the front attachment.
- Stop the threshing mechanism.
- Switch off the grain tank unloading mechanism.

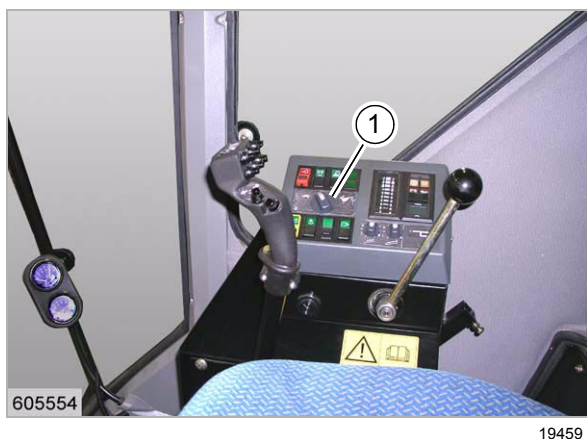


9



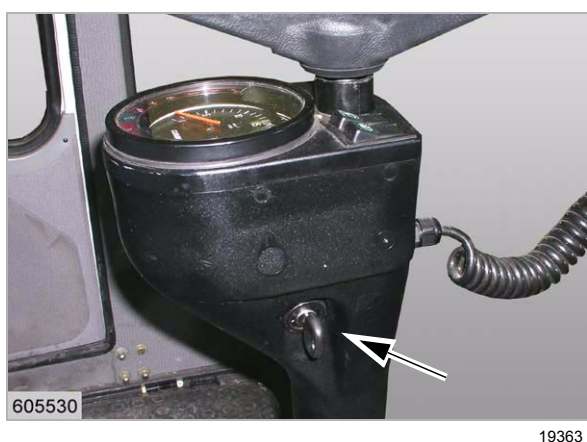
10

- Move the ground speed control lever (1) to neutral position (N).



11

- Set the diesel engine speed rotary control switch (1) to the min. no-load speed.



12

- Sound the horn.



Danger!

When starting the machine, persons are on the machine or in its hazard area.

Death or serious injury.

- Before starting the machine ensure that there are no persons or objects in the hazardous area.

- Turn the ignition key to position 1.
- Turn the ignition key to the limit stop until the diesel engine starts.

Do not hold the ignition key at the limit stop for more than 10 seconds!

- Release the ignition key.

The ignition key engages and the diesel engine is started.

At low outside temperatures, let diesel engine run at min. no-load speed for some minutes after starting.

9.2.3 Stopping the diesel engine (DOMINATOR 150 / 140)

- Set the diesel engine speed rotary control switch (1) to the min. no-load speed.



13

**Warning!**

Overheating of the turbocharger.

Machine damage.

- Before turning off, first let the diesel engine run a short time at slow idling speed.



14

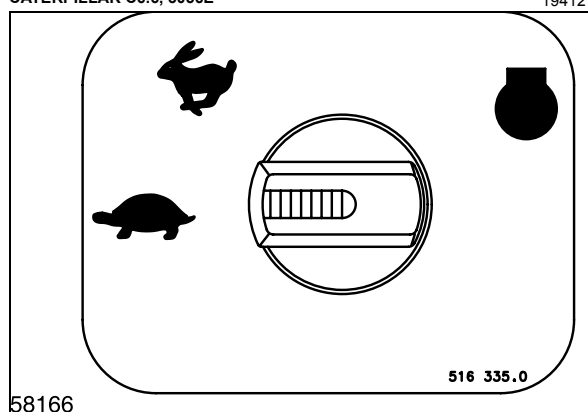
- Disengage all drives previously engaged.
- Turn the ignition key to position 0.

The diesel engine stops.



605550
CATERPILLAR C6.6, 3056E

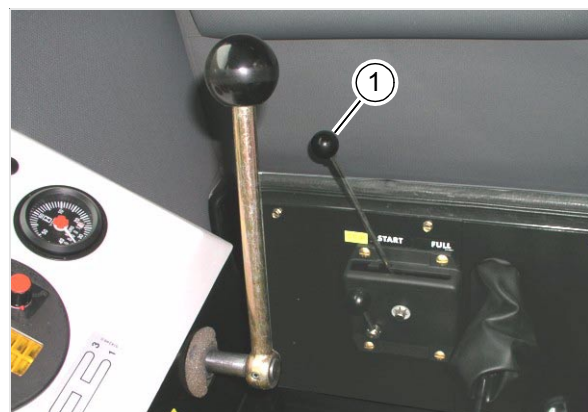
19412



58166

CATERPILLAR C6.6, 3056E

19413



Perkins 1006-T6

29771

15

16

17

9.2.4 Adjusting the diesel engine speed (DOMINATOR 130)

CATERPILLAR C-6.6, 3056E

The diesel engine speed is set using the rotary control switch (1).

The engine speeds are needed for different types of work with the machine.



Slow idling speed:

- Start the diesel engine.
- Manoeuvring, e.g. on a level surface.



Max. no-load speed:

- Road travel.
- Harvesting (grain tank unloading).

Perkins 1006-T6

The diesel engine speed is set using lever (1).

The engine speeds are needed for different types of work with the machine.

(STOP) (hidden) = without function,  Stopping the diesel engine (DOMINATOR 130)

START = Lower idle speed:

- Starting the diesel engine
- Manoeuvring, for example on level surface

FULL = Max. no-load speed:

- Road travel
- Fieldwork

80069

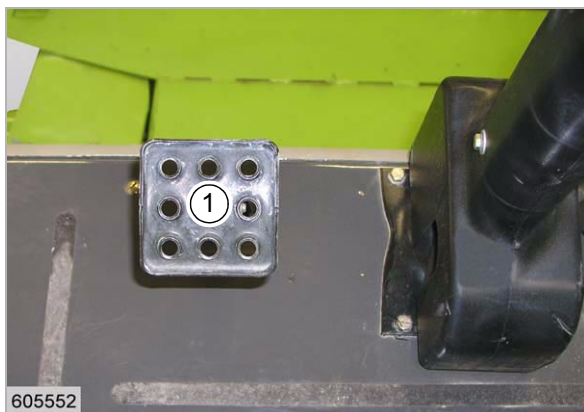
9.2.5 Starting the diesel engine (DOMINATOR 130)

- Sit on the operator's seat.
- Adjust the operator's seat.
- Adjust the steering column.



18

- Disengage the front attachment. 👁
- Stop the threshing mechanism.
- Switch off the grain tank unloading mechanism. 👁



19

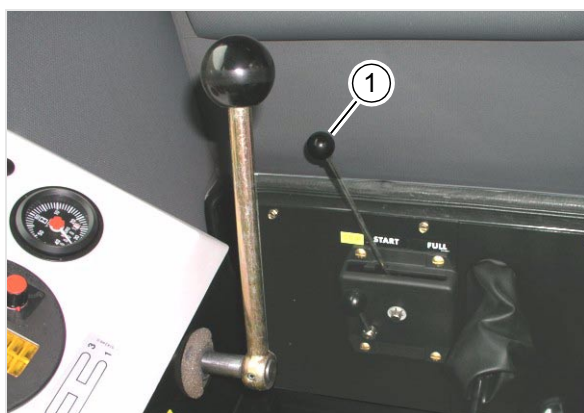
- Press the clutch pedal (1).



20

CATERPILLAR C-6.6, 3056E

- Set the diesel engine speed rotary control switch (1) to the min. no-load speed.



21

Perkins 1006-T6

- Set the diesel engine speed lever (1) to the START position. 👁

- Sound the horn.



22

19363



Danger!

When starting the machine, persons are on the machine or in its hazard area.

Death or serious injury.

- Before starting the machine ensure that there are no persons or objects in the hazardous area.

- Turn the ignition key to position 1.
- Turn the ignition key to the limit stop until the diesel engine starts.

Do not hold the ignition key at the limit stop for more than 10 seconds!

- Release the ignition key.

The ignition key engages and the diesel engine is started.

At low outside temperatures, let diesel engine run at min. no-load speed for some minutes after starting.

80095

9.2.6 Stopping the diesel engine (DOMINATOR 130)



Warning!

Overheating of the turbocharger.

Machine damage.

- Before turning off, first let the diesel engine run a short time at slow idling speed.

CATERPILLAR C-6.6, 3056E

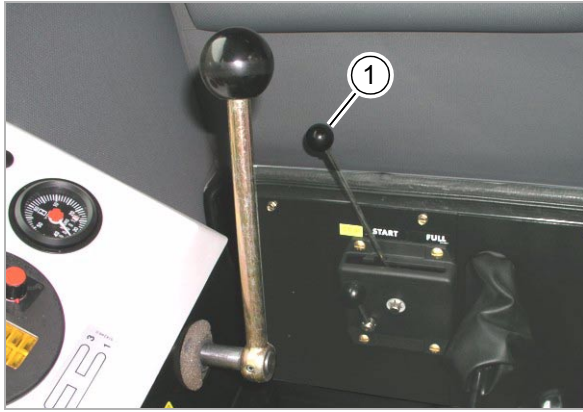
- Set the diesel engine speed rotary control switch (1) to the min. no-load speed.



23

19412

605550
CATERPILLAR C6.6, 3056E



Perkins 1006-T6

29771

24

Perkins 1006-T6

- Set the diesel engine speed lever (1) to the START position. 👁



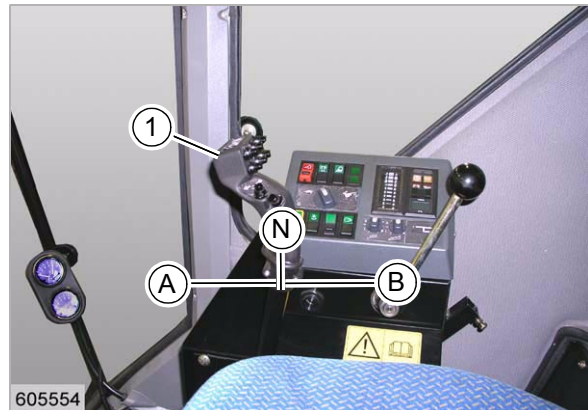
605530

19363

25

- Disengage all drives previously engaged.
- Turn the ignition key to position 0.

The diesel engine stops.



26

9.3 Chassis

9.3.1 Ground speed control lever (DOMINATOR 150 / 140)

The bottom part of the multi-function handle is referred to as the ground speed control lever.

The ground speed control lever (1) sets the direction of travel and the ground speed within the respective gears in an infinitely variable way.

The respective gears must be engaged separately before starting off. See Shifting gears.



WARNING:

Sensitive components.

Material damage

- Actuate the ground speed control lever only with the engine running.

Forward travel

The further the ground speed control lever (1) is moved from the neutral position (N) in direction (A), the higher the forward travel speed will be.

Stopping

The further the ground speed control lever (1) is moved to the neutral position (N), the slower the machine moves.

When the ground speed control lever (1) is in neutral position (N), the machine stops. In addition, depress the foot brake pedals downwards. See braking / stopping the machine.

Reverse travel

The further the ground speed control lever (1) is moved from the neutral position (N) in direction (B), the higher the reverse travel speed will be.

9.3.2 Shifting a gear (DOMINATOR 150 / 140)

80211

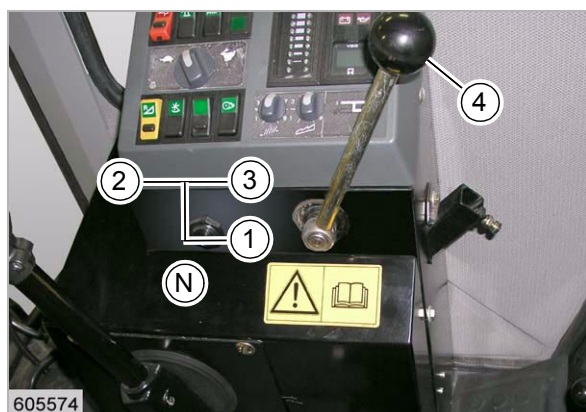


Danger!

Machine starts to move unexpectedly.

Death or serious injury.

- Never shift gears while driving!
 - Never shift gears while driving on slopes.
 - Do not let the machine roll.
-
- Stop the machine.
 - Move the ground speed control lever to neutral.
 - In addition, depress the foot brake pedals downwards.



27

19430

- Using the shift lever (4), adjust the machine to the desired switch position.

	Gear	Designation
N		Neutral position
1	1st gear	Fieldwork gear
2	2nd gear	Fieldwork gear / road gear
3	3rd gear	Road gear

**Note!**

Shift lever locks during shifting.

Gear is difficult to engage.

- Set shift lever in neutral.
- Release foot brake pedals.
- Briefly actuate the ground speed control lever with the engine running.
- Set ground speed control lever to neutral while the engine is running.
- Depress the foot brake pedals downwards.
- Set shift lever to desired shift position.

9.3.3 Ground speed control lever (DOMINATOR 130)

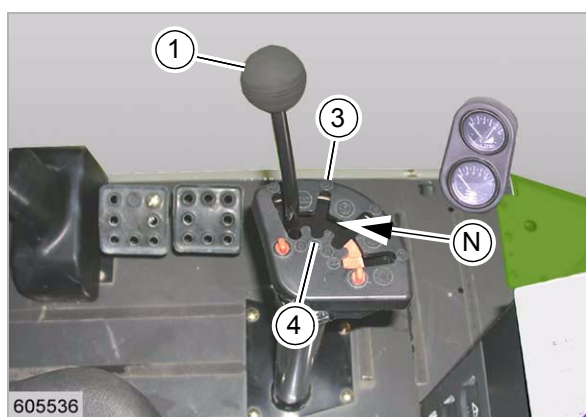
The control lever of the control unit for the ground speed function in gate (3 / 4) is referred to as the ground speed control lever (1).

The ground speed control lever sets the speed within the respective gears in an infinitely variable way. After actuating the control unit, the control lever automatically returns to neutral (N) from any position.

The respective gears must be engaged separately before starting off. See Shifting gears.

Reducing the ground speed

- Move the ground speed control lever (1) from the neutral position (N) towards (3), thus reducing the ground speed within the selected gear.



28

19409



Danger!

The ground speed is only reduced, the machine will not stop with this function.

Death or serious injuries!

- Make yourself familiar with this function.
- Brake / stop the machine.
- Depress the clutch pedal fully.
- Depress the foot brake pedals downwards.

Increasing the ground speed

- Move the ground speed control lever (1) from the neutral position (N) towards (4), thus increasing the ground speed within the selected gear.

80236

9.3.4 Shifting a gear (DOMINATOR 130)



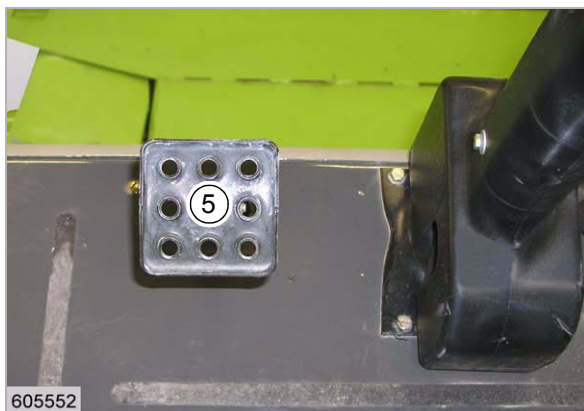
Danger!

Machine starts to move unexpectedly.

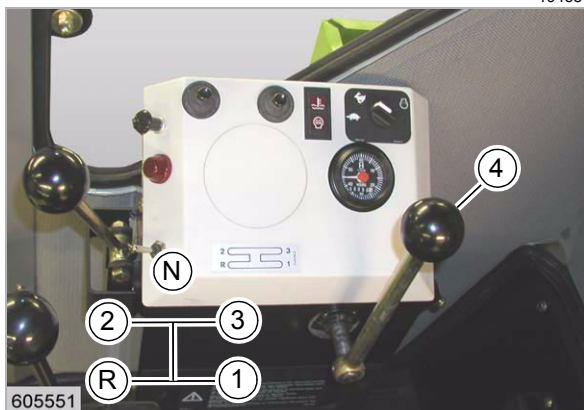
Death or serious injury.

- Never shift gears while driving!
- Never shift gears while driving on slopes.
- Do not let the machine roll.

- Stop the machine. 👁
- In addition, depress the foot brake pedals downwards.



29



30

- Depress the clutch pedal (5) fully.
- Using the shift lever (4), adjust the machine to the desired switch position.

	Gear	Designation
N		Neutral position
R		Reverse gear
1	1st gear	Fieldwork gear
2	2nd gear	Fieldwork gear / road gear
3	3rd gear	Road gear

- Release parking brake if required.
- After the gear has been engaged, release pedals of foot brake and slowly release the clutch pedal. Take the foot off of the clutch pedal (5), thus avoiding unnecessary clutch drag.

The clutch engages and the machine starts off.



Note!

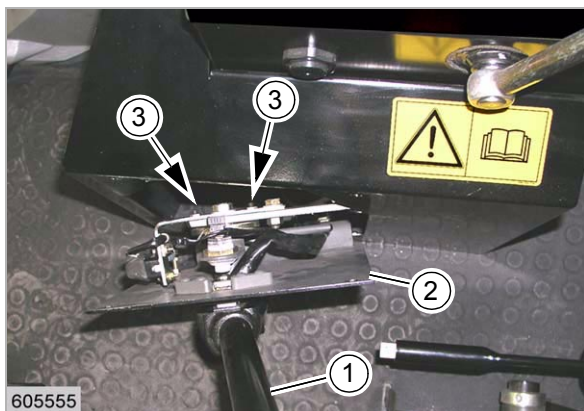
Shift lever locks during shifting.

Gear is difficult to engage.

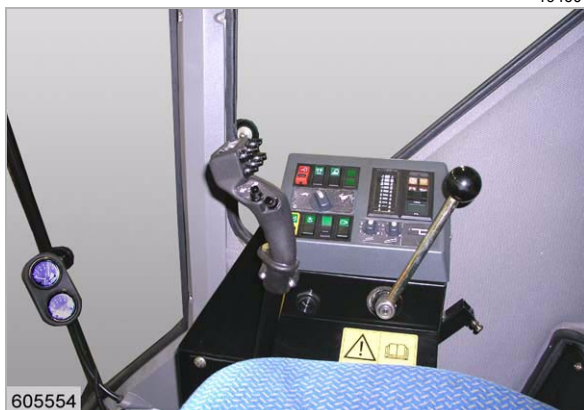
- Release parking brake if required.
- Release foot brake pedals.
- Slowly release the clutch pedal.
- Depress the clutch pedal fully.
- Depress the foot brake pedals downwards.
- Set shift lever to desired shift position.

9.3.5 Adjusting the ground speed control lever actuating resistance (DOMINATOR 150 / 140)

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Driving and transportation" chapter.



31



32

The operating smoothness of the ground speed control lever (1) can be adapted to the operator.



Danger!

Unexpected machine movements.

Death or serious injury.

- Never adjust the operating smoothness of the ground speed control lever while driving.
- Do not set the operating smoothness too low.
- Adjust the operating smoothness according to the instructions.

- Unscrew plate (2).
- Adjust the actuating resistance at the set screws (3).

Adjust actuating resistance so that the ground speed control lever cannot move independently while the machine is driving.

A hand force on the handle of 25 - 30 N should be required as a guideline value for moving the ground speed control lever.

- Mount plate (2).

4277

9.3.6 Driving behaviour



Danger!

Unexpected machine movements.

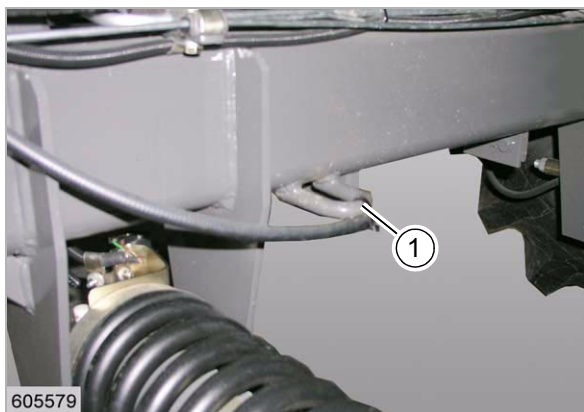
Death or serious injury.

- Adapt your driving style to the local terrain and ground conditions.
- Adapt your driving style to the load carried.
- Be especially careful when working on slopes!

40736

9.3.7 Towing the machine

The machine should be towed only if this is absolutely necessary.



33

19472

**Danger!**

Towing the machine.

Death or serious injury.

Serious machine damage.

- Tow machine only when absolutely necessary.
- Do not tow machine over an extended distance.
- Consider that steering is heavier when the engine is shut down.
- Use suitable towing tools.
- Tow machine only with **no** gear engaged.

80174

9.3.8 Forward towing

A tow rope or chain can be attached to the traction eye (1) of the drive axle for towing the combine forward.

**Danger!**

Towing the machine.

Death or serious injury.

Serious machine damage.

- Tow machine only when absolutely necessary.
- Do not tow machine over an extended distance.
- Consider that steering is heavier when the engine is shut down.
- Use suitable towing tools.
- Tow machine only with **no** gear engaged.

40755

9.3.9 Reverse towing**Caution**

Towing backwards.

Machine damage.

- Do not tow machine backwards.
- Do not attach any tow rope / tow chain to the drawbar hitch / axle body.

9.4 Brake

80311

9.4.1 Applying the parking brake

The parking brake functions independently of the foot brake.

When the ignition is ON and the parking brake applied, the symbol (ⓘ) is displayed in the on-board information system.

- Pull the parking brake lever up with your hand and let lever engage.
- Make sure that the parking brake is sufficiently applied.

The parking brake is applied.



34

19428



35

19428

80315

9.4.2 Releasing the parking brake

- Slightly pull up the parking brake lever with your hand and push pin (1) until the pawl has disengaged.
- Keep pin pressed and lower the parking brake lever fully.



WARNING:

Applied brakes become hot during driving.
Machine damage

- Always release the parking brake all the way before driving.

The parking brake is released.

The symbol (ⓘ) in the onboard information system disappears.

80316

9.4.3 Foot brake

The foot brake can be used both as a conventional brake and as an independent brake.

**Danger!**

Use of independent brake on public roads and lanes.

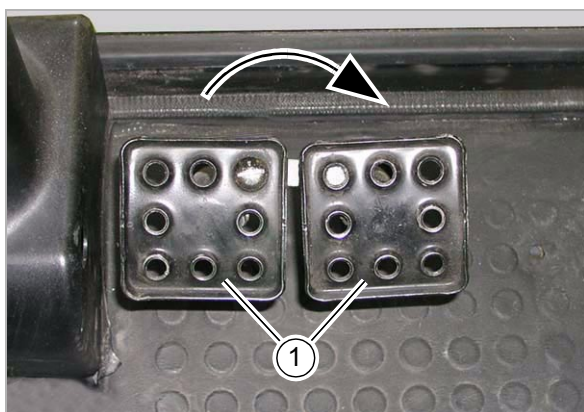
Death or serious injury.

- Lock the foot brake pedals together before travel on public roads and lanes.
- Use the independent brakes exclusively during work in the field.

The independent brake serves for handling tight bends or as a steering aid on muddy ground.

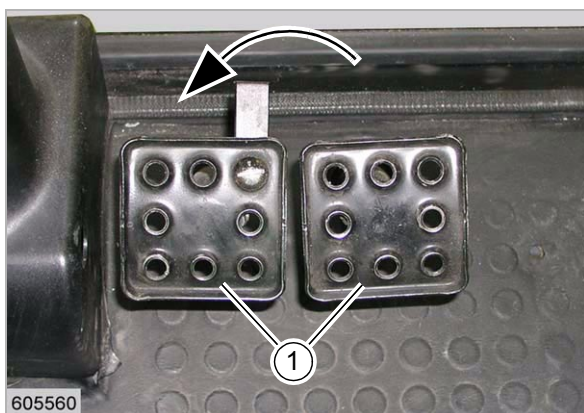
The brake settings are as follows:

- Conventional brake with coupled brake pedal (1).



36

27491



37

19469

- Independent brake with uncoupled brake pedal (1).

9.4.4 Braking / stopping the machine (DOMINATOR 150 / 140)

80321

While driving, the machine can be decelerated and stopped using the multifunction lever.

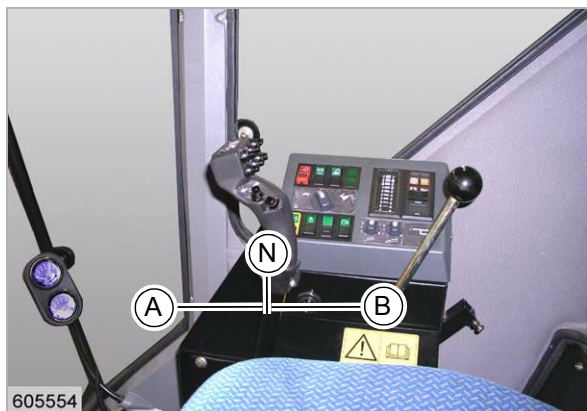
The machine can also be braked using the foot brake.

**Danger!**

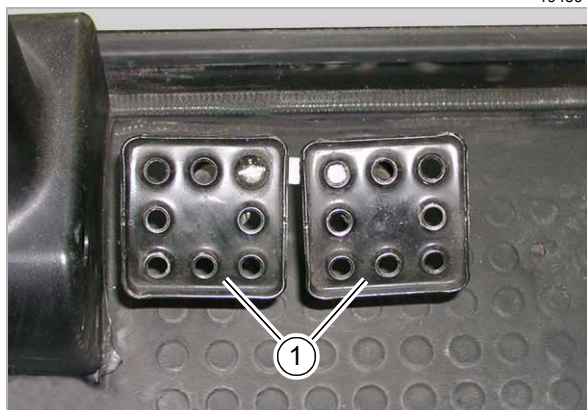
Use of the independent brake.

Death or serious injuries!

- Couple the foot brake pedals.



38



39

Brakes:

- Move the ground speed control lever towards the neutral position (N).
- In addition, depress the foot brake pedals (1) downwards.

Stopping:

- Move the ground speed control lever towards the neutral **position** (N).
- In addition, depress the foot brake pedals (1) downwards.

9.4.5 Braking / stopping the machine (DOMINATOR 130)

While driving, the machine ground speed can be reduced within the selected gear using the ground speed control lever and the foot brake.

While driving, the machine can be decelerated and stopped by depressing the clutch and the foot brake.



Danger!

Use of the independent brake.

Death or serious injuries!

- Couple the foot brake pedals.

Brakes:

- Move the ground speed control lever (1) from the neutral position (N) towards (3), thus reducing the ground speed within the selected gear.



40

**Danger!**

The ground speed is only reduced, the machine will not stop with this function.

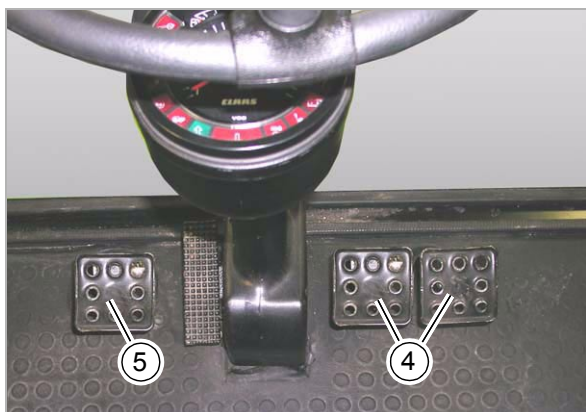
Death or serious injuries!

- Make yourself familiar with this function.
- Brake / stop the machine.
- Depress the clutch pedal fully.
- Depress the foot brake pedals downwards.

- In addition, depress the foot brake pedals (4) downwards.

Stopping:

- Depress the clutch pedal (5) fully.
- Depress the foot brake pedals (4) downwards.
- When the machine is standing still, disengage the gear.

**41**

28292

**42**

19428

9.4.6 Parking the machine

- Drive the machine on solid ground.
- Engage the parking brake using the parking brake lever (1).
- Stop the diesel engine. 👁
- Remove the ignition key.
- When parking the machine on a slope, secure the machine against rolling away with a wheel chock. 👁

81794

9.5 Steering

4284

9.5.1 Steering

The hydrostatic steering enables easy steering of the machine with the rear wheels.



Danger!

The machine swings out at the rear.

Death or serious injury.

- Be careful when driving on public roads.
- Be careful when taking tight bends.

The steering continues to function even with the engine stopped. But a much greater steering effort is required.

81838

9.5.2 Adjusting the steering column



Danger!

Unexpected machine movements.

Death or serious injury.

- Never adjust the steering column while driving!

Adjusting the steering column

- Seize the steering wheel with the hand.
- Press lever (1) with the foot at the front and loosen the steering column.
Move the steering column to the desired position by hand.
- Press lever (1) with the foot at the rear, thus arresting the steering column.

The steering column is now arrested in the desired position.



43

9.6 Hitch

9.6.1 Hitching the trailer

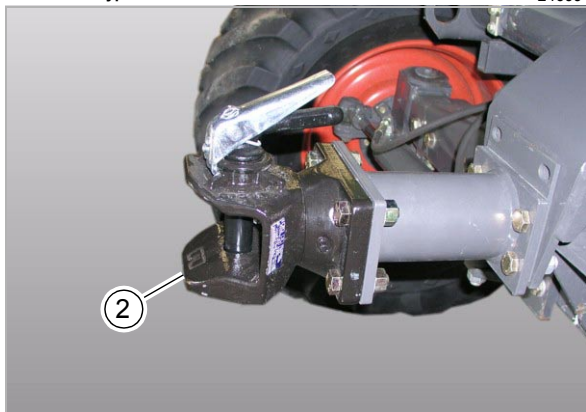
- Identify the trailer hitch by means of the identification plate on the trailer hitch.
- Observe the type-specific details.



Trailer hitch type AK 64/1 B ...

24699

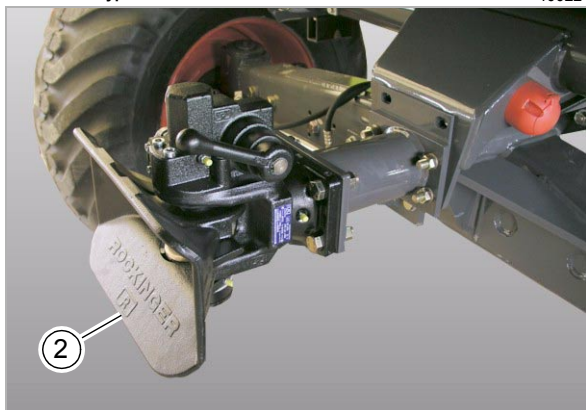
44



Trailer hitch type 810 ...

40022

45



Trailer hitch type 841 ...

36440

46

**Warning!**

Travel in uneven terrain.

Tail of machine will drop.

Machine damage.

- Ensure clearance between machine and trailer.

**Danger!**

Exceeding permissible loads.

Death or serious injuries!

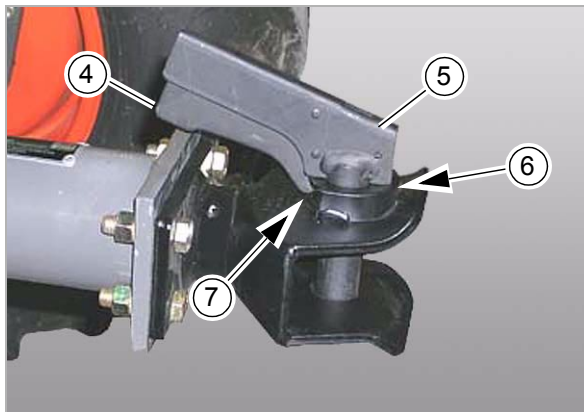
- Do not exceed permissible axle load and drawbar load of the trailer.
- Do not exceed permissible axle load and drawbar load of the tractor.

**Danger**

Limbs within range of the trailer hitch or the trailer.

Risk of death or serious injuries.

- Keep limbs away from the trailer hitch.
- Never remain standing between the trailer hitch and the trailer.
- Observe the regulations of the German employers' liability insurance association or its equivalent.



Trailer hitch type AK 64/1 B ...

30204

47

Type AK 64/1 B ...

- Secure the rear axle of the transport carriage so it will not roll away.
- If required, release the trailer steering axle brake. The drawbar must be freely moving in all directions.

With rigid-drawbar trailers, the hitch eye must hit the centre of the hitch (2).

Failure to observe this rule will cause damage!

- If required, set the hitch eyes to the height of the coupling point.
- Press pawl (4) and handle of pin (5) together and pull out of the trailer hitch.
- Clean the trailer hitch with a suitable agent.
- Back up tractor slowly until the hitch eye makes contact with the trailer hitch.



Danger!

Lock not engaged.

Trailer releases from the towing vehicle.

Death or serious injuries!

- Ensure that the lock is securely engaged.
- Never pull a trailer with the lock disengaged.

- Press pawl (4) and handle of pin (5) together and plug pin (5) into the trailer hitch up to the stop (6).
- Release the pawl (4) and ensure that lock (7) has engaged at the trailer hitch.
- Raise the trailer support wheel.
- Connect the power supply plug.
- If present, connect the breakaway cord to the trailer hitch.
- Check the trailer lighting.
- If there is a braking system, carry out a brake test.

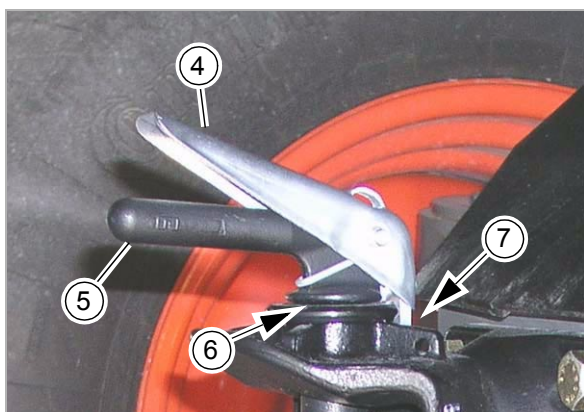
Type 810 ...

- Secure the rear axle of the transport carriage so it will not roll away.
- If required, release the trailer steering axle brake. The drawbar must be freely moving in all directions.

With rigid-drawbar trailers, the hitch eye must hit the centre of the hitch (2).

Failure to observe this rule will cause damage!

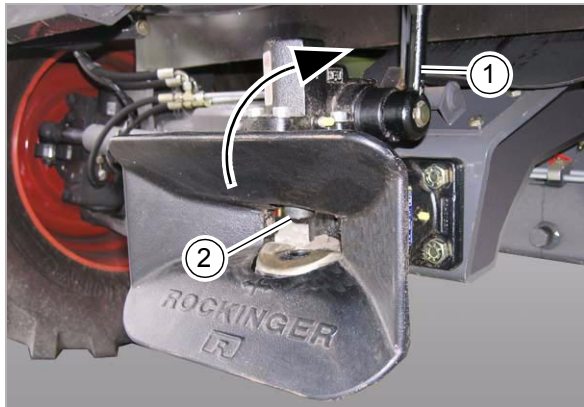
- If required, set the hitch eyes to the height of the coupling point.
- Push down pawl (4) and pull pin (5) out of the trailer hitch.
- Clean the trailer hitch with a suitable agent.
- Back up tractor slowly until the hitch eye makes contact with the trailer hitch.



Trailer hitch type 810 ...

20717

48



Trailer hitch type 841 ...

19009

49

**Danger!**

Lock not engaged.

Trailer releases from the towing vehicle.

Death or serious injuries!

- Ensure that the lock is securely engaged.
- Never pull a trailer with the lock disengaged.

- Push down pawl (4) and push pin (5) into the trailer hitch up to the stop (6).
- Release the pawl (4) and ensure that lock (7) has engaged at the trailer hitch.
- Raise the trailer support wheel.
- Connect the power supply plug.
- If present, connect the breakaway cord to the trailer hitch.
- Check the trailer lighting.
- If there is a braking system, carry out a brake test.

Type 841 ...

- Secure the rear axle of the transport carriage so it will not roll away.
- If required, release the trailer steering axle brake. The drawbar must be freely moving in all directions.

With rigid-drawbar trailers, the hitch eye must hit the centre of the hitch (2).

Failure to observe this rule will cause damage!

- If required, set the hitch eyes to the height of the coupling point.

**Danger!**

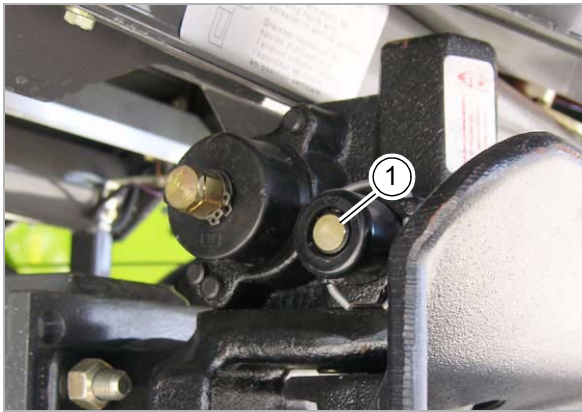
Locking the trailer hitch by hand.

The locking pin shoots down.

Serious injuries of the limbs.

- Never lock the trailer hitch by hand by lifting pin (2) (type 841).
- Lock trailer hitch exclusively with lever (1), using a short blow with the ball of the thumb in opening direction (type 841).

- Push the hand lever (1) up until it clicks.
- Clean the trailer drawbar with a suitable agent.
- Slowly back up the vehicle until the hitch eye has tripped the trailer hitch lock.



Trailer hitch type 841 ...

18966

50



Danger!

Lock not engaged.

Trailer releases from the towing vehicle.

Death or serious injuries!

- Ensure that the lock is securely engaged.
- Never pull a trailer with the lock disengaged.

- Ensure that the pin (1) is introduced into the housing until the end of pin (1) is flush with it.
- Raise the trailer support wheel.
- Connect the power supply plug.
- If present, connect the breakaway cord to the trailer hitch.
- Check the trailer lighting.
- If there is a braking system, carry out a brake test.

81911

9.6.2 Unhitching the trailer

- Identify the trailer hitch by means of the identification plate on the trailer hitch.
- Observe the type-specific details.

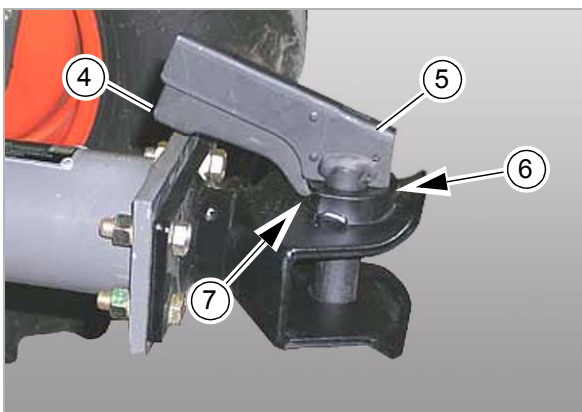


Danger

Limbs within range of the trailer hitch or the trailer.

Risk of death or serious injuries.

- Keep limbs away from the trailer hitch.
- Never remain standing between the trailer hitch and the trailer.
- Observe the regulations of the German employers' liability insurance association or its equivalent.



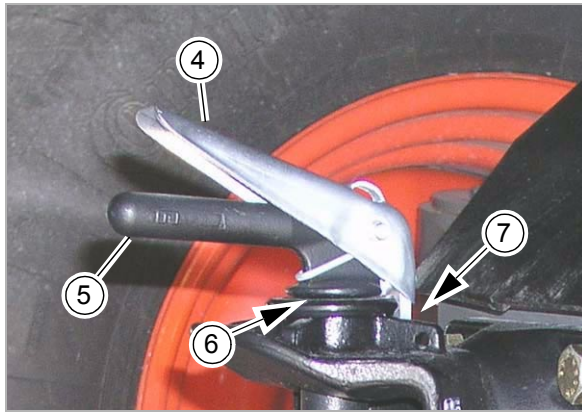
Trailer hitch type AK 64/1 B ...

30204

51

Type AK 64/1 B ...

- Disconnect the power supply plug.
- If present, disconnect the breakaway cord from the trailer hitch.
- Secure the rear axle of the transport carriage so it will not roll away.
- If installed, swing out the trailer gauge wheel.
- Press pawl (4) and handle of pin (5) together and pull pin (5) out of the trailer hitch.
- Slowly drive the tractor forward.
- Press pawl (4) and handle of pin (5) together and plug pin (5) into the trailer hitch up to the stop (6).
- Release the pawl (4) and ensure that lock (7) has engaged at the trailer hitch.



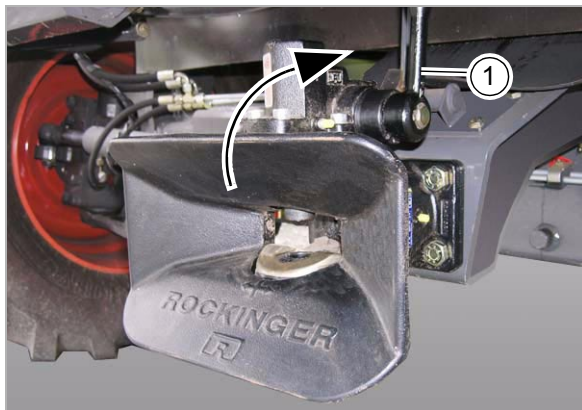
Trailer hitch type 810 ...

20717

52

Type 810 ...

- Disconnect the power supply plug.
- If present, disconnect the breakaway cord from the trailer hitch.
- Secure the rear axle of the transport carriage so it will not roll away.
- If installed, swing out the trailer gauge wheel.
- Push down pawl (4) and pull pin (5) out of the trailer hitch.
- Slowly drive the tractor forward.
- Push down pawl (4) and push pin (5) into the trailer hitch up to the stop (6).
- Release the pawl (4) and ensure that lock (7) has engaged at the trailer hitch.



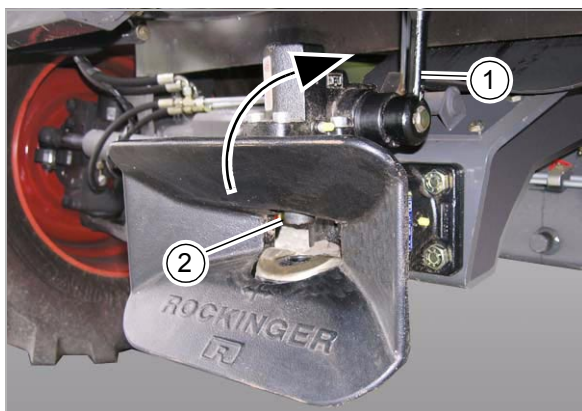
Trailer hitch type 841 ...

19009

53

Type 841 ...

- Disconnect the power supply plug.
- If present, disconnect the breakaway cord from the trailer hitch.
- Secure the rear axle of the transport carriage so it will not roll away.
- If installed, swing out the trailer gauge wheel.
- Push lever (1) upwards until it catches.
- Slowly drive the tractor forward.



Trailer hitch type 841 ...

19009

54

**Danger!**

Locking the trailer hitch by hand.

The locking pin shoots down.

Serious injuries of the limbs.

- Never lock the trailer hitch by hand by lifting pin (2) (type 841).
- Lock trailer hitch exclusively with lever (1), using a short blow with the ball of the thumb in opening direction (type 841).

- Lock trailer hitch with lever (1), using a short blow with the ball of the thumb in opening direction (type 841).

**Danger!**

Non-locking of trailer hitch.

The locking pin socket fills up with dirt.

Malfunction of locking.

- Lock trailer hitch when not in use.

9.7 Cab / Operator's platform

9.7.1 Adjusting the driver's seat with mechanical suspension (standard version)



Danger!

Unexpected machine movements.

Death or serious injury.

- Never adjust the driver's seat while driving!



Warning!

Driver's seat misadjusted.

Health damage.

- Before putting the machine into operation, adapt the driver's seat ergonomically and individually to the driver.

- Adjust the seat height.

- Lift lever (1) and adjust the seat up or down until the desired seat height has been reached. In the top position, the seat can be removed upwards.
- Release lever (1).

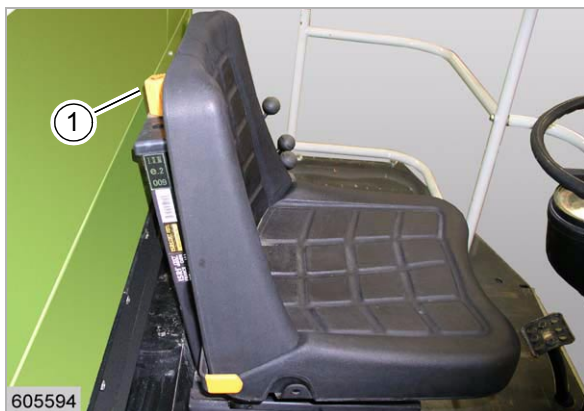
A click is heard and lever (1) engages.



55

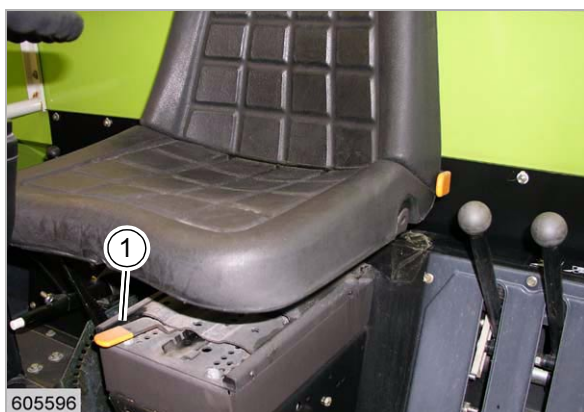


56



57

19422



58

19421

- Adjust the driver's weight.
- Turn the turn lock (1) in the desired direction until the desired setting has been reached.

**Danger!**

Operating error.

Death or serious injury.

- Strictly comply with instructions and results.

- Adjusting the driver's seat forward and backward
 - Pull up lever (1).Slide driver's seat forward or backward.
- Release lever (1).

A clicking sound is heard and lever (1) engages.

The driver's seat cannot be displaced any more.

81949

9.7.2 Adjusting the driver's seat with mechanical suspension (standard version)**Danger!**

Unexpected machine movements.

Death or serious injury.

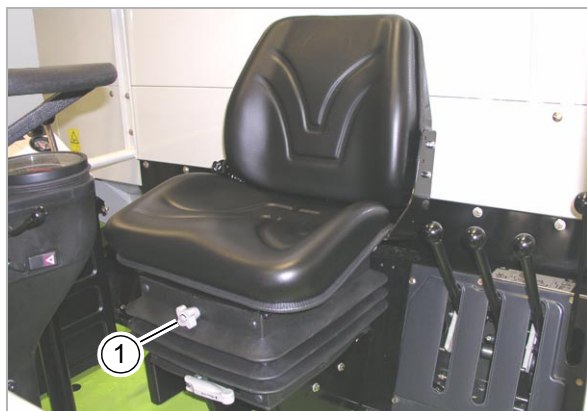
- Never adjust the driver's seat while driving!

**Warning!**

Driver's seat misadjusted.

Health damage.

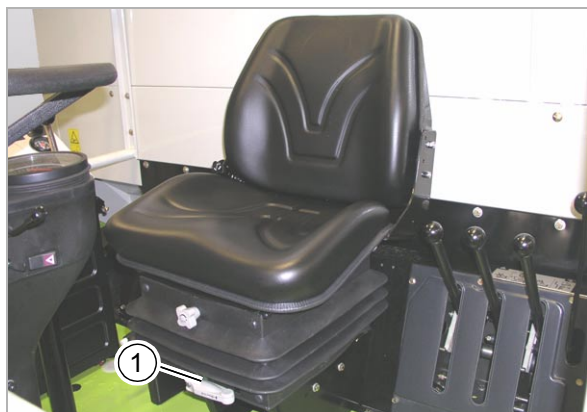
- Before putting the machine into operation, adapt the driver's seat ergonomically and individually to the driver.



59

28340

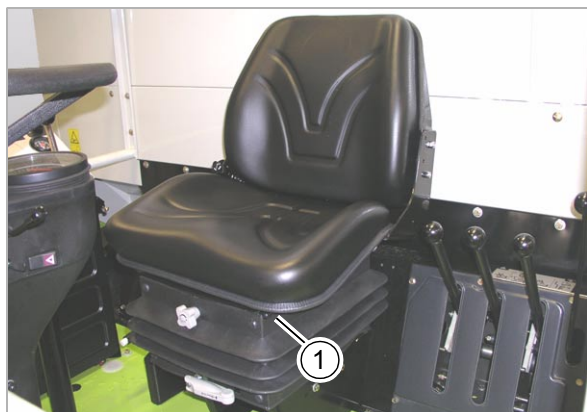
- Adjust the seat height.
 - Turn the turn lock (1) in the desired direction until the desired seat height has been reached.



60

28340

- Adjust the driver's weight.
 - Fold out lever (1) and turn it in the desired direction.
 - Fold in lever (1).



61

28340



Danger!

Operating error.

Death or serious injury.

- Strictly comply with instructions and results.

- Adjusting the driver's seat forward and backward
 - Pull up lever (1).
Slide driver's seat forward or backward.
 - Release lever (1).

A clicking sound is heard and lever (1) engages.

The driver's seat cannot be displaced any more.

- Adjust the back rest inclination.
 - Turn the turn lock (1) in the desired direction until the desired inclination has been reached.

The back rest cannot be adjusted any more.



62

28340

9.7.3 Adjusting the mechanically suspended driver's seat (option)

**Danger!**

Unexpected machine movements.

Death or serious injury.

- Never adjust the driver's seat while driving!

**Warning!**

Driver's seat misadjusted.

Health damage.

- Before putting the machine into operation, adapt the driver's seat ergonomically and individually to the driver.

- Adjust the seat height.
 - Turn the turn lock (1) in the desired direction until the desired seat height has been reached.



605578

19424

63



605578

19424

64

- Adjust the driver's weight.
 - Fold out lever (1) and turn it in the desired direction.
 - Fold in lever (1).



65



Danger!

Operating error.

Death or serious injury.

- Strictly comply with instructions and results.

- Adjusting the driver's seat forward and backward
 - Pull up lever (1).Slide driver's seat forward or backward.
 - Release lever (1).

A clicking sound is heard and lever (1) engages.

The driver's seat cannot be displaced any more.



66



Danger!

Operating error.

Death or serious injury.

- Strictly comply with instructions and results.

- Adjusting the back rest inclination
 - Lift lever (1).Adjust back rest as desired.
 - Release lever (1).

The back rest cannot be adjusted any more.

9.8 Various components / Machine body**9.8.1 Rotating the front ladder (standard)**

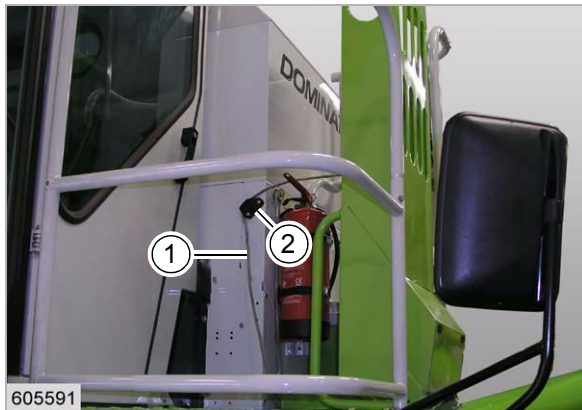
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Driving and transportation" chapter. 

**Danger!**

Unexpected machine movements.

Death or serious injuries!

- Clamp the rope at the clamping piece, thus securing the ladder against folding down.
- Use the ladder for climbing on the machine only when machine is standing still.



605591

19425

67



27339

68

Transport position of front ladder

- Fold up the ladder before starting road travel and clamp it with rope (1) at the clamping piece (2), thus securing the ladder against folding down.

Climbing position of front ladder

- Fold ladder down before climbing up and down.

9.8.2 Adjusting the rear ladder

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Driving and transportation" chapter. 



Danger!

Unexpected machine movements.

Death or serious injuries!

- Ensure that ladder engages safely.
- Climb on ladder and machine only when machine is standing still.

Transport position of rear ladder

- Push the ladder up every time before driving off.
 - Pull ladder out of the brackets (2).
 - Slide ladder upwards until ladder engages safety at position (1).
 - Lock ladder in brackets (2).

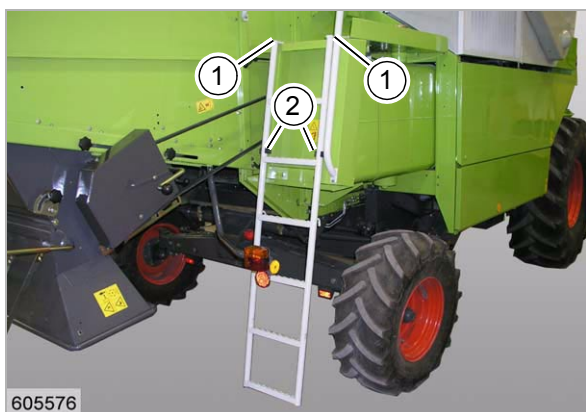


69

19427

Climbing position of rear ladder

- Pull the ladder down before climbing up.
 - Pull ladder out of the brackets (2).
 - Pull ladder downwards until ladder engages safety at position (1).
 - Lock ladder in brackets (2).



70

19426

10 Fieldwork settings

10.1 General Information

85058

10.1.1 General warnings - Fieldwork settings

In the following sections of this chapter, a procedure instruction refers to the following general warnings.

**Danger!**

Always stop the engine before carrying out any work on the machine.

Moving machine parts and / or unexpected machine movement.

Death or serious injury.

- Diesel engine OFF.
- Apply parking brake.
- Remove the ignition key.
- Remove key of battery isolating switch.
- Wait for machine parts which run on have come to a complete halt.
- Secure machine by wheel chocks.
- Ensure that the machine cannot be started by any third persons.

**Danger!**

The front attachment, reel and feeder unit may drop uncontrolled.

Death or serious injuries!

- Apply safety locks.
- Keep a safe distance from the hazard area.

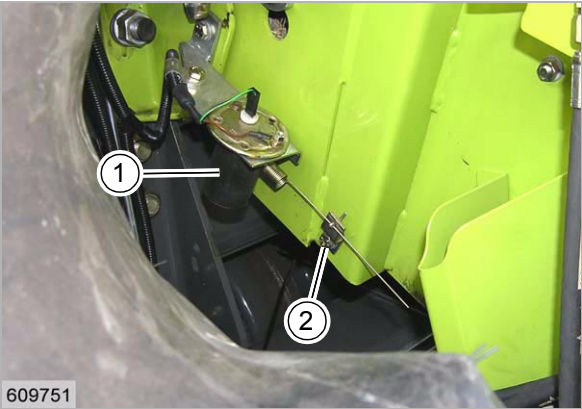
10.2 Feeder unit

82118

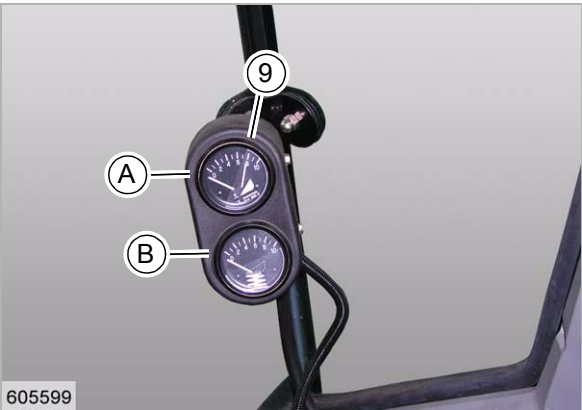
10.2.1 Adjusting the cutting height indicator

The sender (1) for the front attachment cutting height display on the right feed rake conveyor side must be adjusted. It shows the front attachment cutting height above the ground.

- Prepare fieldwork.👁️
- Check the cutterbar float springs.👁️
- Start the diesel engine.👁️
- Switch on the road travel / fieldwork switch.👁️
- Lower front attachment until the skids are 100 mm above the ground.
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Fieldwork settings" chapter.👁️
- Slacken off bracket (2) and adjust it so that the pointer on the cutting height indicator (A) stands at the mark (9).
- Bolt down bracket (2).



1



2

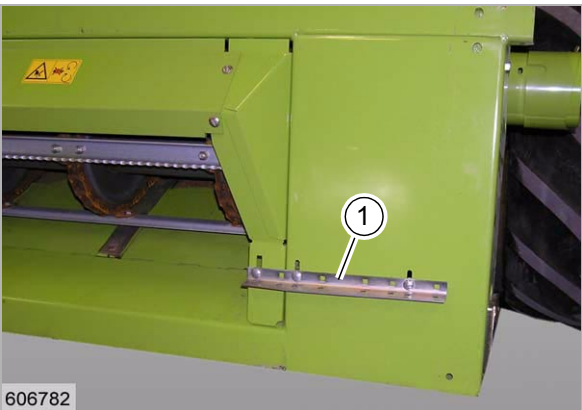
10.2.2 Adjusting the scraper profiles

79341

The scraper profiles influence the material flow in the feed rake conveyor. The scraper profiles must be set for grain or maize.

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Fieldwork settings" chapter.👁️

**Warning!**
Sharp edges and pointed machine parts.
Slight injuries.
– Wear safety gloves.



3

Crop	Scraper profile bolts down to feed rake conveyor with
Grain	narrow leg
Maize	wide leg

- If required, turn scraper profile (1) at the feeder unit and bolt down hand-tight.
- Fit front attachment to the machine.
- Adjust scraper profile (1) according to the front attachment scraper profile and bolt it down.

- Repeat this process on the other side of the machine.

10.2.3 Adjusting the height of the feeder chain

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Fieldwork settings" chapter. 

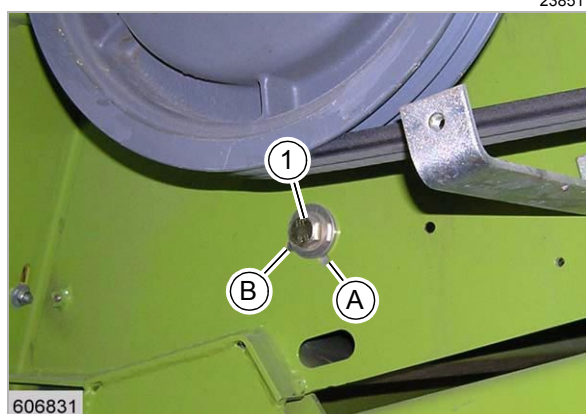
Adjust the height of the feeder chain parallel on the left and right at the feed rake conveyor.

- Slacken off bolts (1).
- Twist supports by 90° until the dowel pin fits the bore.

	Designation
A	Grain
B	Maize

- 4** *The supports in the feed rake conveyor have adjusted the feeder chain height.*

- Bolt down bolts (1).



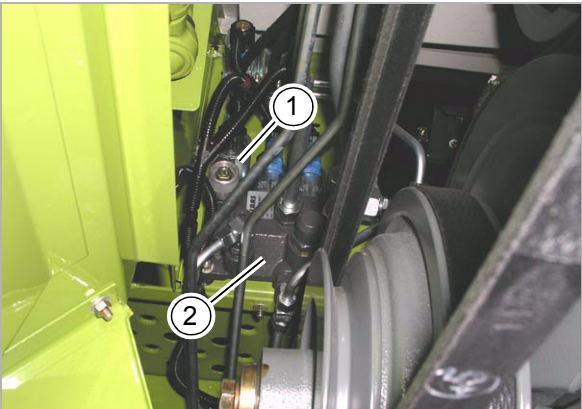
5

10.2.4 Adjusting the front attachment drop rate (DOMINATOR 150)

The drop rate of the front attachment can be adjusted by turning the knurled screw (1) on the flow control valve (2).

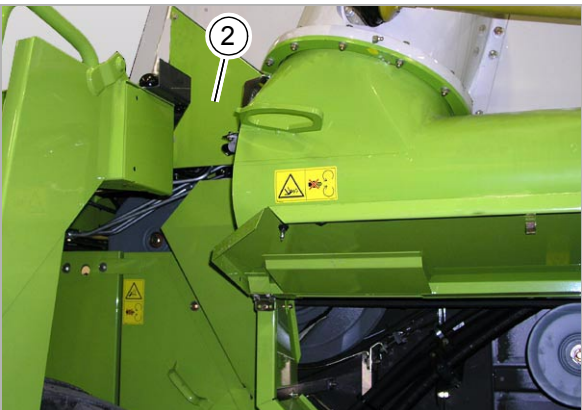
- The drop rate should be adjusted when the hydraulic oil is at working temperature. The drop rate is adjusted on the knurled screw (1) and should be set so that the front attachment drops from the top to the bottom in about 5 to 6 seconds.

Drop rate	
Faster	turn in the knurled screw
Slower	turn out the knurled screw



25066

6



25065

7

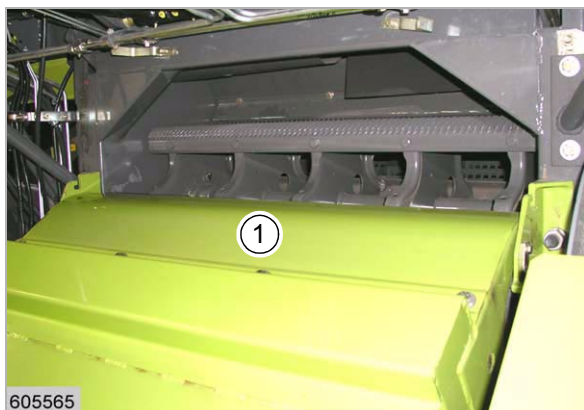
10.3 Threshing mechanism

82451

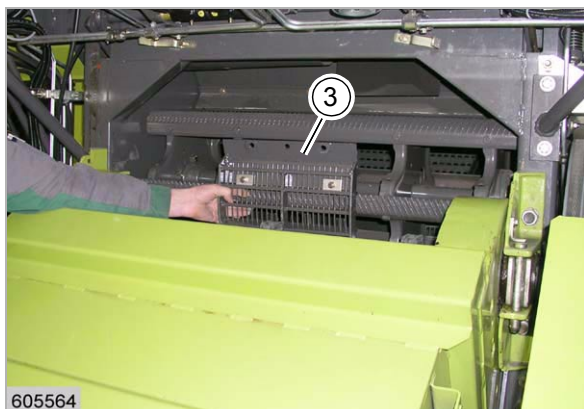
10.3.1 Removing / installing threshing concave segments (Multicrop concave)

The concave segments must be installed specifically for the crop to be harvested. See threshing chart, see specifications

- Lower the feeder as far as possible. 
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Fieldwork settings" chapter. 
- Set the threshing concave downwards.
- Open flap and unscrew cover (1).
- Unscrew bolts from the concave segments.



8



9

**Note!**

Constructive conditions.

Facilitation of assembly.

- First remove the centre segment. Then push the outer segments slightly to the centre and remove them.
- Clean the segment guides in the concave prior to installing the segments (3).
- Insert segments and bolt them down.

10.3.2 Adjusting the basic concave adjustment

82206

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Fieldwork settings" chapter. 

The clearance of the threshing concave on the right and left sides must be parallel.



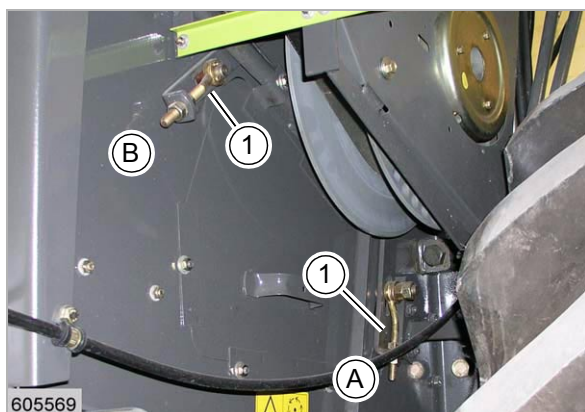
10

- Move the lever (H) all the way downwards. Then let the lever (H) engage in the adjusting segment according to the threshing concave version.

Pulling up the threshing concave ensures that it can be correctly adjusted.

- Turn threshing drum by hand.
- Mark the threshing drum beater bar with the largest radius (measuring bar) on the left and right machine side.

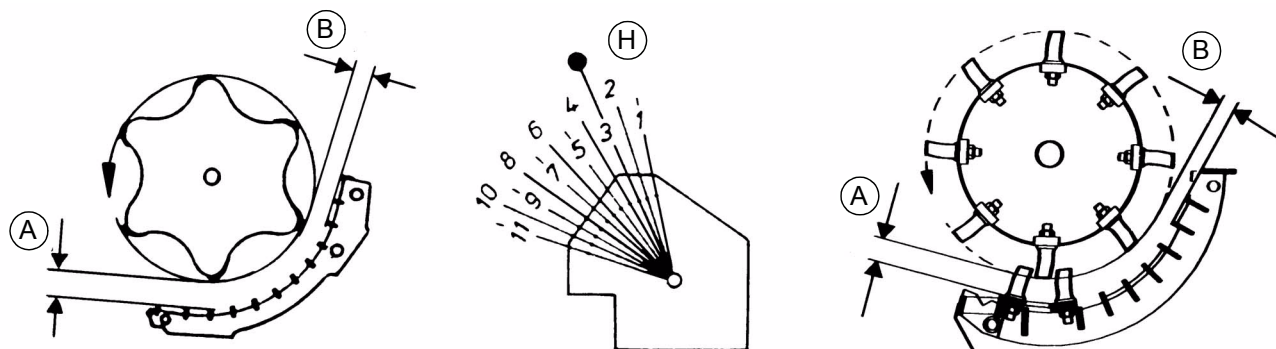
The clearance from the threshing concave is then adjusted at this marked beater bar.



11

- Set the distances (A and B) of the threshing concave on both sides at the turnbuckles (1) of the tow bars.
 - Loosen the nuts of the turnbuckles (1).
 - Adjust the turnbuckles until you obtain the threshing concave basic adjustment.
 - Check the distances (A and B) again.
 - Lock the nuts of the turnbuckles (1).

Basic concave adjustment



608234

Main concave

	Wire N10 **		Wire N10 ***		Wire N18 **		Sheet-metal (19 x 40)***		Spike tooth**	
	Wire N12 **									
	Sheet-metal (10 x 38)***									
Meas- uring bar	A	B	A	B	A	B	A	B	A	B
	3rd	10th	2nd	9th	3rd	2nd last	2nd	9th	1st	3rd last
	**	**								
Lever H (hole)	2nd	9th								
	***	***								
	(mm)	(mm)	(mm)	(mm)	(mm)	(mm)	(mm)	(mm)	(mm)	(mm)
2									15 *	8 *
3	13 *	3 *	13 *	5 *						
8					40 *	20 *	33 *	17 *		

** = Basic concave adjustment, ** = Continuous concave, *** = Multicrop concave with 3 concave segments

A = Concave entrance, B = Concave exit

10.4 Separation

10.4.1 Adjusting the separation performance monitor sensors

The cleaning and separation performance monitor allows the operator to make full use of the capacity of the machine.

A gauge allows the operator to determine how fast the machine can be driven without the reasonable grain loss limit being exceeded.

Grains lost over the back of the combine with the straw fall onto the sensors (2). The pulses generated are visualised by meter lights on a display.

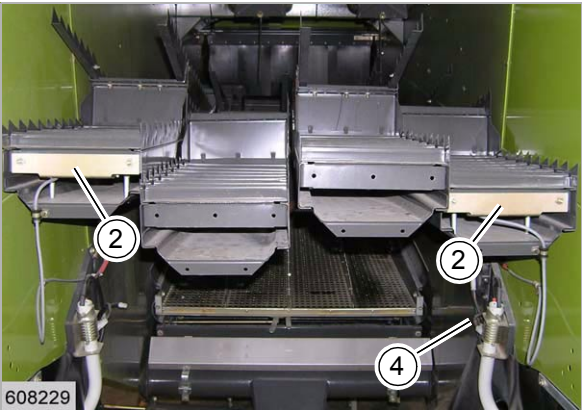
The sensors (2) react with different sensitivities to different grain sizes and must therefore be calibrated to the respective grain size, using switch (4).

The gauge sensitivity setting is carried out during field-work. See Adjusting the separation performance monitor display.

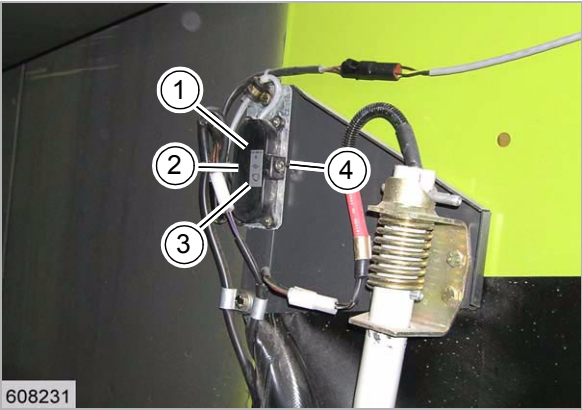
- Adjust the sensitivity of the sensors to the different grain sizes on switch (4).

The sensors react more / less sensitively, depending on the pre-set grain size.

Sensitivity of sensors	
Position	Grain sizes
1	for lightweight grains
2	for medium-weight grains
3	for heavy grains



12



13

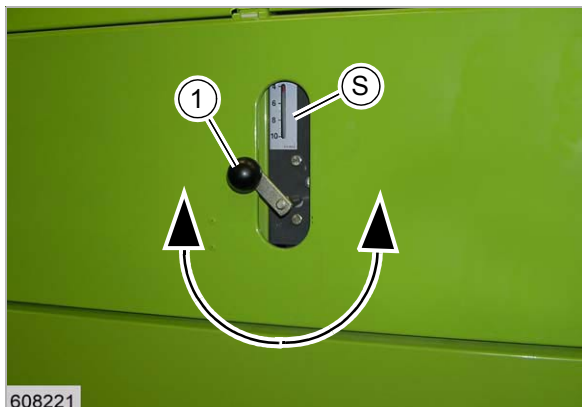
10.5 Cleaning unit

87656

10.5.1 Checking / adjusting the fan speed display

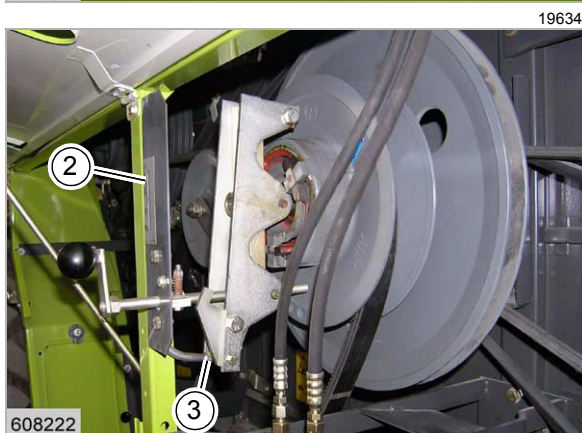
When delivered ex works, the fan speed display is activated. The display must be checked / pre-set as required or after carrying out installation work on the fan drive.

- Set fan speed to the lowest value with crank (1).
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Fieldwork settings" chapter. 
- Loosen clamp (3) and adjust plastic indicator rod (2) so that the coloured ring is on the lowest number of indicator scale (4).



608221

14



608222

19634

15



19635

16

10.5.2 Adjusting the cleaning performance monitor sensors

82695

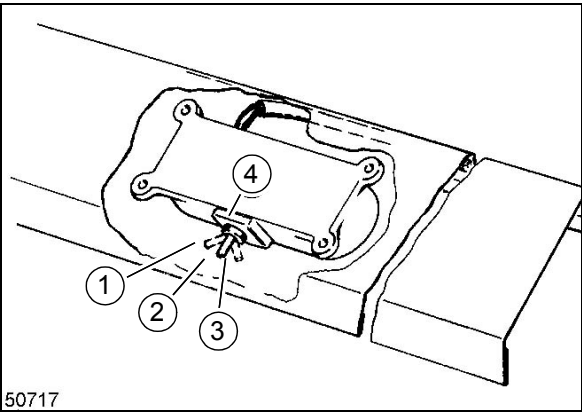
The cleaning and separation performance monitor allows the operator to make full use of the capacity of the machine.

A display allows the operator to determine how fast the machine can be driven without the reasonable grain loss limit being exceeded.

The grains carried beyond the sieve pan fall onto the sensor (2). The pulses generated are visualised by meter lights on a display.

The sensor (2) reacts with different sensitivities to different grain sizes and must therefore be calibrated to the respective grain size, using switch (4).

The sensitivity setting of the display is carried out while fieldwork is in progress. See Adjusting the cleaning performance monitor display.



17

- Adjust the sensitivity of the sensors to the different grain sizes on switch (4).

The sensors react more / less sensitively, depending on the pre-set grain size.

Sensitivity of sensors	
Position	Grain sizes
1	for lightweight grains
2	for medium-weight grains
3	for heavy grains

10.5.3 Removing the sieves

The sieves must / can be installed / removed as a function of the crop to be harvested. See threshing chart, see sieve chart.

The sieves can be removed / installed independently of one another.

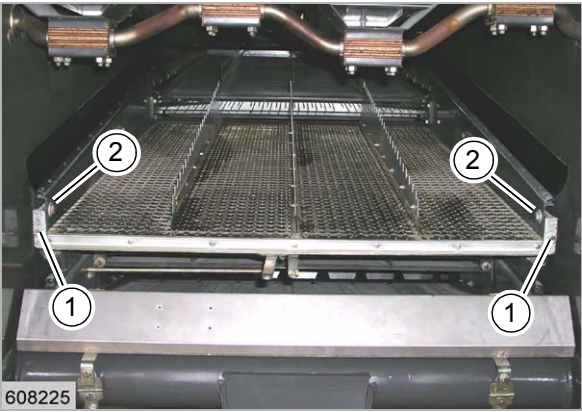
The straw chopper can be shifted to the rear as far as possible. In this installation position, the sieves can be mounted.

See straw chopper sieves installation position.

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Fieldwork settings" chapter.👁

Removing the upper sieves

- Unscrew bolts (1).
- Remove bolts (2).
- Pull out the upper sieve to the rear.

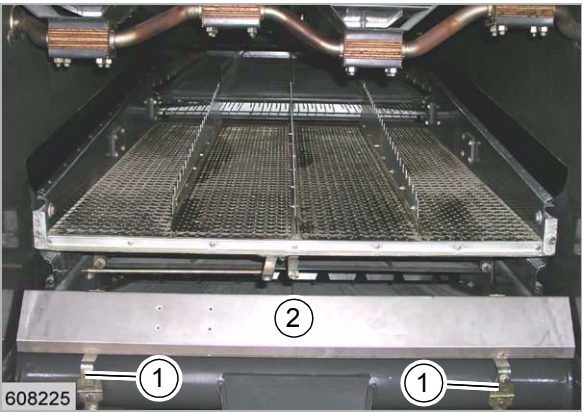


18

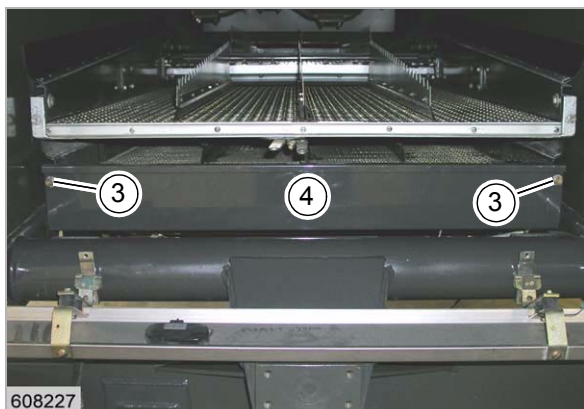
Removing the lower sieves

(machines with performance monitor)

- Unscrew bolts (1).
- Fold sensor (2) down.



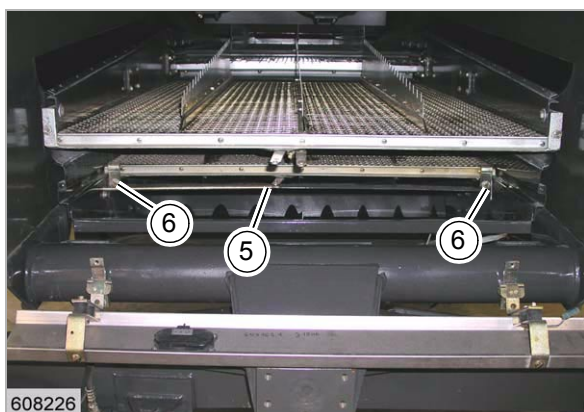
19



20

19640

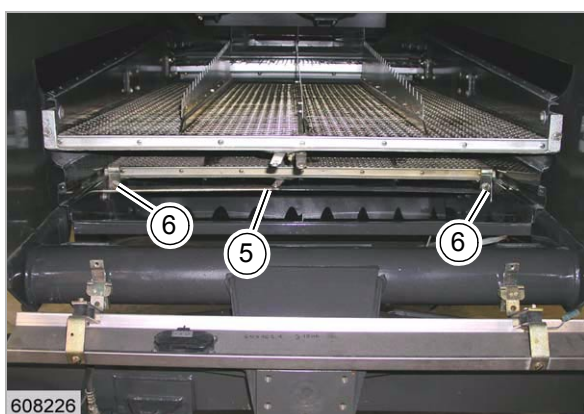
- Unscrew bolts (3) and remove cover (4).



21

19641

- Pull out cotter pin (5) at the linkage.
- Unscrew bolts (6).
- Pull out the lower sieve to the rear.



22

19641

10.5.4 Installing the sieves

82982

The sieves can be removed / installed independently of one another.

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Fieldwork settings" chapter. 👁

Installing the lower sieves



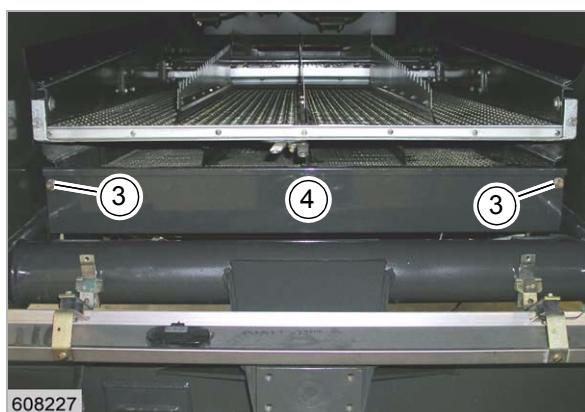
WARNING:

Dirt in the guide rails.

Heavy action.

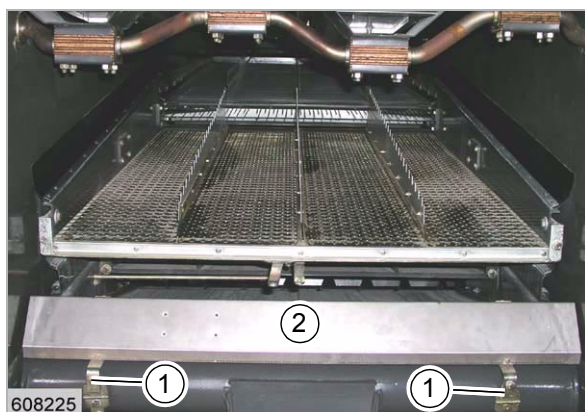
- Clean guide rails.

- Install lower sieve.
- Install linkage and secure with cotter pin (5).
- Arrest lower sieves with clamps and bolt down hand-tight with bolts (6).



23

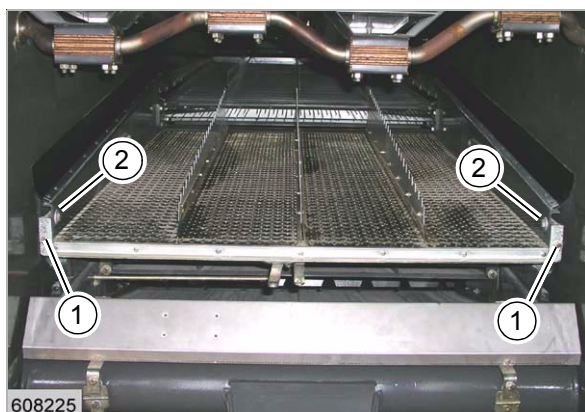
- Install cover (4) and bolt down with bolts (3).



24

(machines with performance monitor)

- Fold sensor (2) upwards.
- Screw down bolts (1).



25

Installing the upper sieves



WARNING:

Dirt in the guide rails.

Heavy action.

- Clean guide rails.

- Install upper sieve.
- Mount bolts (1).

Tightening torque = 30 Nm

- Mount bolts (2).

Tightening torque = 48.5 Nm

When installation of sieves is complete, the straw chopper must be moved back to its initial position at the front (putting the straw chopper out of operation).

10.6 Crop receptacle / straw receptacle**10.6.1 Removing the straw guide plate
(straw chopper with standard spreader)**

To provide better access to the cutting cylinder, the straw guide plate must be removed / folded down.

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Fieldwork settings" chapter. 👁

**Danger!**

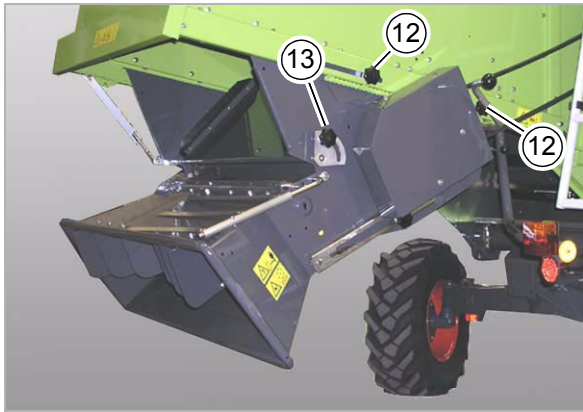
The cutting cylinders of the straw chopper can run on even if the drive is switched off.

Death or serious injuries!

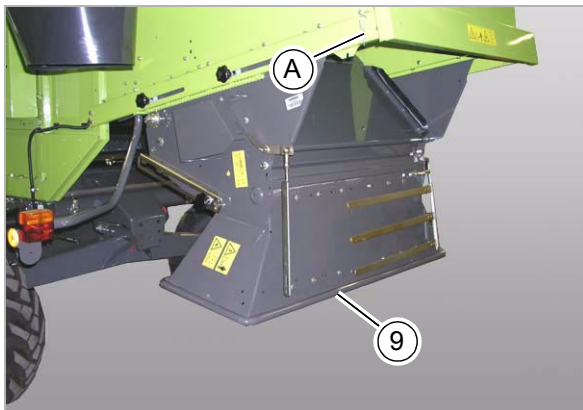
- Never touch any machine parts that continue running.
- Wait until all machine parts have completely stopped moving.

The straw chopper is in the front position (putting the straw chopper out of operation). 👁

- Unscrew the turn lock (13).

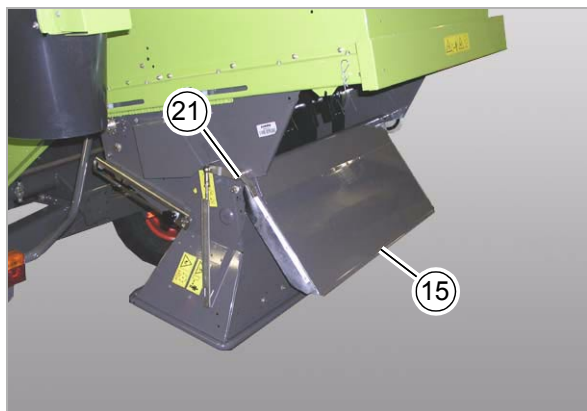
**26**

28748

**27**

28802

- Unhinge connecting rod at position (A).
- Swivel standard spreader (9) downwards.



28806

28

- Slacken off bolt (21) and swivel straw guide plate (15) downwards.



Danger!

Risk of injury from sharp knives.

- Always wear gloves to avoid injuries when removing and installing the knives.
- Arrest the cutting cylinder so it will not rotate.

The free-swinging knives can now be fitted.

When the straw guide plate is to be removed completely, the following steps must be carried out.

(2 persons are required)

- Back up straw guide plate (15) and slacken off bolt (21) on both sides.
- Remove straw guide plate to the rear.

83763

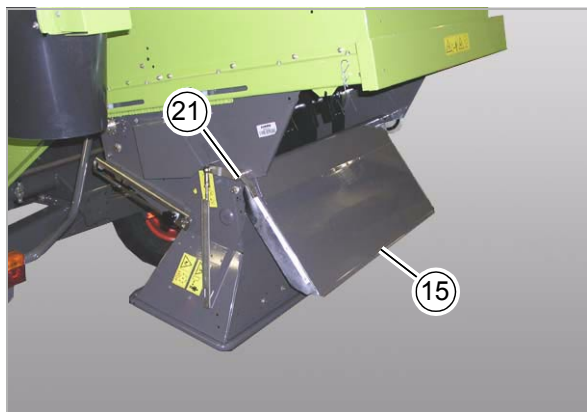
10.6.2 Installing the straw guide plate (straw chopper with standard spreader)

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Fieldwork settings" chapter.

When installing the completely removed straw guide plate, the following steps must be carried out.

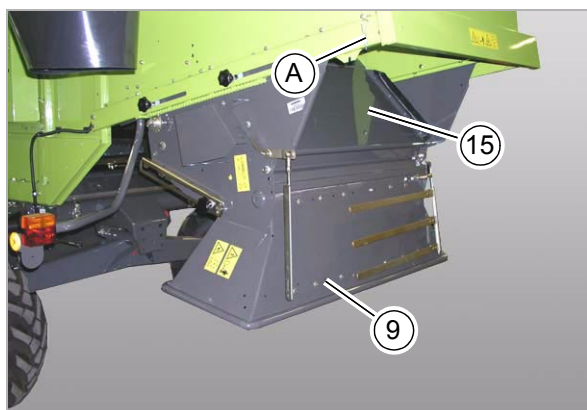
(2 persons are required)

- Bolt down straw guide plate (15) with bolts (21) on both sides.



28806

29

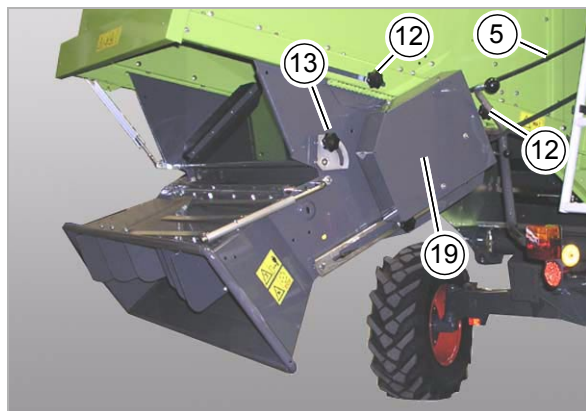


28802

30

(1 persons are required)

- Swivel straw guide plate (15) upwards.
- Fit connecting rod at position (A).
- Swivel the standard spreader (9) to the desired position.



31

28748

- Tighten the turn lock (13).



32

28806

10.6.3 Unscrewing the free-swinging knives

83470

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Fieldwork settings" chapter.
- Remove the straw guide plate.



Danger!

Risk of injury from sharp knives.

- Always wear gloves to avoid injuries when removing and installing the knives.
- Arrest the cutting cylinder so it will not rotate.



Note!

Uneconomic use of machine.

Increased fuel consumption.

Machine damage.

- Turn knives that are worn on one side. When changing worn knives, replace the opposite knife as well. Failure to observe the above may result in unbalance of the cutting cylinder – **Consequential damage!**
- Operate the cutting cylinder only with the complete number of knives.

- Unscrew the free-swinging knives.



28806

33



Danger!

Risk of injury from sharp knives.

- Always wear gloves to avoid injuries when removing and installing the knives.
- Arrest the cutting cylinder so it will not rotate.



Danger!

Use of unauthorised spare parts.

Death or severe injuries, machine damage.

- Use genuine CLAAS spare parts.

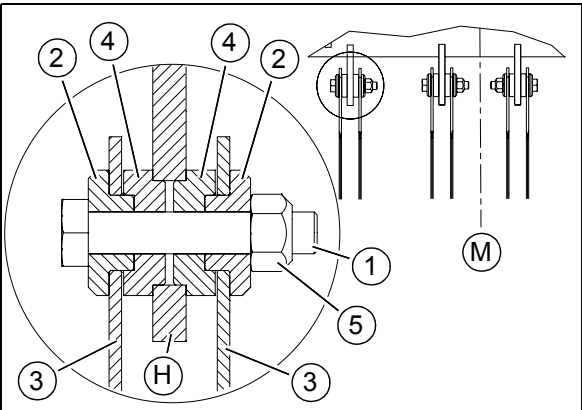


Note!

Uneconomic use of machine.

Machine damage.

- The knives must not jam, but must move freely.
- Operate the cutting cylinder only with a complete set of knives in each case.



28775

34

Bolt on free-swinging knives for grain:

- Two free-swinging knives (grain) must be bolted to each mounting plate (H) as shown in figure.
- Mount hex. bolts (1) from the outside to the inside, facing the machine centre (M).

Tightening torque:

Bolts with Dacromet coating

M 10 - 10.9 = 55 Nm

Observe decal on the cutting cylinder!

	Designation
1	Hex. bolt ISO 4014 - M 10 x 55 -10.9
2	Bushing D 30 x 10
3	Free-swinging knife (grain)
4	Bushing D 30 x 11
5	Self-locking nut ISO 7042 VM 10 -10
H	Mounting plate
M	Machine centre

- Install the straw guide plate.

10.6.5 Straw chopper sieves installation position

The straw chopper can be shifted to the rear as far as possible. In this installation position, the sieves can be mounted.

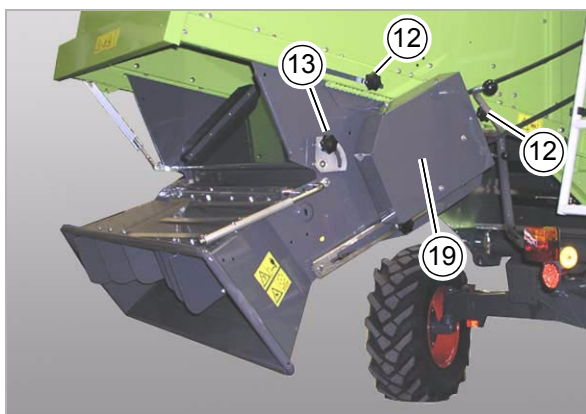
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Fieldwork settings" chapter. 

**Danger!**

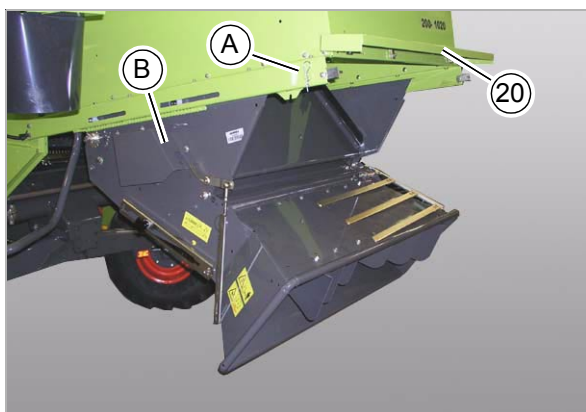
The cutting cylinders of the straw chopper can run on even if the drive is switched off.

Death or serious injuries!

- Never touch any machine parts that continue running.
 - Wait until all machine parts have completely stopped moving.
- Move the straw chopper from the front position (putting the straw chopper out of operation) to the rear. 
 - Unscrew turn locks (12) on both sides.
 - Unscrew the turn lock (13).
 - Unscrew guard (19) and remove belt.



28748

35

28800

36

- Unhinge connecting rod at position (A).
- Disconnect speed monitoring cable at position (B).
- Fold up panel (20) and support it.



28801

37

- Move the straw chopper to the rear as far as possible, using crank (14).



Danger!

Pinch point from moving machine parts.

Serious injuries.

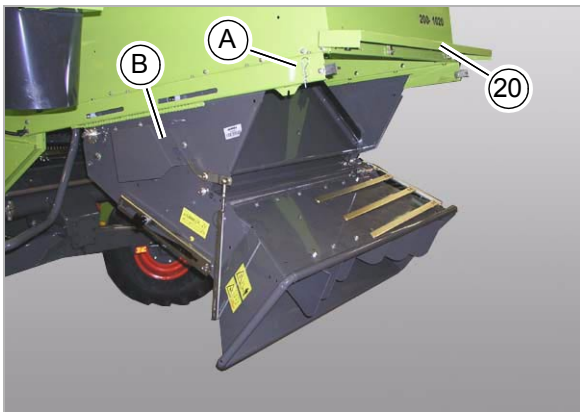
- Secure machine parts.
- Comply with instructions.

- Bolt down turn lock (12), thus securing the straw chopper against sliding to the front.

The sieves can now be installed.

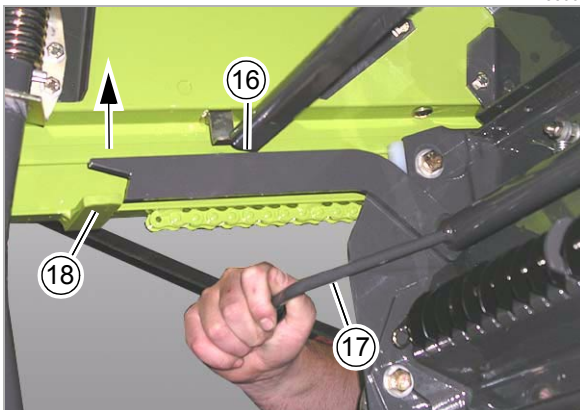
When installation of sieves is complete, the straw chopper must be moved back to its initial position at the front (putting the straw chopper out of operation).

- Move the straw chopper fully to the front, using the crank.
- Use lever (17) for lifting support (16) over the keeper (18).
- Unlock panel (20) and fold it down.
- Connect speed monitoring cable at position (B).
- Fit connecting rod at position (A).



28800

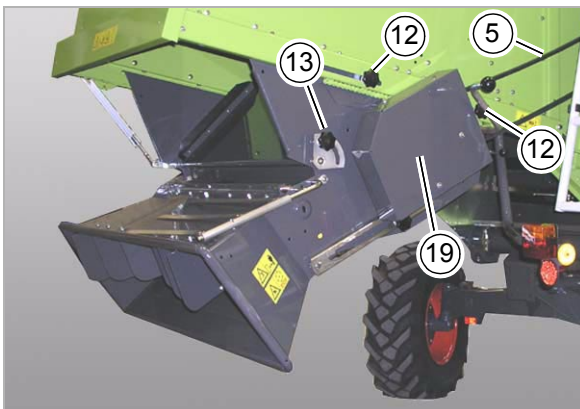
38



28710

39

- Install belt (5) and bolt down guard (19).
- Bolt down turn locks (12) on both sides.
- Tighten the turn lock (13).
- Check belt (5). The belt (5) must make contact with all pulleys, jockey pulleys and guide rollers. Provide contact of belt if required.
- Close the right side cover.



28748

40

10.7 Grain delivery

83157

10.7.1 Adjusting the grain tank full indicator DOMINATOR 150

The grain tank full indicator indicates the 70% grain tank filling level by means of indicator light (3) and the 100% grain tank filling level by indicator light (4) on the vehicle information unit.

The grain tank fill indicator (1 and 2) levels can be staggered, so that depending on the tank unloading possibility the time span between the illumination of the window and the tank unloading can be individually utilised.

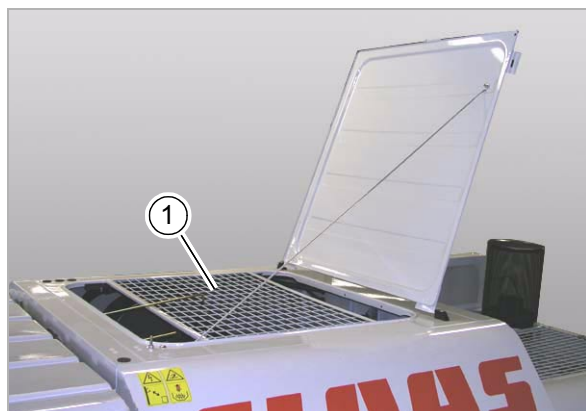
Big windows also allow the grain tank level to be checked from the operator's platform.



605532

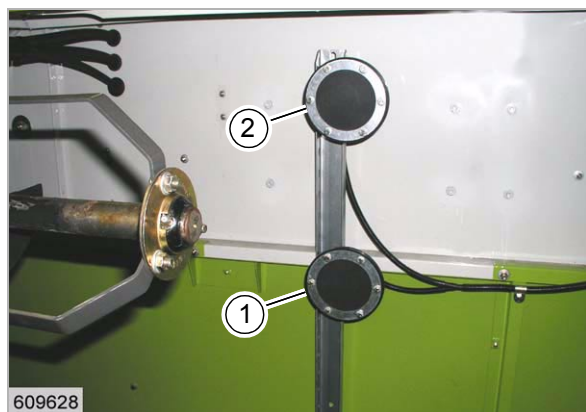
19367

41



30205

42



609628

19662

43

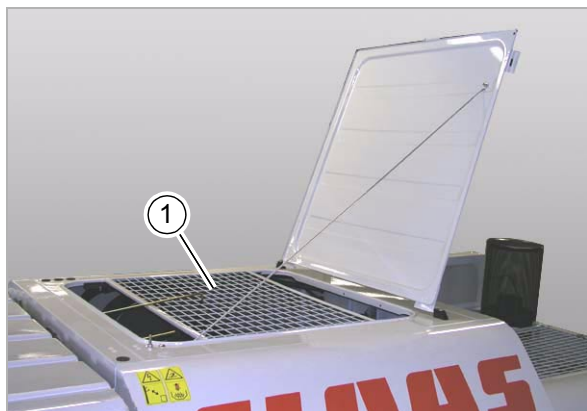
**Danger!**

Danger of falling!

Death or serious injuries!

- Arrange for additional safety precautions.
 - Only enter areas protected by railings.
 - Areas originally without railings must be protected by additional railings.
- Open the grain tank cover and fold it open to the rear as far as possible.
 - Remove guard (1).
 - Unscrew grain tank fill indicator.
 - Set height of grain tank fill indicator.
 - Bolt on grain tank fill indicator.

	Designation
1	70 % grain tank filling
2	100 % grain tank filling



30205

44

- Fit guard (1).
- Remove additional safety precautions.

11 Fieldwork

11.1 General Information

85060

11.1.1 General warnings Fieldwork

In the following sections of this chapter, a procedure instruction refers to the following general warnings.

**Danger!**

Always stop the engine before carrying out any work on the machine.

Moving machine parts and / or unexpected machine movement.

Death or serious injury.

- Diesel engine OFF.
- Apply parking brake.
- Remove the ignition key.
- Remove key of battery isolating switch.
- Wait for machine parts which run on have come to a complete halt.
- Secure machine by wheel chocks.
- Ensure that the machine cannot be started by any third persons.

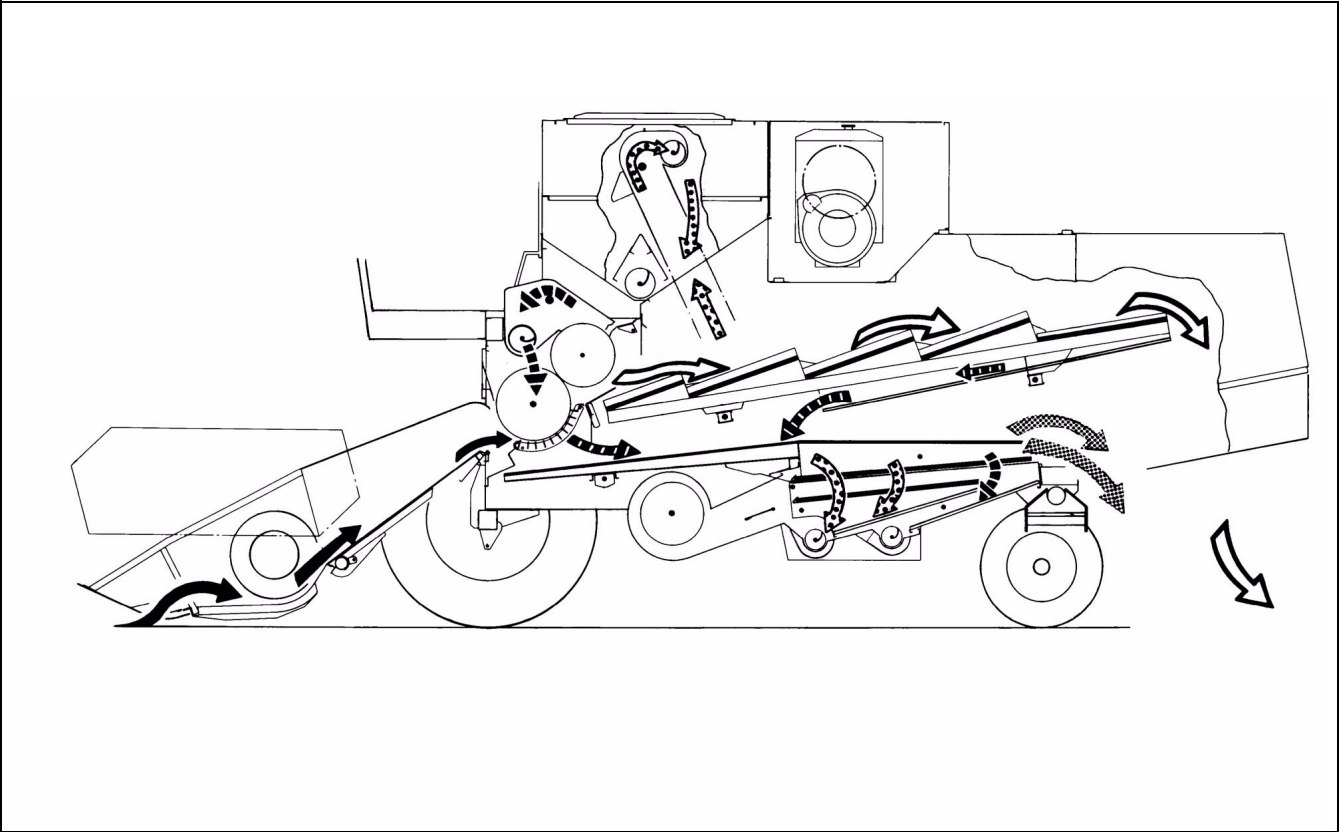
**Danger!**

The front attachment, reel and feeder unit may drop uncontrolled.

Death or serious injuries!

- Apply safety locks.
- Keep a safe distance from the hazard area.

11.2 Description and function



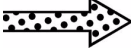
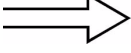
19320 1
69387

11.2.1 Cutterbar

Dividers separate the standing grain from the grain which is to be cut.

Grain lifters lift lodged crops and avoid cutting losses in crops with hanging heads.

The reel moves the cut crop to the intake auger. The auger flights move the material to the cutterbar centre where the feed rake delivers it to the drum for threshing. The stone trap collects solid objects brought up by the feed rake, thus preventing damage to the threshing parts.

	Designation
	Grain
	Grain, chaff, broken straw
	Grain
	Returns
	Straw
	Chaff

11.2.2 Threshing mechanism

Threshing is performed by drum and concave. The bulk of the grain together with the chaff and broken straw passes through the concave onto the preparation floor of the sieve pan. The impeller delivers the straw and remainder of the grain to the straw walkers.

A deflector curtain behind the impeller holds back bouncing grains and deflects them down onto the front of the straw walkers.

69375

11.2.3 Straw walker

The straw walkers separate the remainder of the grain from the straw. The straw is either removed out of the combine through the rear panel or undergoes further processing by special attachments (e. g. straw chopper). The grains separated by the straw walkers are returned to the sieve pan via the under-walker return floor. Crankshafts with agitator tines intensify the loosening of the straw on the straw walkers.

69377

11.2.4 Cleaning unit

Grain mixed with chaff and broken straw is fluffed by means of the shaking action of the preparation floor and at the same time moved onto the sieves.

The wind blast of the cleaning fan blows the light particles (chaff) to the rear, out of the machine. The grain falls through the upper and lower sieve into the clean grain auger trough and is conveyed into the grain tank by the clean grain elevator. All parts heavier than chaff and bigger than grain travel over the upper sieve and lower sieve, drop into the returns auger and are moved to the returns elevator. The elevator carries the returns to the drum for further threshing. Swinging the grain tank unloading tube into operating position allows the grain tank to be quickly emptied into a truck or trailer alongside the combine.

69380

11.2.5 Disawning

When combining grain which is unusually hard to disawn or in which it is hard to separate the seeds from the heads or husks, additional disawning plates can be installed in the concave.

11.3 Considerations before combining

11.3.1 When combining, remember:

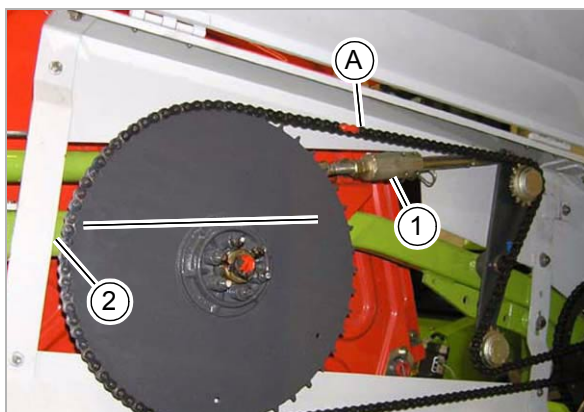
- Wait until the crop has fully ripened – do not combine beforehand! (Higher yield, less moisture content and easier threshing are the result.)
- Where the heads are bent, install grain lifters close together. Where the crop is lodged, install grain lifters further apart (on every fourth to sixth cutterbar finger).
- Where straw and grain are brittle, set the concave wider and reduce the threshing drum speed. Too much short straw impedes the cleaning process. Cracked grain lowers the quality.
- Where the straw is long, damp and tough, reduce the concave clearance and increase the threshing drum speed.
- Under damp conditions and where crops are also grown through with greenstuff, clean the concave, straw walkers and sieves regularly.
- Remember that the vital part of the cleaning process is the blast of the fan. Prevent the forming of »mats« on the sieves and unnecessary grain losses by using enough wind, adjusting the frog-mouth sieve correctly and using a flat sieve of sufficient hole size.
- When combining crops in which it is hard to remove the awns, additional rasp bars can be fitted to the concave.
- To get the best results from your combine run it at the right speed. Therefore, check the speed on the straw walker shaft before the harvest. The correct speed is 220-5 rpm.
- Correct cleaning of the air filter as well as clean fuel and regular oil changes are essential for high performance and long life of the engine.

11.4 Front attachment

11.4.1 Adjusting the reel horizontally (mechanically)

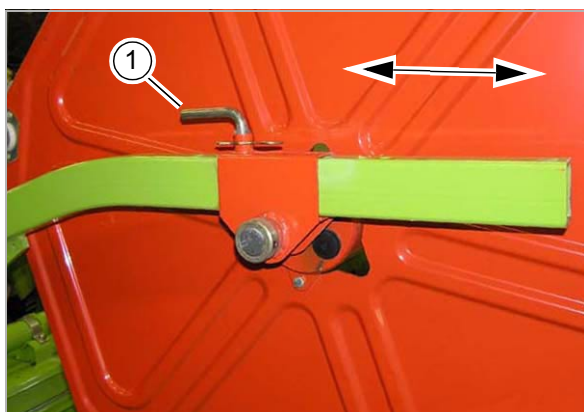
- Raise / lower reel until the reel poles (2) are in a horizontal position.
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Fieldwork" chapter. 
- Relieve chain tension. To this end, pull chain down at position (A) as far as possible and fit the spring clip (1) into the front hole.

The spring-loaded cylinder is now blocked.



2

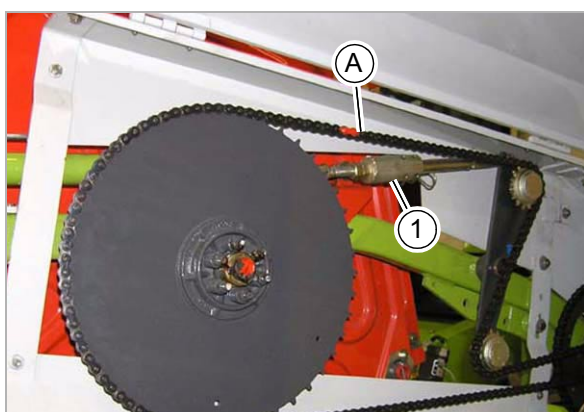
28386



3

28387

- Unlock and pull out pin (1) on both sides.
- Adjust reel by hand.
- Insert pin (1) on both sides and secure with spring clip.

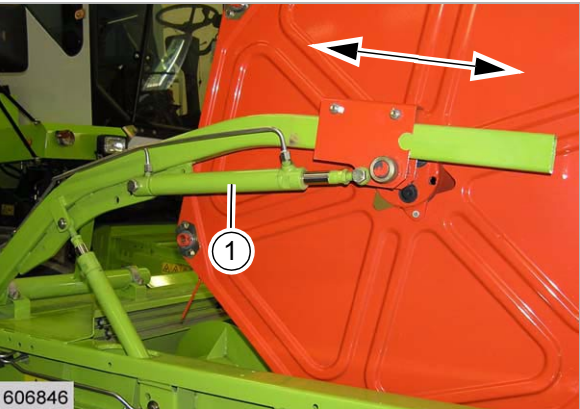


4

28386

- Tension the chain. To this end, pull chain down at position (A) as far as possible and fit the spring clip (1) into the rear hole.

The spring-loaded cylinder now keeps the chain under constant tension.

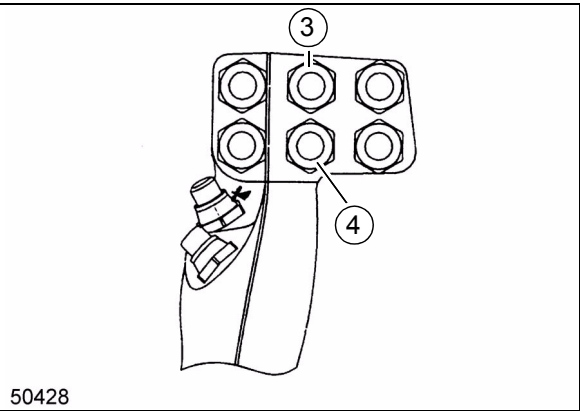


19552

5

11.4.2 Adjusting the reel horizontally (hydraulically)

The reel can be adjusted horizontally from the operator's platform to match crop conditions by means of the two horizontal double-acting hydraulic cylinders (1).

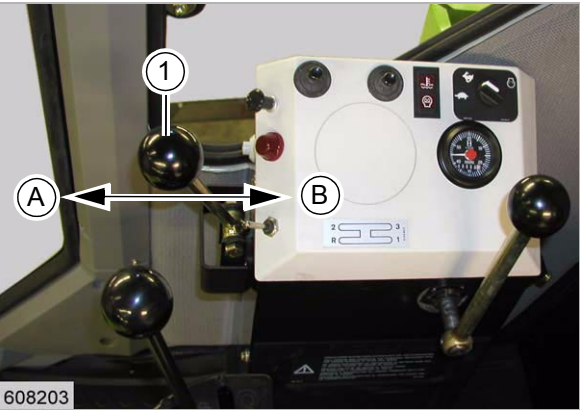


DOMINATOR 150 / 140

19410

6

	Function
3	Reel forward
4	Reel reverse



DOMINATOR 130

19554

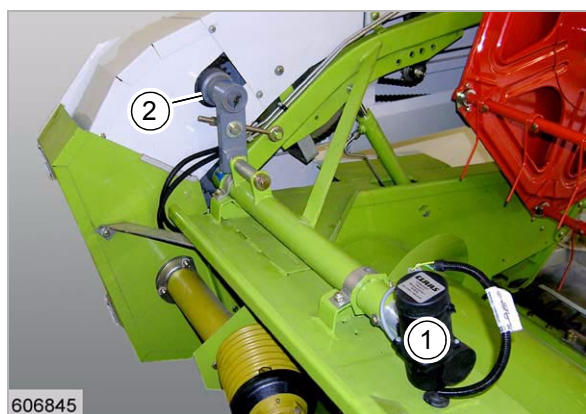
7

Lever (1) in direction	Function
A	Reel forward
B	Reel reverse

82058

11.4.3 Adjusting the reel circumferential speed

The reel circumferential speed must be adapted to the ground speed. The reel speed should be slightly higher than the ground speed.



8



9



10



11

Adjusting the reel circumferential speed (electric)

The speed can be infinitely varied via the electric motor (1) and variable-speed drive (2) from the operator's platform.

- Actuate switch (3) and adjust the reel circumferential speed.

Adjusting the reel circumferential speed (mechanically)

The speed can be infinitely adjusted from the operator's platform by means of crank (1).

- Increasing the reel circumferential speed = Turn crank in + direction
- Reducing the reel circumferential speed = Turn crank in – direction

Vary the reel circumferential speed only when the cut-bar is operating.

11.5 Feeder unit

82138

11.5.1 Reading the ground pressure

Sensor (1) shows the front attachment ground pressure on gauge (B). The sensor on the right cylinder cannot be adjusted.

- Lower the front attachment during threshing until the pointer of gauge (B) is in the upper range at „9 – 10“. The skids should never have ground contact. Raise / lower front attachment if required.



Note!

Uneconomic use of machine and of front attachment.

High fuel consumption.

High wear on the front attachment.

- The further the pointer on gauge (B) falls towards "0", the higher the front attachment ground pressure.
- Do not set the ground pressure unnecessarily high.
Raise the front attachment if required.



12



13



14



15

11.5.2 Reading the cutting height

The sender (1) indicates the front attachment cutting height above the ground on gauge (A).

- Lower the front attachment during threshing until the pointer of gauge (A) is in the upper range at "9" (9 = about 100 mm cutting height). Raise / lower front attachment if required.



Note!

Uneconomic use of machine and of front attachment.

High fuel consumption.

High wear on the front attachment.

- The further the pointer on gauge (B) falls towards "0", the higher the front attachment ground pressure.
Raise / lower front attachment if required.
- Do not set the ground pressure unnecessarily high.
- The further the pointer on gauge (A) falls towards "0", the lower the front attachment cutting height is above the ground.
- Do not set the cutting height unnecessarily low.
Raise / lower front attachment if required.

73212

11.5.3 Reversing the front attachment / feeder unit

In case of clogging of the front attachment / feed rake conveyor, the drive of the front attachment / feed rake conveyor can be rotated backwards via a hydrostatic motor.

- Prepare fieldwork. 👁
- Engage the threshing mechanism. 👁
- Disengage the front attachment.



Caution!

Machine components may run on although the drive has been shut down.

Machine damage.

- Wait for all machine components to come to complete stop.



16



Danger!

Engaging / reversing the feeder unit without a front attachment fitted.

Death or serious injuries.

- Fit the front attachment. 👁
- **Never** engage / reverse the feeder unit without the front attachment being fitted.

- Turn on the switch (1) until the clogging is removed.

The drives of the front attachment / feed rake conveyor rotate backwards.

- If necessary, lower the reel if grain wraps around the intake auger during reversing.
- If necessary, raise the reel if the reel tines mesh into the intake auger when the reel is tilted back.



17

11.5.4 Switching on the front attachment

When a front attachment is fitted, it is engaged together with the feeder unit.

**Danger!**

When starting the machine, persons are on the machine or in its hazard area.

Death or serious injury.

- Before starting the machine ensure that there are no persons or objects in the hazardous area.

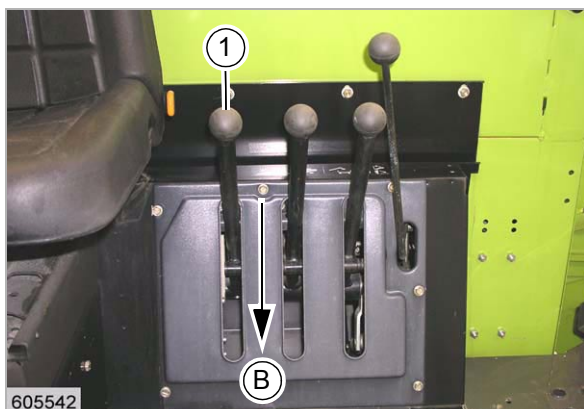
**Danger!**

Engaging / reversing of feeder unit without front attachment fitted.

Death or serious injury.

- Fit the front attachment.
- **Never** engage / reverse the feeder unit without the front attachment fitted.

- Prepare fieldwork.
- Set diesel engine speed to slow idling speed.
- Engage the threshing mechanism.

**18****Warning!**

Crop located in front attachment and / or feed rake conveyor.

Machine damage.

- Engage front attachment engaged at maximum no-load speed of the diesel engine.
- Engage front attachment.
 - Push lever (1) slowly in direction (B) up to the stop.

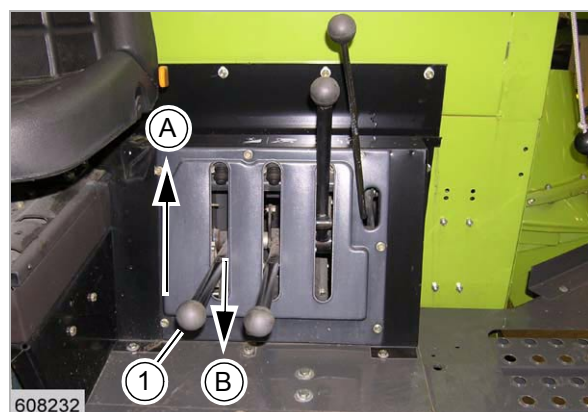
*The front attachment / feeder unit is engaged softly.
The lever (1) remains in the bottom position after engaging.*

**Warning!**

Incorrect diesel engine speed when driving in the crop.

Machine damage.

- Set the diesel engine to max. no-load speed before driving into the crop.



19

11.5.5 Disengaging the front attachment

- Push lever (1) in direction (B) up to the stop.
Guide the lever upwards. The lever now automatically remains
at the upper position (A).

The front attachment / feeder unit is disengaged and runs on slightly.



Danger!

Machine components may run on although the drive has been shut down.

Death or serious injury.

- Never touch any machine parts that are running on.
- Wait until all machine parts have stopped moving.

11.6 Threshing mechanism

82177

11.6.1 Engaging the threshing mechanism

A spring-loaded jockey pulley tightens the threshing mechanism drive V-belt against the pulleys and power is transmitted from the engine output pulley to drive the complete threshing mechanism.

**Danger!**

Engaging the threshing mechanism simultaneously engages the straw chopper, straw spreader and chaff spreader.

Danger from thrown parts.

Death or serious injuries!

- Before starting the machine ensure that there are no persons or objects in the hazardous area.

- Prepare fieldwork.
- Set diesel engine speed to slow idling speed.

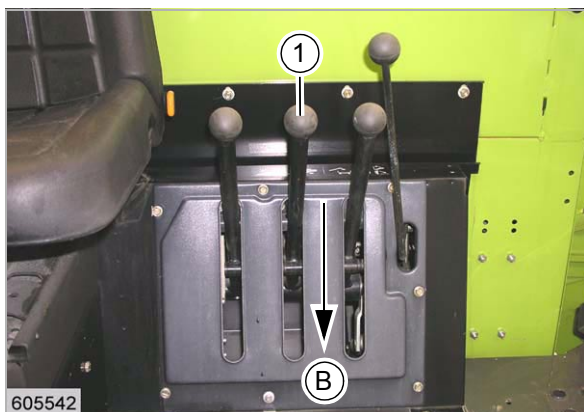
**Warning!**

High wear.

Machine damage.

- Engage / disengage the threshing mechanism at slow idling speed of the diesel engine.
- Engage the threshing mechanism.
 - Push lever (1) slowly in direction (B) up to the stop.

The threshing mechanism is gently engaged. The lever (1) remains in the bottom position after engaging.



19419

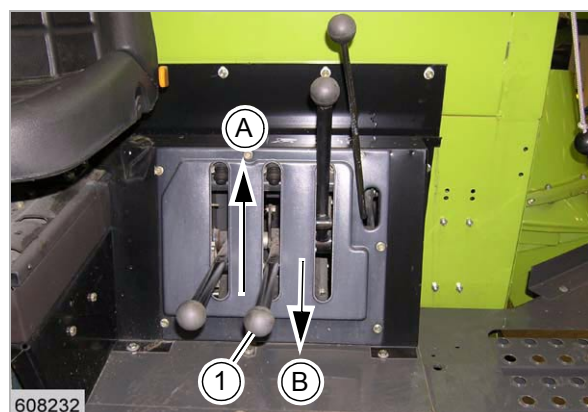
20

**Warning!**

Incorrect diesel engine speed when driving in the crop.

Machine damage.

- Set the diesel engine to max. no-load speed before driving into the crop.



21

19605

11.6.2 Disengaging the threshing mechanism

- Set diesel engine speed to slow idling speed. 
- Push lever (1) in direction (B) up to the stop.
Guide the lever upwards. The lever now automatically remains at the upper position (A).

The threshing mechanism is disengaged and runs on slightly.



Danger!

Machine components may run on although the drive has been shut down.

Death or serious injury.

- Never touch any machine parts that are running on.
- Wait until all machine parts have stopped moving.

11.6.3 Adjusting the concave

86956



Danger!

Unexpected machine movements.

Death or serious injuries!

- Never adjust the threshing concave during threshing.
- Make sure that no more crop lies between the threshing drum and threshing concave.



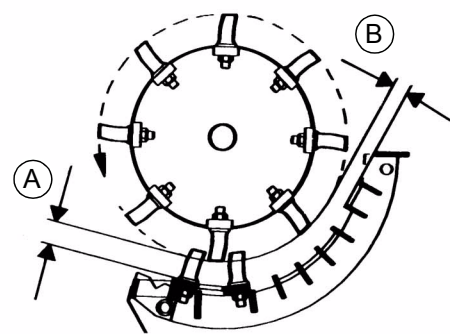
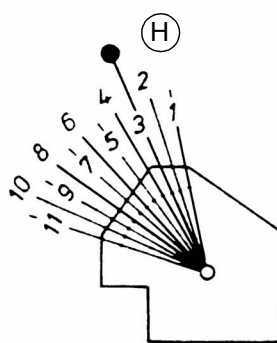
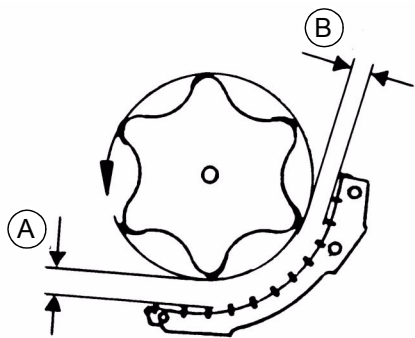
22

19428

Using lever (H), the clearance between main concave and threshing drum can be set simultaneously at the concave entrance and the concave exit.

- Lever (H) down = increases concave distance.
- Lever (H) up = decreases concave distance.

Concave settings



608234

Main concave

Measured at concave bar	Wire N10 ** Wire N12 ** Sheet-metal (10 x 38)***		Wire N10 ***		Wire N18 **		Sheet-metal (19 x 40)***		Spike tooth**	
	A	B	A	B	A	B	A	B	A	B
	3rd **	10th **	2nd	9th	3rd	2nd last	2nd	9th	1st	3rd last
	2nd ***	9th ***								
Lever H (hole)	(mm)	(mm)	(mm)	(mm)	(mm)	(mm)	(mm)	(mm)	(mm)	(mm)
1	10	1	10	2	24	9	19	4	14	7
2	11	2	11	4	26	10	21	5	15 *	8 *
3	13 *	3 *	13 *	5 *	28	11	23	7	17	9
4	15	4	15	6	30	12	25	9	19	11
5	17	6	17	8	33	14	27	11	21	13
6	19	8	19	10	35	16	29	13	23	15
7	21	10	21	12	37	18	31	15	25	17
8	23	12	23	14	40 *	20 *	33 *	17 *	27	19
9	25	14	25	16	42	22	35	19	29	21
10	28	16	28	18	44	24	37	21	31	23
11	30	18	30	20	47	26	40	24	33	26

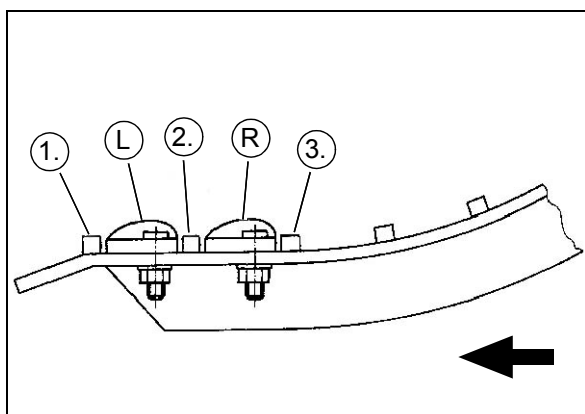
** = Basic concave adjustment, ** = Continuous concave, *** = Multicrop concave with 3 concave segments

A = Concave entrance, B = Concave exit

11.6.4 Installing / removing the disawner bars (accessory)

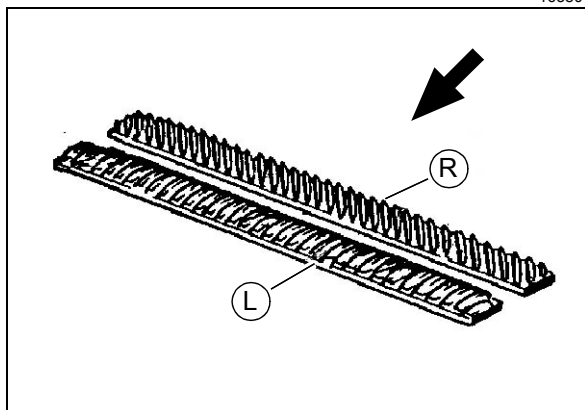
82336

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Fieldwork" chapter.



16380

23



16379

24

Machine with multicrop wire concave

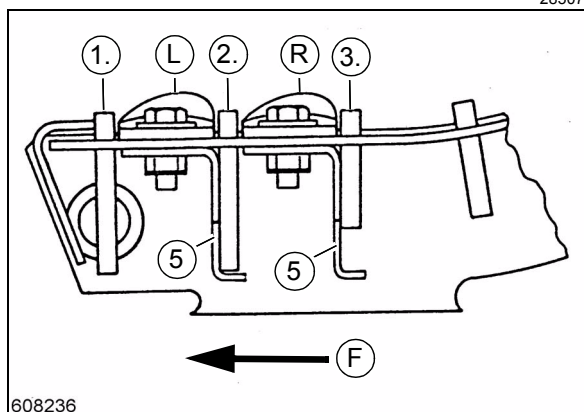
For better disawning, up to two three-piece disawner bars can be installed in the main concave.

One three-piece bar is installed ex works. Another three-piece bar is enclosed with the machine.

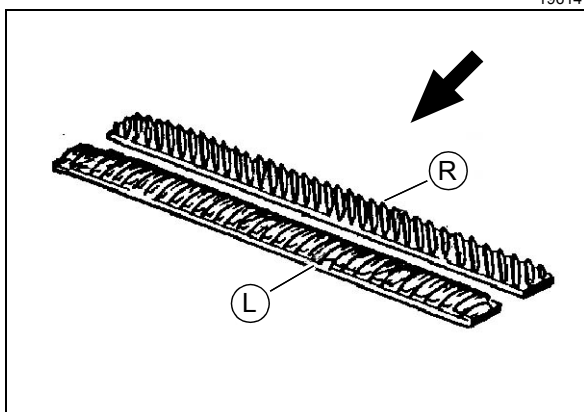
- Remove the threshing concave segments.
- Bolt on the disawner bars using 8.5 x 40 x 3 washers and self-locking nut VM 8.
- Bolt on the left-ribbed disawner bar (L) between the 1st and 2nd concave bars.
- Bolt on the right-ribbed disawner bar (R) between the 2nd and 3rd concave bars.
- Install the threshing concave segments.



25



26



27



28

Machine with standard wire concave

For better disawning, up to two one-piece disawner bars can be installed in the main concave.

In the ex works condition, one one-piece bar with mating bar is provided. Another one-piece bar (R) with a mating bar is enclosed with the machine. (accessory)

- When required, unscrew disawner bar (R) with mating bar from the stone trap cover.



WARNING:

Dirty concave.

Machine damage.

- Make sure surroundings are clean.
- Clean concave prior to installation.
- Ensure that the disawner bars make contact with the concave wires.
- Bolt down the disawner bars (L, R) using 6 hex. bolts M 8 x 25 DIN 933-8.8, contact washers A 8 and mating bar (5) for each bar.
- Bolt on the left-ribbed disawner bar (L) between the 1st and 2nd concave bars.
- Bolt on the right-ribbed disawner bar (R) between the 2nd and 3rd concave bars.

11.6.5 Unslugging the threshing drum

82332

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Fieldwork" chapter. 👁



WARNING:

Sensitive components surrounding the chisel.

Machine damage.

- Make sure that the chisel does not damage the lubricating line and the speed sensor.
- Set the threshing concave downwards. 👁
- Remove safety device.

- Using a flat chisel (1) (part no. 00 0406 451 0) over the segment with the threshing concave open all the way, turn the threshing drum loose in the direction opposite to the running direction.



Danger!

Moving machine parts and / or unexpected motion of the machine.

Death or serious injuries!

- Make sure that the machine drives do not inadvertently continue turning when removing the straw plug.

- Remove the straw plug through the open drum inspection cover.
- Close the drum inspection cover.
- Fit safety device.
- Engage the threshing mechanism.
- Set the concave to the desired position.

11.6.6 Adjusting the threshing drum speed

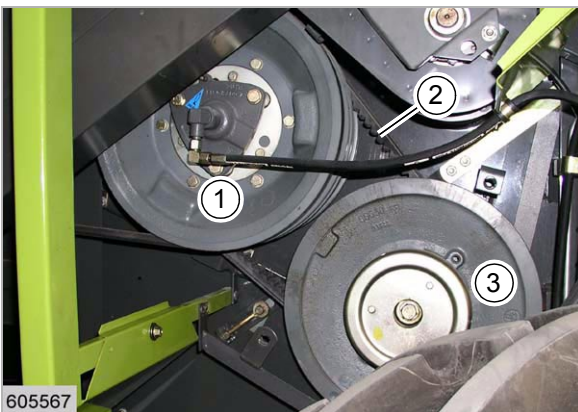
Threshing drum variable-speed drive

The threshing drum speed can be infinitely varied from 650 to 1500 rpm by the threshing drum variable-speed drive.

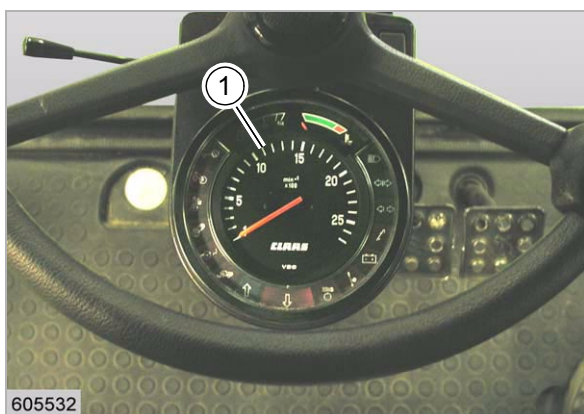
The speed variation combined with concave adjustment allows quick adaptation of threshing operations in order to match different crop conditions. Damp long-strawed crops as well as crops difficult to thresh and disawn require faster drum speeds than dry and brittle crops.

The speed must be set depending on the crop. See threshing chart.

- Engage the threshing mechanism.
- Set the diesel engine speed to fast idling speed.



29



605532

30



605538

DOMINATOR 150 / 140

19367

19415

31



DOMINATOR 130

28458

32



605538

DOMINATOR 150 / 140

19415

33

Reading the threshing drum speed on the vehicle information unit (1)

DOMINATOR 150 / 140

- Unlock switch (4) with lock.

DOMINATOR 130

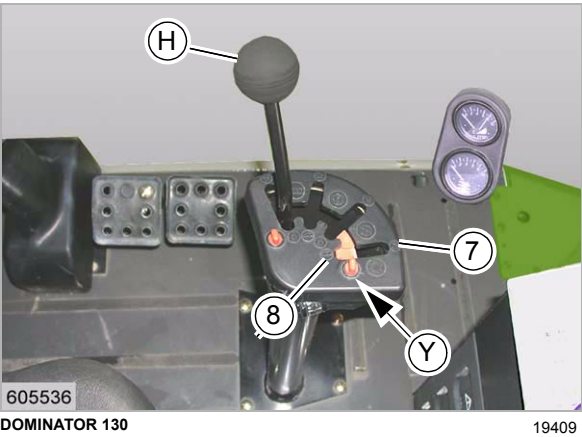
- Set switch (5) to the rear.

Adjusting the threshing drum speed DOMINATOR 150 / 140

- Actuate switch (3) and reduce or increase threshing drum speed.

Blocking the speed adjustment

- Lock switch (4).



Adjusting the threshing drum speed
DOMINATOR 130
- Unblock the threshing drum gate (7 / 8) with lock (Y).

Reducing the threshing drum speed
- Move lever (1) from the neutral position (N) towards (7), thus reducing the threshing drum speed.

Increasing the threshing drum speed
- Move lever (1) from the neutral position (N) towards (8), thus increasing the threshing drum speed.

Blocking the threshing drum gate
- Block threshing drum gate (7 / 8) with lock (Y). Consequently, the drum speed cannot be accidentally changed.

55569

11.6.7 Threshing drum two-step variable-speed drive (chain drive)

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Fieldwork" chapter.

An optional chain drive kit for threshing crops that crack easily can be installed in place of the drum variable-speed drive.

Three speeds can be obtained by changing sprockets (2). An additional fourth speed can be obtained by replacing sprocket (1) on the impeller shaft.

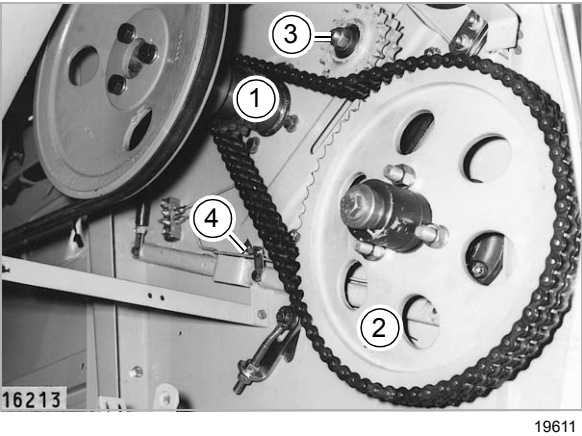


Table with 3 columns: Sprocket, Teeth, Speed of. It lists four speed configurations: 300 rpm (17/64 teeth), 430 rpm (17/45 teeth), 550 rpm (17/35 teeth), and an additional stage of 265 rpm (15/64 teeth).

For a speed of 550 rpm, the standard length of chain is 72 rollers.

For 430 rpm, add a length of 6 rollers; for a speed of 300 rpm and for a speed of 265 rpm, add an additional length of 10 rollers to the chain.

Tension the double chain moderately at tensioner bolt (4) with the clamping bolt (3) slackened off. After tensioning, tighten clamping bolt again.

Whatever drive is used, drum speed read out is provided by the tachometer in the combined instrument gauge on the operator's platform.

11.7 Separation

11.7.1 Adjusting the deflector curtain

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Fieldwork" chapter. 

The deflector curtain (1) can be height-adjusted on the right side of the machine, using a chain.

In the basic grain setting, the deflector curtain is hanging down freely.

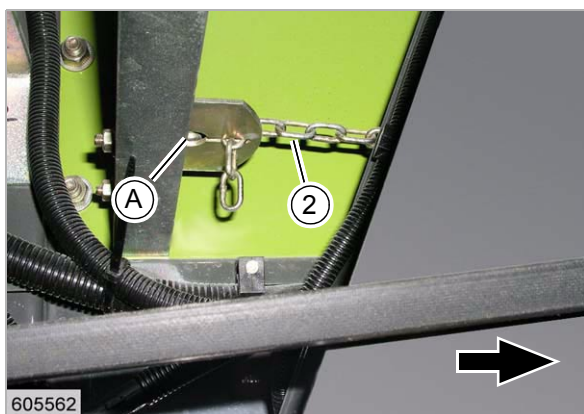
Raise the curtain in heavy, long-strawed crops and where a lot of greenstuff is encountered.

It is essential to lower the curtain again in short-strawed light crops.



36

19623



37

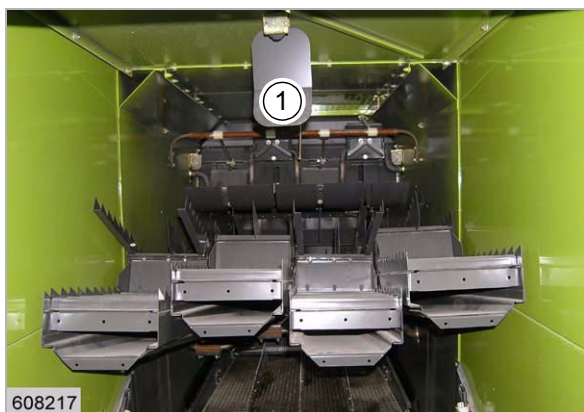
19624

- Unlock chain (2) at position (A) and adjust its length.

The deflector curtain can be set higher or lower.

The deflector curtain can yield to the rear.

- Lock chain (2) at position (A) after the adjustment.



38

19625

11.7.2 Observe the straw blockage warning downstream of the separation stage

In case of a straw jam downstream of the separation stage, cover (1) is actuated and the horn on the operator's platform produces a horn tone.

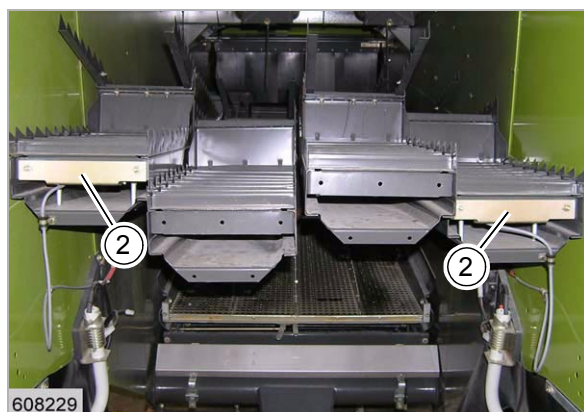


WARNING:

Straw plug.

Machine damage.

- Immediately stop the machine and remove straw plug.



39



40



41

11.7.3 Adjusting the separation performance monitor display

The cleaning and separation performance monitor allows the operator to make full use of the capacity of the machine.

The display (3) allows the operator to determine how fast the machine can be driven without the reasonable grain loss limit being exceeded.

Grains lost over the back of the combine with the straw fall onto the sensors (2). The excited pulses are visualised by the meter lights of the display (3).

The sensitivity of the separation display can be set depending on the properties of the crop (straw moisture, green part, grain shape, leaf content of straw).

- Adjust the separation performance monitor sensors.
- Set the sensitivity of the separation display and the desired individual grain loss limit at switch (4).

The display reacts more sensitive / less sensitive, depending on the adjusted set value.

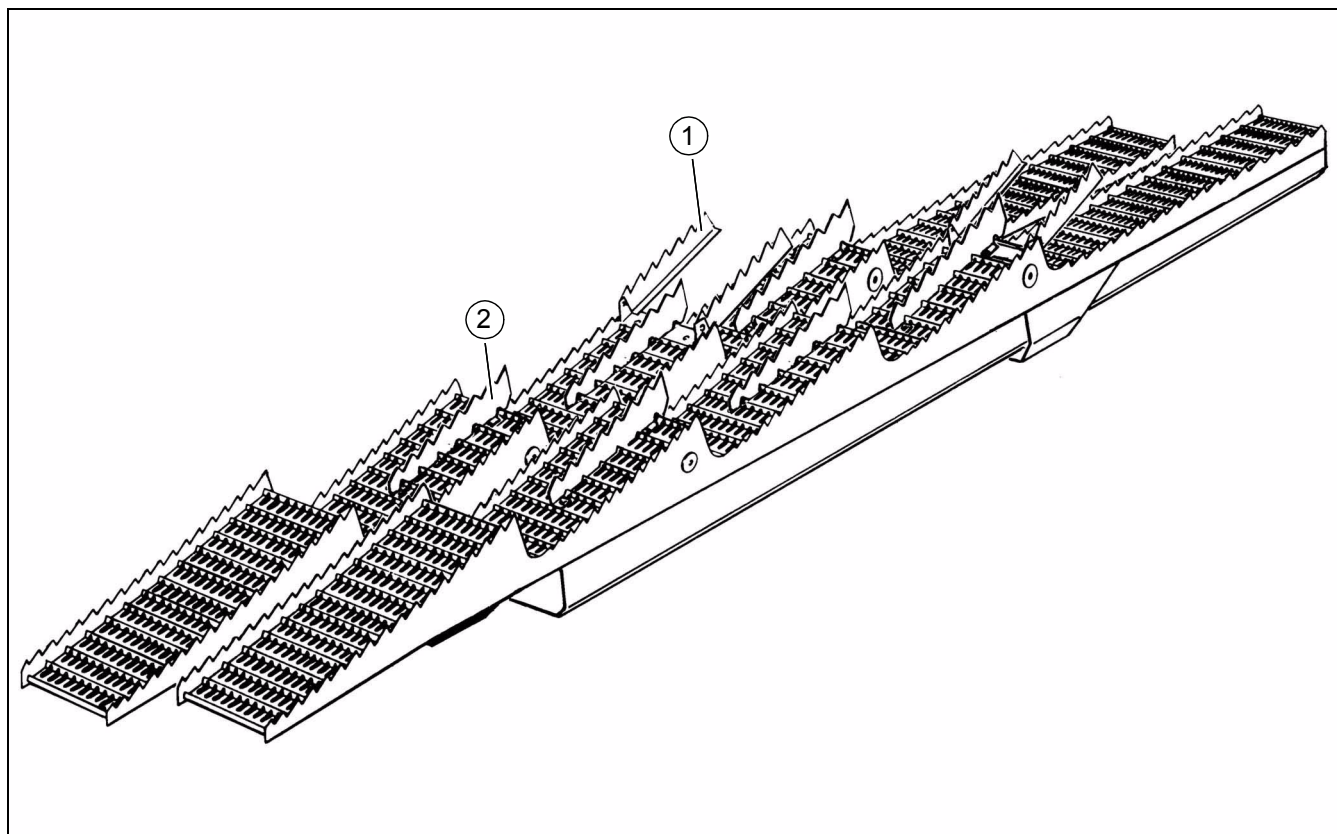
Check the grain loss limit. Proceed as follows:

- Prepare fieldwork. 👁
 - Set the machine depending on the crop. See threshing chart.
 - Engage front attachment. 👁
 - Engage the threshing mechanism. 👁
 - Drive the machine into the crop at the speed appropriate for the crop.
 - Stop the machine when the fourth to fifth light of the meter light (3) lights up constantly after a sufficient distance has been covered.
 - Check the losses in the swath.
 - If loss is at an acceptable level, continue operation with selected setting.
 - When losses on the straw walker are too high, increase the gauge sensitivity by about half to one step, using switch (4).
- Now adjust forward speed until the fourth or fifth light in the meter light (3) lights up again.
- When excessive losses on the straw walker continue, check the machine setting regarding concave clearance, drum speed and deflector curtain setting.

If the loss rate, indicated by the fourth or fifth light in the meters, is acceptable, the capacity of the combine is fully utilised at this forward speed.

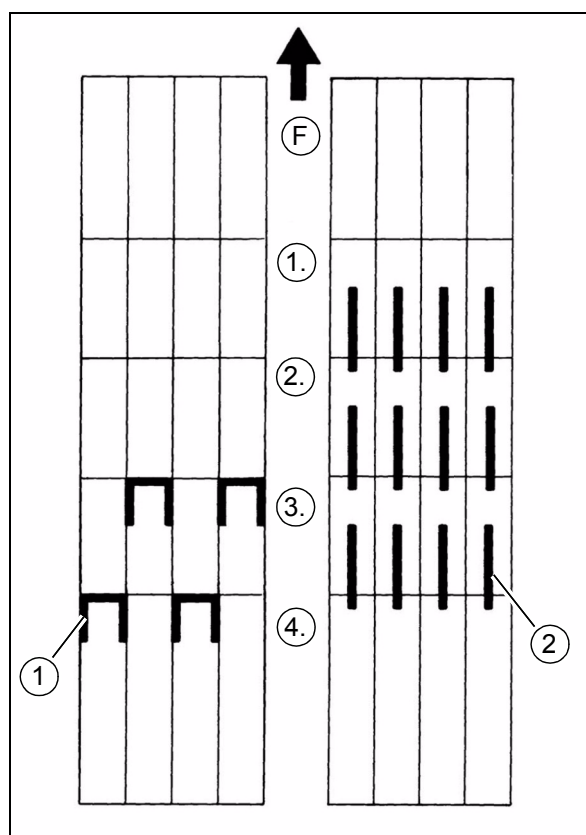
The cleaning and separation performance monitor should be adjusted as described to suit changing losses in the morning, when the crop is wet with dew, at noon when the crop is absolutely dry, and in the evening when the crop gradually gets damp.

11.7.4 Installing / removing the straw walker fishback



28794

42



28793

43

	Designation
1	Side risers
2	Rise riser (also for grain)
1st	Straw walker step 1
2nd	Straw walker step 2
3rd	Straw walker step 3
4th	Straw walker step 4
F	Direction of travel

**Note!**

Risers can collide with the agitator tines of the intensive separation system.

Machine damage.

- Install risers at a safe distance from the agitator tines of the intensive separation system.
- Check free wheel.

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Fieldwork" chapter.

For more intense loosening-up, especially with wet and heavy straw, risers can be fitted on the straw walker racks.

The risers can also be installed in combination to achieve an even better tumbling action.

If required, parallel risers (3) can also be fitted to the follow-up steps of the straw walkers.

11.8 Cleaning unit

11.8.1 Adjusting the fan speed

The cleaning fan blows all light particles out of the machine from below. Excessive "matting" of grain, chaff and broken straw on the upper sieve can be prevented by having sufficient volume of wind. The wind blast also helps to fluff up the material.

The speed can be infinitely varied with crank (1). The crank is decelerated by a spring and is therefore protected against unintended misadjustments.

- Engage the threshing mechanism. 
- Set the diesel engine speed to fast idling speed. 



608221

19634

44



Note!

Constructive conditions.

Machine damage.

- Adjust the fan speed only when the threshing mechanism is engaged.
- Adjust fan speed with crank (1) until the desired speed is shown on gauge (2).

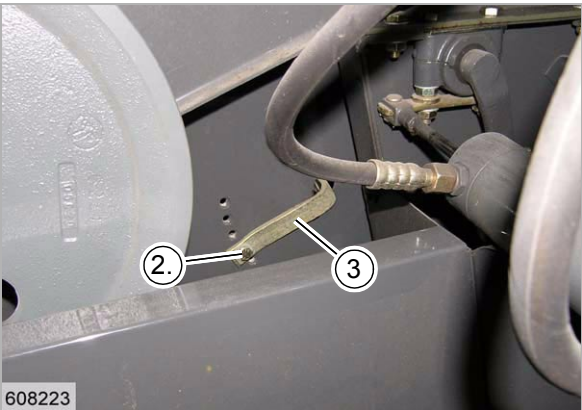
Fan speed	
Higher	Turn crank clockwise (+)
Lower	Turn crank anti-clockwise (-)
Gauge value x 100 = approx. fan speed in rpm.	

The speed must be set depending on the crop. See threshing chart.

Basic rule: Set the fan speed as high as possible, depending on crop conditions.

11.8.2 Adjusting the wind board

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Fieldwork" chapter. 



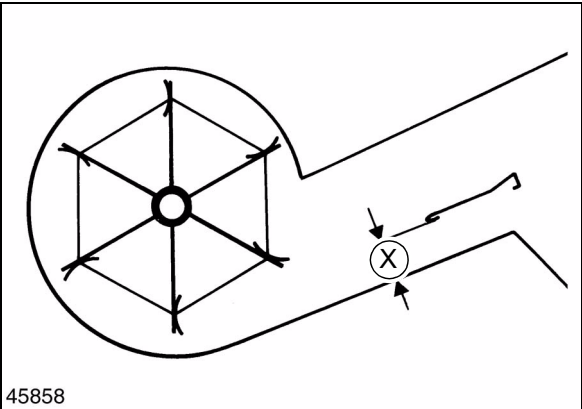
Use the wind board (1) to adjust the wind direction in the air duct.

For heavy crops, adjust the wind board steeper, for light crops, adjust the wind board less steeply.

Wind board basic adjustment	
Lever (3)	2nd hole from below
Dimension (X)	approx. 68 mm
Dimensions (X) and (Y) are factory-set. When installing new parts, check the dimension.	

45

- Unscrew bolt (2).
Move wind boards to the desired positions.
Screw in bolt (2).

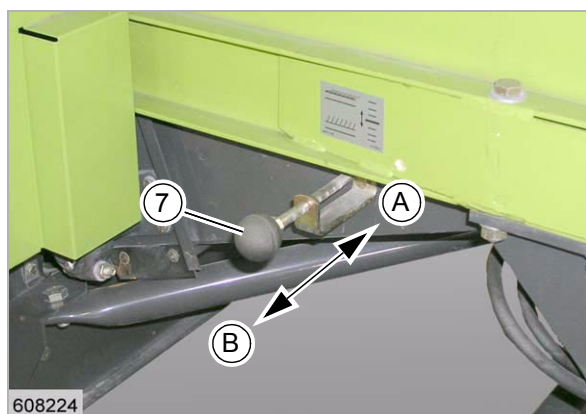


46

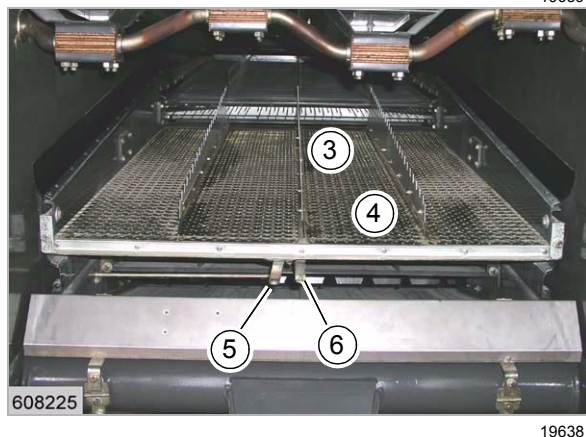
19637

11.8.3 Adjusting the sieves manually

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Fieldwork" chapter.👁



47



48



49

The frogmouth sieves are adjustable for all grain sizes by levers.

Lever (5) is used to adjust the upper frogmouth sieve over its full length, including the returns passthrough area (4).

Lever (6) is used to adjust only the returns passthrough area (4).

- Adjust the grain sieving (3) of the upper frogmouth sieve with lever (5) so that the grain quantity is sieved after three fourths of the sieve area has been sieved.
- Always set the returns sieving (4) of the upper frogmouth sieve with lever (5) for all crop types wider than the grain sieving (3), so as to prevent ears not threshed out from falling through and getting into the returns. Check returns.
- Adjust the lower frogmouth sieve with the lever (7) so that the crop in the grain tank corresponds to the desired quality. Check returns.

Lower sieve adjusting lever (7)

A	Narrower sieve spacing
B	Wider sieve spacing

11.8.4 Adjusting the cleaning performance monitor display

The cleaning and separation performance monitor allows the operator to make full use of the capacity of the machine.

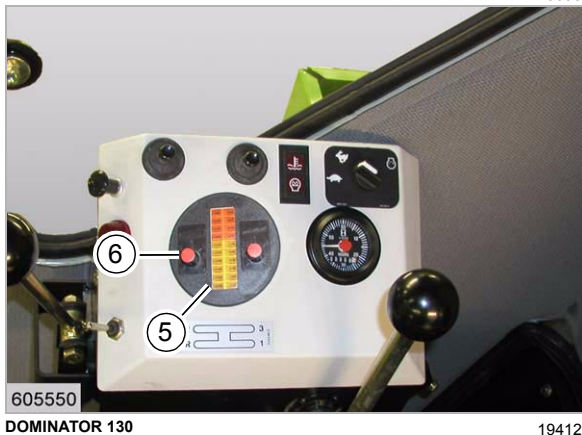
The display (3) allows the operator to determine how fast the machine can be driven without the reasonable grain loss limit being exceeded.

The grains carried out through the sieve fall on the sensor (2). The excited pulses are visualised by the meter lights of the display (3).

The sensitivity of the cleaning system display can be adjusted depending on the properties of the crop (grain moisture, grain shape, green part).



50



51

- Adjust the cleaning performance monitor sensors.
- Set the sensitivity of the cleaning display and the desired individual grain loss limit at switch (6).

The display reacts more sensitive / less sensitive, depending on the adjusted set value.

Check the grain loss limit. Proceed as follows:

- Prepare fieldwork. 👁️
 - Set the machine depending on the crop. See threshing chart.
 - Engage front attachment. 👁️
 - Engage the threshing mechanism. 👁️
 - Drive the machine into the crop at the speed appropriate for the crop.
 - Stop the machine when the forth to fifth light of the meter light (5) lights up constantly after a sufficient distance has been covered.
 - Check the losses in the swath.
 - If loss is at an acceptable level, continue operation with selected setting.
 - When losses on the sieve are too high, increase the gauge sensitivity by about half to one step, using switch (6).
- Now adjust forward speed until the fourth or fifth light in the meter light (5) lights up again.
- When excessive losses on the sieve continue, check the machine setting regarding concave clearance, drum speed, fan speed and sieve setting.

When the cleaning is properly adjusted, one of the lights at the bottom of the meter light (5) lights up.

The cleaning and separation performance monitor should be adjusted as described to suit changing losses in the morning, when the crop is wet with dew, at noon when the crop is absolutely dry, and in the evening when the crop gradually gets damp.

11.9 Crop receptacle / straw receptacle

83223

11.9.1 Putting the straw chopper into operation (swinging the standard spreader to chopping position)

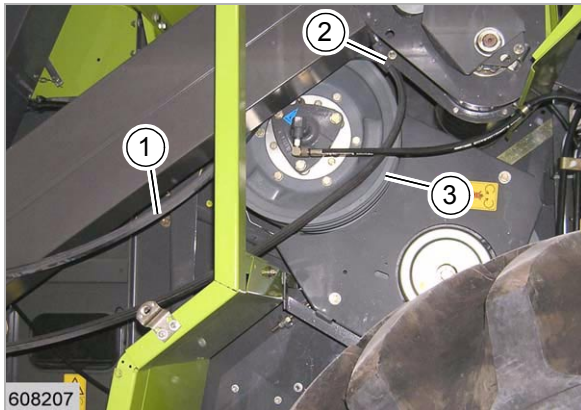
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Fieldwork" chapter. 

**Danger!**

Machine components may run on although the drive has been shut down.

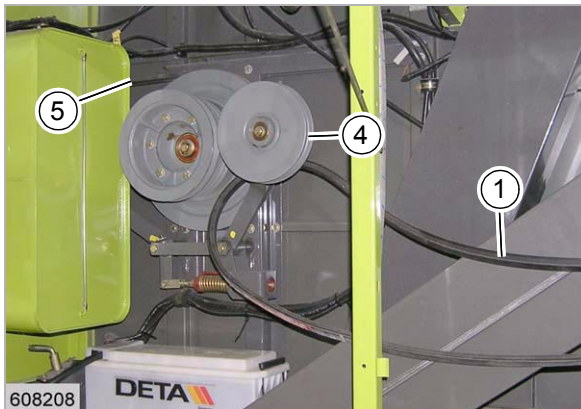
Death or serious injury.

- Never touch any machine parts that are running on.
- Wait until all machine parts have stopped moving.



52

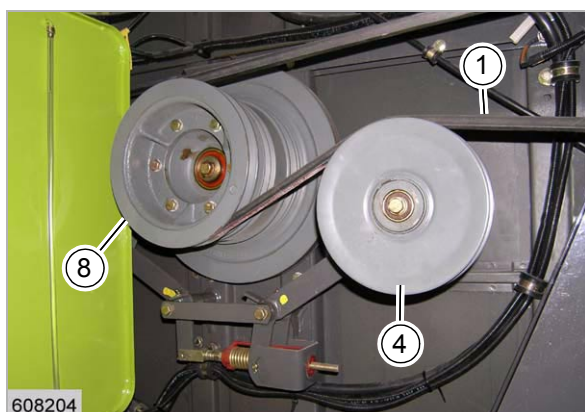
19671



53

19672

- Open the right side cover.
 - Unhinge belt (1) from bracket (2) and install it on pulley (3).
-
- Check belt (5). The belt (5) must make contact with all pulleys, jockey pulleys and guide rollers. Provide contact of belt if required.
 - Unhinge belt (1) from bracket of jockey pulley (4).



54



Warning!

Pinch points during assembly work.

Limbs may be bruised.

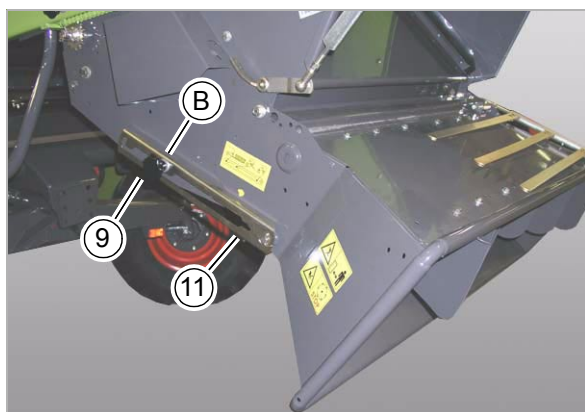
- Keep your limbs away from the hazard area.

- Lay belt (1) on the inner side of the elevator and install it on pulley (8) via jockey pulley (4). To do this, push down jockey pulley (4).



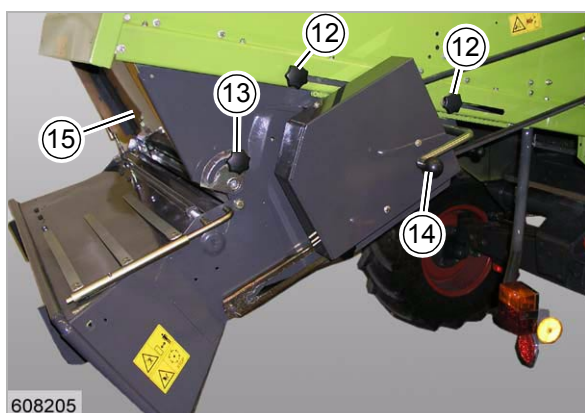
55

- Loosen turn locks (9) on both sides.
- Pull finger rake (10) from its lock, fold it down and let it engage so that the rake makes contact with the spreader.



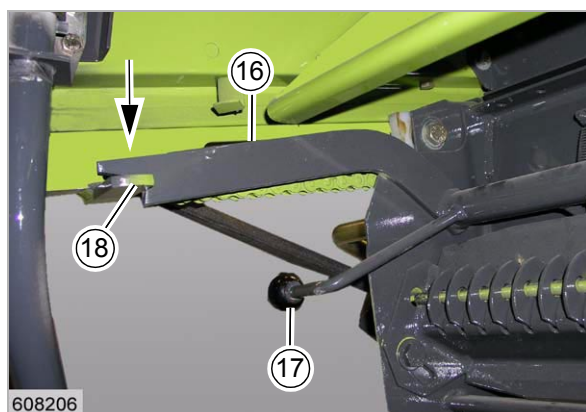
56

- Lift the sheet metal plate (11) on the left side. Raise the standard spreader until the plates engage in the detents (B) on both sides.
- Bolt down turn locks (9) on both sides.



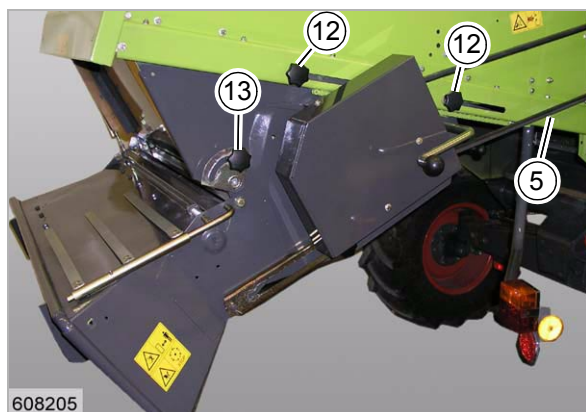
57

- Loosen turn locks (12) on both sides.
- Loosen turn lock (13) on the right side.
- Move the straw chopper to the rear, using crank (14). At the same time the straw guide plate (15) is swung backwards.



58

19665



59

19664



60

19554

- Use lever (17) for raising support (16) to rest on the keeper (18).

- Bolt down turn locks (12) on both sides.
- Tighten the turn lock (13).
- Check belt (5). The belt (5) must make contact with all pulleys, jockey pulleys and guide rollers. Provide contact of belt if required.
- Close the right side cover.

Switching on the straw chopper function monitor DOMINATOR 130 (optional equipment)

The straw chopper speed monitor must be switched on when putting the straw chopper into operation (swinging the standard spreader to chopping position), using the pull switch (1).

When the chopper is standing still while the pull switch is ON, the horn on the operator's platform produces a horn sound. The straw chopper indicator light in the vehicle information unit is also activated.

Straw chopper function monitor DOMINATOR 150 / 140 (optional equipment)

The straw chopper speed monitor is switched on automatically when putting the straw chopper into operation (swinging the standard spreader to chopping position).

83284

11.9.2 Putting the straw chopper out of operation (swinging the standard spreader to swathing position)

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Fieldwork" chapter. 👁

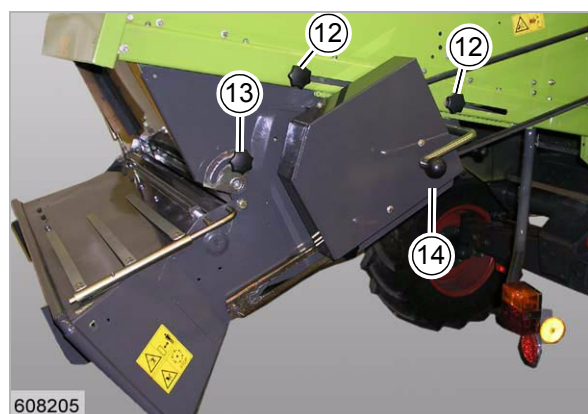


Danger!

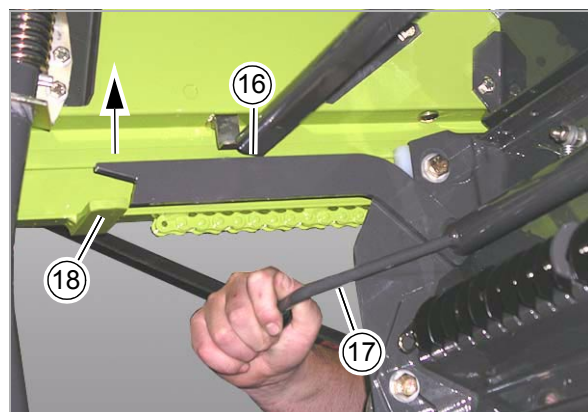
The cutting cylinders of the straw chopper can run on even if the drive is switched off.

Death or serious injuries!

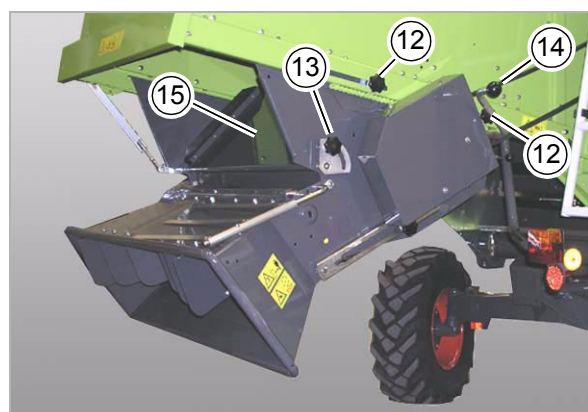
- Never touch any machine parts that continue running.
- Wait until all machine parts have completely stopped moving.



61



62

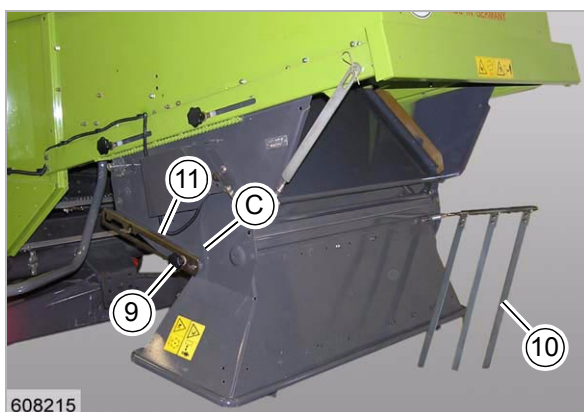


63

- Loosen turn locks (12) on both sides.
- Loosen turn lock (13) on the right side.
- Relocate the straw chopper slightly to the rear for relieving the load on support (16), using crank (14).

- Use lever (17) for lifting support (16) over the keeper (18).

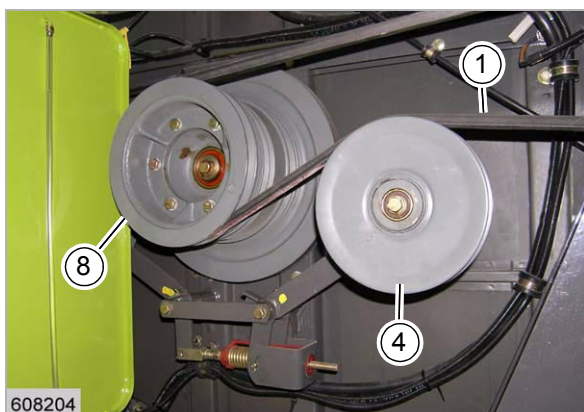
- Move the straw chopper to the front, using crank (14).
At the same time the straw guide plate (15) is swung forward.
- Bolt down turn locks (12) on both sides.
- Tighten the turn lock (13).



64

19670

- Loosen turn locks (9) on both sides.
- Lift the sheet metal plate (11) on the left side. Swing the standard spreader all the way down until the sheet metal plates on both sides make contact at position (C).
- Bolt down turn locks (9) on both sides.
- Pull finger rake (10) from its lock, fold it up and engage it.



65

19663

- Open the right side cover.

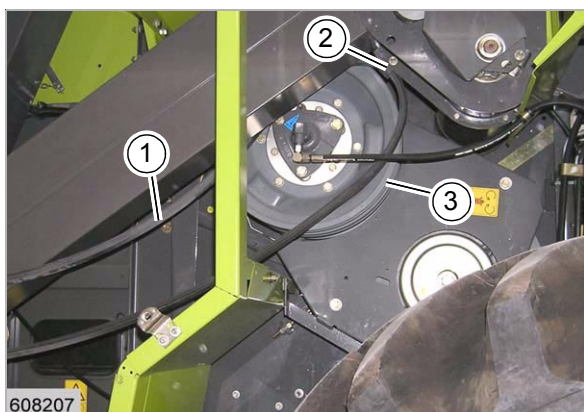
**Warning!**

Pinch points during assembly work.

Limbs may be bruised.

- Keep your limbs away from the hazard area.

- Remove belt (1) from pulley (8). To do this, push down jockey pulley (4).



66

19671

- Remove belt (1) from pulley (3) and suspend it on bracket (2).



67

19672

**Caution**

Rotating and moving machine parts.

Machine damage.

- The component must not touch rotating machine parts.
- Keep a sufficient distance from all rotating and moving machine parts.
- Comply with instructions.

- Lay belt (1) on the outer side of the elevator and suspend it on the bracket of jockey pulley (4).
- Check belt (5). The belt (5) must make contact with all pulleys, jockey pulleys and guide rollers. Provide contact of belt if required.



68

19554

- Close the right side cover.

Switching off the straw chopper function monitor DOMINATOR 130 (optional equipment)

The straw chopper speed monitor must be switched off when putting the straw chopper out of operation (swinging the standard spreader to swathing position), using the pull switch (1).

When the chopper is standing still while the pull switch is OFF, the horn on the operator's platform produces no horn sound. The straw chopper indicator light in the vehicle information unit is also deactivated.

Straw chopper function monitor DOMINATOR 150 / 140 (optional equipment)

The straw chopper speed monitor is switched off automatically when putting the straw chopper out of operation (swinging the standard spreader to swathing position).

83211

11.9.3 Swinging the standard distributor into the transport trolley transport position

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Fieldwork" chapter.

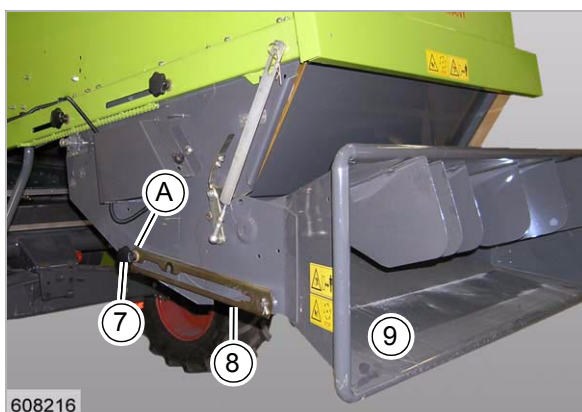


Danger!

The cutting cylinders of the straw chopper can run on even if the drive is switched off.

Death or serious injuries!

- Never touch any machine parts that continue running.
- Wait until all machine parts have completely stopped moving.



69

19696

- Slacken off toggles (7) on both sides.
- Lift the sheet metal plate (8) on the left side. Swing the standard distributor (9) all the way up until the sheet metal plates on both sides snap into the notches (A).
- Bolt down toggles (7) on both sides.

The transport trolley can now be hitched.

**11.9.4 Adjusting the stationary knives
(standard straw chopper)**

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Fieldwork" chapter. 

**Danger!**

The cutting cylinders of the straw chopper can run on even if the drive is switched off.

Death or serious injuries!

- Never touch any machine parts that continue running.
- Wait until all machine parts have completely stopped moving.

**Danger!**

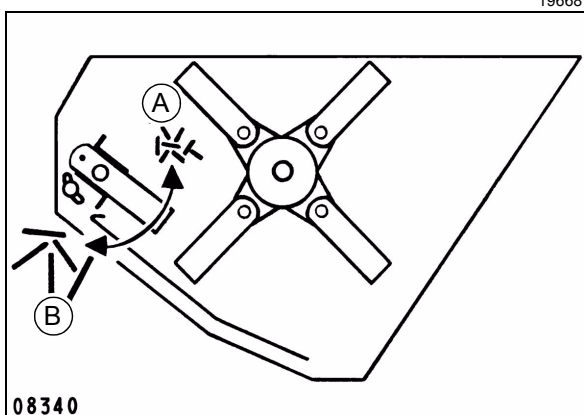
Sharp-edged machine parts, sharp blades.

Death or serious injuries!

- Wear safety gloves.



70



71

Adjusting the stationary knives

The length of cut can be varied by relocating the stationary knives (1) between position (A and B).

- Slacken off bolts (2) on both sides.
- Swivel stationary knives to any position, using wrench.

Position of stationary knives / knife carrier	Long chopped straw
A	Chop shorter
B	Chop longer
For operation in rape it is recommended setting the knife carrier all the way down.	

- Bolt down bolts (2) on both sides.

Removing the stationary knives

- Unlock and pull out spring clip of rod (3).
- Pull out rod (3).
- Remove the stationary knives.
- Push in rod (3) and secure with spring clips.

Installing the stationary knives

- Unlock and pull out spring clip of rod (3).
- Pull out rod (3).
- Install the stationary knives.
- Push in rod (3) and secure with spring clips.

Change the stationary knives

This process is necessary when the stationary knives are blunt or worn.



Note!

Uneconomic use of machine.

Increased fuel consumption.

- Turn around or replace worn stationary knives.

- Remove the stationary knives.
- Install stationary knives (new, sharp).

11.10 Grain delivery

83011

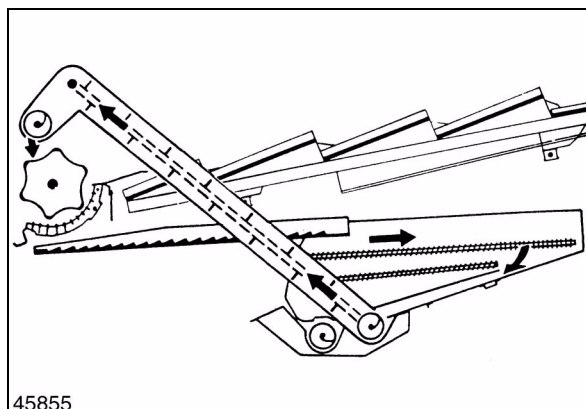
11.10.1 Inspecting the returns

Coarse particles (e.g. unthreshed heads) drop through the upper sieve and from the lower sieve into the returns auger which moves the material to the returns elevator. The elevator carries the returns to the threshing drum for second threshing.

Excessive returns cut down on efficiency and cause cracked grain and grain losses.

Excessive returns can have a number of reasons:

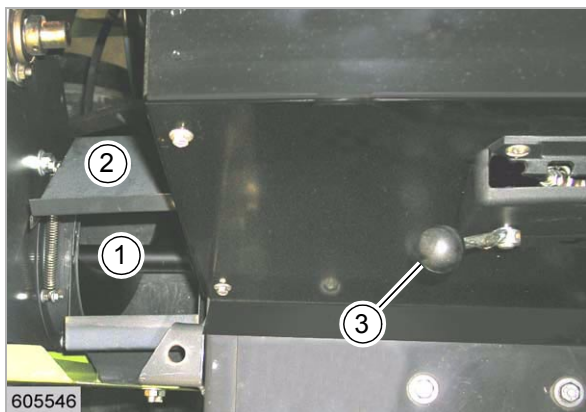
- Incorrect setting of the threshing mechanism, concave, threshing drum speed (excessive cracked grain).
- Sieves set too close or lower sieve holes too small.
- Incorrect setting of the wind blast (too high or too low).
- Ground speed too high.
- Engage the threshing mechanism. 👁
- Set the diesel engine speed to fast idling speed. 👁
- Move the machine into the crop.



45855

19644

72



605546

19646

73

**Danger!**

Rotating and moving machine parts.

Death or serious injuries!

- Keep a sufficient distance from all rotating and moving machine parts.

- Actuate lever (3) and open cover (2).
 - Inspect the quantity and composition of the returns (1) by means of a visual inspection.
- If necessary, correct the machine setting.

83021

11.10.2 Opening / closing the grain tank cover

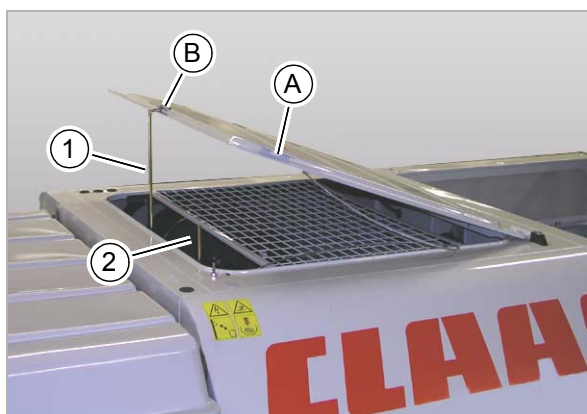
**Danger!**

Danger of collision!

Death or serious injuries!

- Ensure that when driving on public roads and lanes, the grain tank cover is completely closed.

- Stop the machine. 👁
- Apply parking brake. 👁
- Disengage the front attachment. 👁



28632

74

Opening the grain tank cover

- Lift cover at position (A).
- Rotate rod (1) at lever (2) and engage at position (B).

The grain tank cover is open.



28633

75

Closing the grain tank cover

- Lift cover at position (A).
- Disengage rod (1) at position (B) and place it on the grating.
- Lower the cover.

The grain tank cover is closed.



28639

76

11.10.3 Swinging the grain tank unloading tube out / in (DOMINATOR 150 / 140)

83047



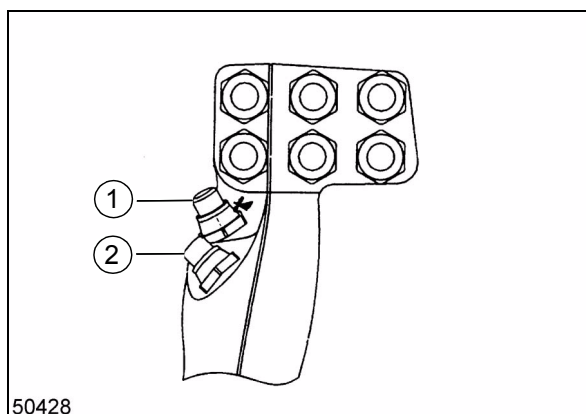
Danger!

Large swivel range of the grain tank unloading tube.

Death or serious injuries!

- Make sure that no persons are located in the swivel range of the grain tank unloading tube.
- Make sure that the grain tank unloading tube is swivelled in all the way in and rests on the support (1) when travelling on public roads and paths.

- Prepare fieldwork. 🧐



50428

19410

77

- Swing out the grain tank unloading tube.
- When actuating switch (1), the grain tank unloading tube swings out and stops upon releasing the switch (1).

**WARNING:**

Activated grain tank unloading upon swinging of grain tank unloading tube.

Machine damage.

- Switch off grain tank unloading and wait for components to stand still, then swing the grain tank unloading tube.
- Swing the grain tank unloading tube to the maximum, then engage grain tank unloading.

- Swing in grain tank unloading tube.
- When actuating switch (2), the grain tank unloading tube swings in and stops upon releasing the switch (2).

**Danger!**

Unexpected machine movements.

Death or serious injuries!

- For road travel the road travel / fieldwork switch must be OFF.



28639

78

**Danger!**

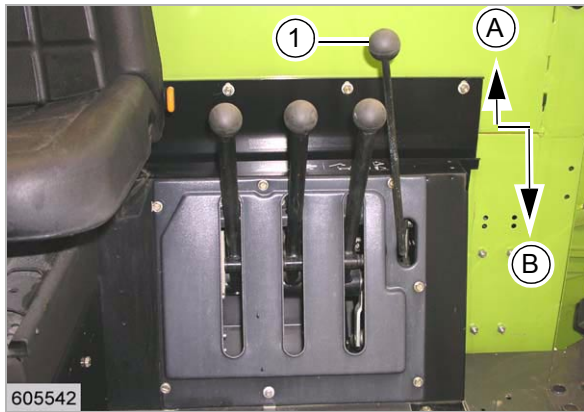
Large swivel range of the grain tank unloading tube.

Death or serious injuries!

- Make sure that no persons are located in the swivel range of the grain tank unloading tube.
- Make sure that the grain tank unloading tube is swivelled in all the way in and rests on the support (1) when travelling on public roads and paths.

11.10.4 Swinging the grain tank unloading tube out / in (DOMINATOR 130)

83140



79

19419



WARNING:

Activated grain tank unloading upon swinging of grain tank unloading tube.

Machine damage.

- Switch off grain tank unloading and wait for components to stand still, then swing the grain tank unloading tube.
- Swing the grain tank unloading tube to the maximum, then engage grain tank unloading.

- Prepare fieldwork. 
- Swing out the grain tank unloading tube.
 - When actuating lever (1) in direction (B), the grain tank unloading tube will swing out and stop upon releasing the lever (1).
- Swing in grain tank unloading tube.
 - When actuating lever (1) in direction (A), the grain tank unloading tube will swing in and stop upon releasing the lever (1).

11.10.5 Engaging / disengaging the grain tank unloading

83150



Danger!

When starting the machine, persons are on the machine or in its hazard area.

Death or serious injury.

- Before starting the machine ensure that there are no persons or objects in the hazardous area.

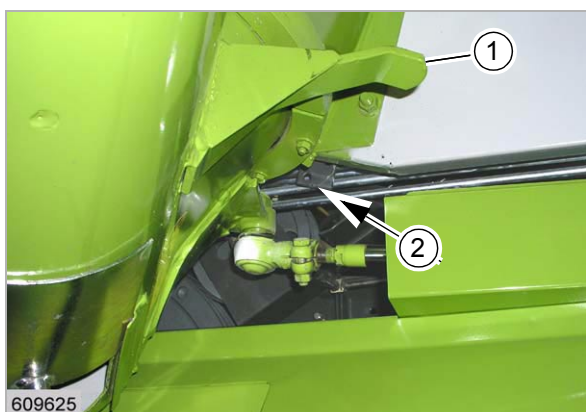


WARNING:

Activated grain tank unloading upon swinging of grain tank unloading tube.

Machine damage.

- Switch off grain tank unloading and wait for components to stand still, then swing the grain tank unloading tube.
- Swing the grain tank unloading tube to the maximum, then engage grain tank unloading.

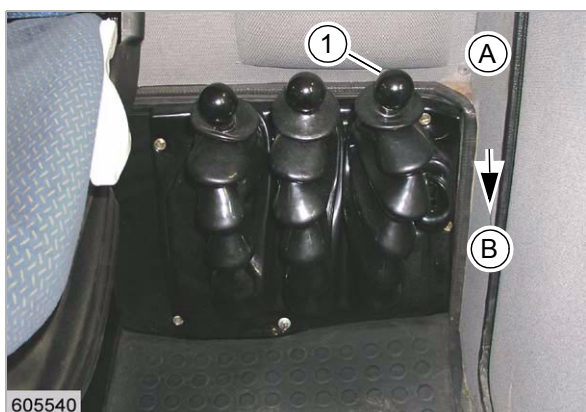


609625

19658

80

The grain tank unloading is blocked by means of cam (1) and lever (2) when the unloading auger is in the transport position. This way the unloading system can not be engaged by mistake and damage is avoided.



605540

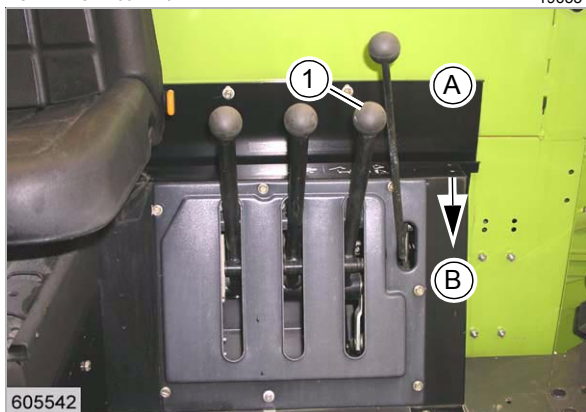
DOMINATOR 150 / 140

19655

81

- Prepare fieldwork. 👁
- Engage the grain tank unloading.
 - Swing out grain tank unloading tube to the maximum.
 - Push lever (1) slowly in direction (B) up to the stop.

The grain tank unloading is engaged softly. The lever (1) remains in the bottom position after engaging.

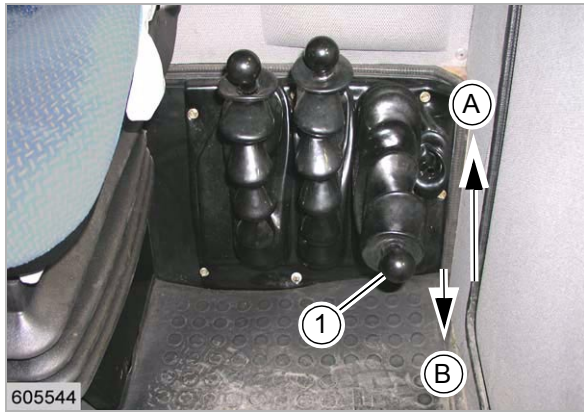


605542

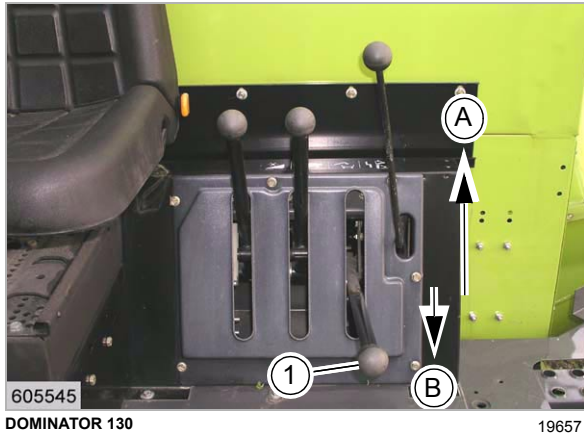
DOMINATOR 130

19419

82



83



84

- Switch off the grain tank unloading mechanism.
- Push lever (1) in direction (B) up to the stop. Pull up lever (1). The lever now automatically remains at the upper position (A).

The grain tank unloading is disengaged and runs on slightly.



Danger!

Machine components may run on although the drive has been shut down.

Death or serious injury.

- Never touch any machine parts that are running on.
- Wait until all machine parts have stopped moving.

11.10.6 Removing / installing the grain tank auger cover plates

83040

Due to the conical shape of the grain tank auger cover plates, the inlet slots to the bottom grain tank unloading augers are wider on the left side than on the right side.

This ensures that plugs in the unloading augers are avoided when working in well-flowing crops.

In poorly flowing crops (grass seed), remove the plates as needed.

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Fieldwork" chapter.



85

30205



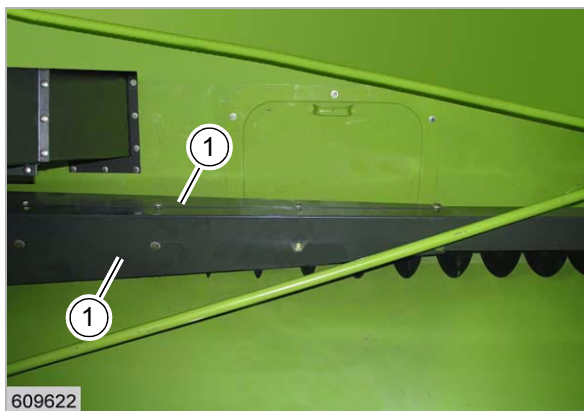
Danger!

Danger of falling!

Death or serious injuries!

- Arrange for additional safety precautions.
- Only enter areas protected by railings.
- Areas originally without railings must be protected by additional railings.

- Open the grain tank cover and fold it open to the rear as far as possible.
- Remove guard (1).



86

19653

**Warning!**

Sharp edges and pointed machine parts.

Slight injuries.

- Do not touch sharp edges of the auger flights.
- Wear safety gloves.

- Unscrew bolts.
- Removing / installing the grain tank auger cover plates (1).

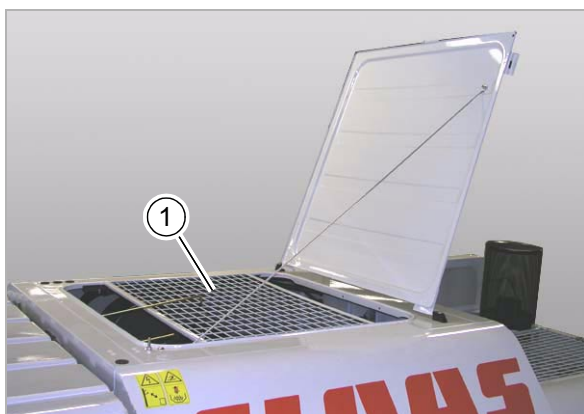
**Note!**

Performance of necessary installations.

Increased time needed.

- Screw the bolts back in immediately after removing the plates; otherwise the tapped holes will become plugged.

- Screw in bolts.
- Fit guard (1).
- Remove additional safety precautions.



87

30205

11.10.7 Clean machine for bulk seed change

43957

The machine must be cleaned after each bulk seed change.

- Engage the threshing mechanism. 👁
- Set the diesel engine speed to fast idling speed. 👁
- Set the threshing drum speed at maximum. 👁
- Set the cleaning fan speed at maximum. 👁
- Let machine run about 2 minutes at top idle speed.
- Stop the threshing mechanism. 👁
- Stop the diesel engine. 👁
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Fieldwork" chapter. 👁
- Clean the stone trap. 👁
- Clean the auger troughs. 👁
- Clean the grain tank. 👁
- Adjust the machine settings to the crop.

11.11 Sieve charts / threshing charts

11.11.1 Sieve table

Sieves / hole sizes	Crop	Depressed sieves
Standard frogmouth sieve	Grain	
Lower flat sieve, Ø 2.5 mm	Poppy / sesame / clover / lucerne	
Lower flat sieve, Ø 4.5 mm	Poppy / sesame / clover / lucerne / linseed / rape seed / spinach	
Lower flat sieve, Ø 5.6 mm	Rye / wheat / winter barley	
Lower flat sieve, Ø 7 mm	Rape seed / rape / lupine / caraway / linseed / radish / mustard / serradella / spinach	
Lower flat sieve, Ø 12 mm	Wheat / rutabaga / barley / fodder peas / rye / spinach / milo / vetches / durra / grass / lupine / durra / sorghum	
Lower flat sieve, Ø 16 mm	Sunflowers / maize / broad beans / peas	
Lower flat sieve, Ø 18 mm	Broad beans / maize	X
Lower flat sieve, Ø 20 mm	Broad beans / maize	X

11.11.2 Threshing table

Type 200 / 156	Clearance Feed roller - cutterbar trough	Position of intake finger	Disawner bars	Main concave	Threshing drum speed	Concave clearance lever (H)	Wind board
Crop	mm	hole from the bottom	0 = removed 1 = installed	0 = Grain 1 = Maize 2 = Rice	rpm	Hole from above	hole from the bottom
Wheat	15	3rd	0	0	1200	3rd	2nd
Rye	15	3rd	0	0	1300	3rd	2nd
Winter barley	15	3rd	1	0	1400	2nd	2nd
Spring barley	15	3rd	0	0	1400	2nd	2nd
Oats	20	3rd	0	0	1250	4th	2nd
Rice	15	3rd	0	2	850	6th	2nd
Spelt	15	3rd	0	0	1200	3rd	2nd
Triticale	20	3rd	0	0	1350	3rd	2nd
Field beans	20	3rd	0	1	825	8th	2nd
Dwarf beans	20	3rd	0	1	615	9th	2nd
Peas	15	3rd	0	0	650	9th	2nd
Soybeans	15	3rd	0	1	650	4th	2nd
Sunflowers	15	3rd	0	1	650	4th	2nd
Grain maize	25	-	0	1	650	9th	2nd
CCM/Maize concave	25	-	0	1	700	9th	2nd
Rape / Bird rape	20	3rd	0	0	750	6th	2nd
Millet	15	3rd	0	0	725	6th	2nd
Linseed	15	3rd	0	0	1000	4th	2nd
Clover / Lucerne	15	3rd	1	0	1200	2nd	2nd
Common meadow grass	15	3rd	0	0	1100	2nd	2nd
Ryegrass	15	3rd	0	0	1000	2nd	2nd
Meadow fescue	15	3rd	0	0	1000	2nd	2nd
Cocksfoot	15	3rd	0	0	1000	2nd	2nd

- = use is not possible

This information represents guideline values and may deviate in differing harvesting conditions.

Type 200 / 156	Fan speed Standard frogmouth sieves	Upper sieve Standard frogmouth sieves	Upper sieve Returns screening Standard frogmouth sieves	Lower sieve Standard frogmouth sieves	Weight per litre	Storage moisture	Chopper speed
Crop	rpm	mm	mm	mm	g/l	%	rpm
Wheat	800	12	12	7	750	14	3270
Rye	750	12	12	7	700	14	3270
Winter barley	750	12	12	7	620	14	3270
Spring barley	700	12	12	7	620	14	3270
Oats	550	12	12	7	420	14	3270
Rice	750	12	12	10	550	14	3270
Spelt	800	14	14	10	700	14	3270
Triticale	750	13	13	8	650	14	3270
Field beans	750	12	12	11	750	14	3270
Dwarf beans	750	12	12	11	750	14	3270
Peas	750	15	15	10	750	14	3270
Soybeans	750	12	12	9	750	14	3270
Sunflowers	750	12	12	9	340	14	3270
Grain maize	900	13	13	-	700	14	-
CCM/Maize concave	500	-	-	-	500	14	-
Rape / Bird rape	500	5	5	4	620	9	3270
Millet	750	12	12	7	700	14	3270
Linseed	500	12	12	4	500	14	3270
Clover / Lucerne	500	9	9	4	500	14	3270
Common meadow grass	500	9	9	4	500	14	3270
Ryegrass	500	9	9	4	500	14	3270
Meadow fescue	500	9	9	4	500	14	3270
Cocksfoot	500	9	9	4	500	14	3270

- = use is not possible

This information represents guideline values and may deviate in differing harvesting conditions.

Type 200 / 156	Free-swinging knife	Fixed knife	Guide plate (chopper)	Rice equipment Steel half-tracks	Rape table
Crop	0 = Grain 1 = Maize	0 = every one is installed 1 = every other is installed	0 = removed 1 = installed	0 = no 1 = yes	0 = no 1 = yes
Wheat	0	0	0	0	0
Rye	0	0	0	0	0
Winter barley	0	0	0	0	0
Spring barley	0	0	0	0	0
Oats	0	0	0	0	0
Rice	0	0	0	1	0
Spelt	0	0	0	0	0
Triticale	0	0	0	0	0
Field beans	0	0	0	0	0
Dwarf beans	0	0	0	0	0
Peas	0	0	0	0	0
Soybeans	0	0	0	0	0
Sunflowers	0	0	0	0	0
Grain maize	1	1	1	0	0
CCM/Maize concave	1	1	1	0	0
Rape / Bird rape	0	0	0	0	1
Millet	0	0	0	0	0
Linseed	0	0	0	0	0
Clover / Lucerne	0	0	0	0	0
Common meadow grass	0	0	0	0	0
Ryegrass	0	0	0	0	0
Meadow fescue	0	0	0	0	0
Cocksfoot	0	0	0	0	0
- = use is not possible					
This information represents guideline values and may deviate in differing harvesting conditions.					

11.12 Disawning

83561

11.12.1 Disawner bars

In some cases, the separation of individual non-decorated or disawned grains must be avoided by installing the disawner bars and this concave area must be used for rasping out. To this end, disawner bars can be fitted.

The optimum preparation of the crop in the front concave section ensures early separation on the downstream concave surface.

Effect on function		
	positive	negative
Disawner bars installed	Removal of husks, disawning, preparation for early separation	Unnecessary mechanical load when harvesting crops that can be threshed easily
Disawner bars removed	The entire separating area is used, higher residual grain separation	Lower husk removal and disawning level

12 Faults and remedies

12.1 General Information

85072

12.1.1 General warnings Faults and remedy

In the following sections of this chapter, a procedure instruction refers to the following general warnings.

**Danger!**

Always stop the engine before carrying out any work on the machine.

Moving machine parts and / or unexpected machine movement.

Death or serious injury.

- Diesel engine OFF.
- Apply parking brake.
- Remove the ignition key.
- Remove key of battery isolating switch.
- Wait for machine parts which run on have come to a complete halt.
- Secure machine by wheel chocks.
- Ensure that the machine cannot be started by any third persons.

**Danger!**

The front attachment, reel and feeder unit may drop uncontrolled.

Death or serious injuries!

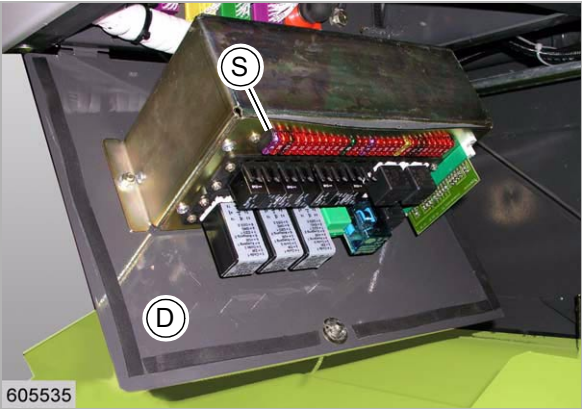
- Apply safety locks.
- Keep a safe distance from the hazard area.

12.2 Cab / Operator's platform

12.2.1 Central terminal compartment

The central terminal compartment is located under the operator's platform on the left-hand side. Plug-in modules, relays and fuses are readily accessible after cover (D) has been opened.

	Designation
D	Lid
S	Fuses



1

19373

12.2.2 Air conditioner faults and remedies

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Trouble and remedy" chapter.👁️

Danger!

Improper handling of injuries cause by refrigerant.

Death or serious injury.

- When refrigerant penetrates the skin or the eyes, have the injury treated immediately by a specialist doctor.

Danger!

Refrigerant.

Death or serious injury.

- Only have authorised and qualified workshops carry out work on air conditioning systems.
- Never get in contact with refrigerants!
- Wear safety gloves and safety goggles.
- Do not weld any components of the refrigerant circuit and or in the immediate vicinity of any parts of the refrigerant circuit.
- Maximum ambient temperature for refrigerant is 80 °C.

Malfunction		Possible cause and remedy
Air conditioner shuts down automatically.		- Extremely high outside temperature. - Let system cool down, then switch it on again. - Close door and windows.
Air conditioner does not provide cooling. Only uncooled air comes out of the air louvres.		- Magnetic clutch does not engage. - Have clutch replaced. - Drive belt slack. - Tension or replace V-belt. - Cable connections loose. - Tighten loose or disconnected cables. - Fuses blown. - Install new fuse. - Compressor will not pump coolant. Expansion valve has frozen. Saturation of moisture indicator has been reached. - Have filter-receiver replaced. For this, the system has to be discharged using the correct recovery equipment and then recharged.
Cool air is blown through the air louvres, but the air flow is insufficient for cooling the cab.		- Evaporator in cab roof blocked. - Clean evaporator. - Evaporator defective. - Have evaporator replaced (Have air conditioner system discharged and then recharge with refrigerant). - Condenser upstream of radiator is soiled. - Clean condenser. - Low refrigerant level. White ball does not float and is at bottom of indicator. - Have air conditioning system checked by a specialist workshop. - Outside air getting into the cab. - Close door and windows completely.
Air conditioner provides cool air for a time, then discharges warm air again.		- Ice formation in the expansion valve. up to serial no. ...: The filter receiver drier is saturated when the blue ball has turned pink. - Have filter-receiver replaced. (Discharge and then recharge air conditioner.) - from serial no. ...: The filter receiver drier is saturated when the orange ball has lost its colour. - Have filter-receiver replaced. (Discharge and then recharge air conditioner.)

Malfunction		Possible cause and remedy
Compressor too loud.		• Compressor bearings damaged. - Have the compressor repaired or replaced. For this, the system has to be discharged using the correct recovery equipment and then recharged. • Oil level in compressor too low (indicated by external leakage). - Have repair work carried out by a specialist workshop. Check oil level in compressor only with system drained. For this, system has to be discharged using the correct recovery equipment.
Moisture in cab. Water dripping from air louvres.		• Water drain hoses clogged or not properly routed. - Check water drain hoses for free passage. If necessary, blow out hoses with compressed air.

12.3 Front attachment**12.3.1 Front attachment**

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Trouble and remedy" chapter. 

Malfunction	Cause, remedy
Front attachment	
Poor cutting action	• Adjust the knife clip. • Replace the knives. • Align knife fingers. • Replace any damaged knife sections and/or fingers. • Remove build-up of foreign material from cutterbar.
The knife suddenly stops	• Remove foreign objects. • Replace damaged double fingers. • Tension the knives drive belt.
Lodged crops not properly picked up	• Check spacing of crop lifters. • Adjust the reel further forward. • Set reel fingers to »grabbing« position. • If necessary, set the cutterbar skids inwards.
Dirt and material build up on divider points	• Set the crop divider upwards at the adjusting plate. • Use special crop dividers.
Cutterbar cannot be raised	• Check fuse. • Have hydraulic oil pressure checked.
Feeder chains and cutterbar stop too easily	• Tension the cutterbar drive belt as specified. • Have the feeder chain slip clutch adjusted. • Have the cutterbar clutch checked.
The front attachment is in an oblique position (machine without Auto-Contour)	• Check pressure of tyres. • Align the front attachment mountings on the trough suspension.
Cutterbar clutch will not disengage	• Have the cutterbar clutch checked.
Uneven material flow	• Correct reel speed and reel tine position. • Correct reel horizontal position. • Adapt intake auger height to material to crop. • Adjust feed rake chains to correct tension.
Intake auger tending to stop or gets blocked	• Turn intake auger back and remove foreign object. • Have slip clutch reset to correct torque.
Crop wrapping round the reel shaft ends	• Adjust the inner deflector properly.
Crop wrapping round the reel tine tubes	• Slightly raise the reel. • Incline the reel tine a little more to the front. • Adjust reel speed to match ground speed. • Cover up reel tine tubes.

Malfunction	Cause, remedy
Reel tines colliding with knife in lowest position	• Adjust reel hydraulic cylinder eyebolts for higher reel setting.
The raised reel is in an oblique position	• Check for equal adjustment of reel cylinders eyebolts. • Check tightness of hydraulic cylinders. • Bleed hydraulic cylinders.
Too many stones being picked up	• Reduce number of crop lifters. • Do not cut unnecessarily low (lodged crops should be lifted with crop lifters).

12.4 Feeder unit**12.4.1 Feeder unit problem and remedy**

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Trouble and remedy" chapter. 

Malfunction	Cause, remedy
Intake	
Feeder unit cannot be raised	• Check fuse. • Have hydraulic oil pressure checked.
Feeder chains stop too easily	• Adjust the front attachment drive belt. • Have the feeder chain slip clutch adjusted.
Uneven material flow	• Adjust feed rake chains to correct tension.

12.5 Threshing mechanism

12.5.1 Threshing mechanism problem and remedy

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Trouble and remedy" chapter. 

Malfunction	Cause, remedy
Threshing mechanism	Dirty threshing parts cause unbalance and grain losses and worn threshing parts reduce combine throughput and leave unthreshed grain heads.
Drum wrapping up	• Observe even material flow from the cutterbar! • Position intake auger lower. • Have the feeder chain slip clutch adjusted. • Decrease concave-to-drum clearance. • Increase drum speed in damp crops. • Drive more slowly as moisture increases. • Correct basic adjustment of concave. • Clean and grease the threshing drum variable-speed drive (belt slippage). • Check low-pressure hydraulic system and smooth movements of threshing mechanism drive belt tensioner cylinder with jockey pulley.
Machine speed varies heavily.	• Check and/or adjust main drive V-belt clutch. • Check engine (see engine problems).
Stones and other foreign objects damage the threshing mechanism.	• Clear stone trap regularly. • Do not cut unnecessarily low on stony ground.
High V-belt wear	• Adjust the V-belt tensioning device properly. • Derust and clean the V-belt pulley contact faces. • Clean and grease sliding faces of variable speed pulleys. • Clean oily belts with soapy solution.
Poor threshing action	• Decrease concave-to-drum clearance. • Increase the threshing drum speed. • Install disawner bars. • Correct basic adjustment of concave. • Have worn and/or damaged threshing mechanisms repaired (concave, threshing drum bars). • If necessary use special threshing equipment.
Insufficient disawning	• Decrease concave-to-drum clearance. • Increase drum speed. • Install disawner bars. • Wait for crop to ripen for some more time. • Correct basic adjustment of concave. • Check concave and threshing drum bars for wear and damage.

Malfunction	Cause, remedy
Cracked grain	• Reduce the threshing drum speed. • Increase concave-to-drum clearance. • Remove disawner bars. • Tension the elevator chains properly. • Reduce the grain portion in the returns.
Unbalance	• Clean dirty threshing drum. • Remove accumulated dust in V-belt pulleys and jockey pulleys. • Have damaged threshing drum repaired. • Check impeller for damage. • Check the straw chopper free-swinging knives.
The drum speed cannot be adjusted.	• Set the diesel engine to the max. no-load speed.
Slip reported from different units	• If necessary, check tight seat and correct position of cam wheels.
Returns	
Excessive amount of chaff and short straw in the returns	• Increase the air blast. • Set the frogmouth sieves a little more narrow. • Reduce drum speed. • Have basic speed of machine checked and corrected, if necessary.
To many grains in the returns	• Ensure even feeding (cutterbar). • Check threshing mechanism adjustments. • Open the frogmouth sieves further. • Reduce the air blast. • Adjust the wind boards properly.
Elevator clogged	• Open the elevator boot and the auger trough, remove clogging, let combine harvester run idle, close doors again tightly. • Retension elevator drive V-belt. • Tension the elevator chain properly. • Clean soiled elevator housings and augers.
Slip reported from different units	• If necessary, check tight seat and correct position of cam wheels.

12.5.2 Threshing drum

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Trouble and remedy" chapter. 

The threshing drum can only work efficiently when the rasp bars are straight and not too worn. The threshing drum was balanced at the factory.

- When replacing the rasp bars, always fit bars of the same weight and replace them only in pairs.
- After this, rebalance the threshing drum.
The rasp bars must fit tightly into the drum plates.
- Threshing drum repairs should only be carried out by trained expert personnel.

12.6 Separation

12.6.1 Separation problem and remedy

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Trouble and remedy" chapter. 

Malfunction	Cause, remedy
Straw walker	
Plugging on the straw walker	• Adjust tension of straw walker drive belt. • Remove soling (awn accumulations) on the straw walker.
Slip reported from different units	• If necessary, check tight seat and correct position of cam wheels.
The separation performance monitor displays insufficient performance.	• Clean sensor trough. • Check tight seat of sensor trough and sensor. Loose sensor trough - Tighten sensor trough. Loose sensor - Replace sensor trough.

12.7 Cleaning unit**12.7.1 Cleaning problem and remedy**

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Trouble and remedy" chapter. 

Malfunction	Cause, remedy
Cleaning unit	
Uneven feeding to the sieves	• Ensure even feeding (cutterbar). • Clean preparation floor. • Straighten wire rakes on the preparation floor.
Mat formation on frogmouth sieves	• Set the frogmouth sieves to a wider position. • Increase the air blast. • Reduce threshing drum speed (broken straw). • Adjust the wind boards properly. • Set the pre-sieve deflector to another position.
Dirty grain sample	• Increase the air blast. • Decrease frogmouth sieves opening. • Adjust the wind boards properly.
Cleaning performance monitor deflects all the way.	• Set the chaff spreader so that no chaff can be thrown on the sensor. • Check tight seat of sensor trough and sensor. Loose sensor trough - Tighten sensor trough. Loose sensor - Replace sensor trough.
The cleaning performance monitor displays insufficient performance.	• Clean sensor trough. • Check tight seat of sensor trough and sensor. Loose sensor trough - Tighten sensor trough. Loose sensor - Replace sensor trough.
Slip reported from different units	• If necessary, check tight seat and correct position of cam wheels.

12.8 Crop receptacle / straw receptacle

12.8.1 Crop / straw discharge problems and remedies

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Trouble and remedy" chapter. 

Problem	Possible cause or remedy
Straw chopper	
Chopped material has uneven lengths and is not spread over the entire front attachment width.	• Free-swinging knives are dull. Replace free-swinging knives. • Stationary knives are dull. Replace stationary knives.
Chopper standstill / slip fault message when discharging straw.	• Readjust the straw guide plate limit switch.

12.9 Grain delivery**12.9.1 Grain delivery problems and remedies**

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Trouble and remedy" chapter. 

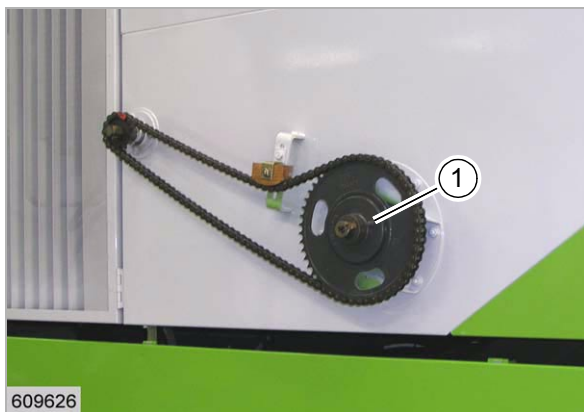
Malfunction	Cause, remedy
Grain tank	
Grain tank unloading does not work or works poorly	• Check and/or adjust V-belt clutch for grain tank unloading drive. • Have shear bolt in drive sprocket replaced. • Bend misaligned auger flights. • Clean dirty auger troughs, augers and unloading auger tube.
Grain losses	Losses of grain may have different reasons. Therefore, always determine first where the losses occur. Check combine for leakage losses. Check whether grain is lost where working parts join, especially check auger troughs, elevators etc. Extra care should be taken to check the working parts for good fitting when combining small seeds. Repair all leaks as necessary. Losses that are caused by overripe crops or poor weather conditions must not be taken for combine losses. Grain losses that are due to combining usually have four main causes: • Losses of grain over the cutterbar • Losses of grain caused by insufficient threshing • Grain losses over the straw walkers • Grain losses over the cleaning stage
• Losses of grain over the cutterbar	• Adjust the reel tine position to suit the harvesting conditions. • Adjust the reel speed to suit the ground speed. • Set the clearance between the reel and the intake auger properly. • Adjust the hydraulic fore and aft reel adjustment to suit the present conditions. • When working in crops with hanging ears, install a crop lifter on every second finger. • Adjust dividers to avoid build-up of material. • Adjust intake auger height to suit crop conditions.

Malfunction	Cause, remedy
Grain losses caused by insufficient threshing	- Adjust the cutterbar so that even feeding of the threshing parts is achieved. - Adjust threshing drum speed to suit crop conditions. - Set the concave clearance to suit the crop. - Add disawner plates if required. - Provide for even crop feed to the threshing parts. - Correct basic adjustment of concave. - Have damaged or worn threshing drum repaired
Grain losses over the straw walkers	- Adjust tension of the belt driving the intensive separation system. - Adjust tension of the belt driving the straw walkers. - Ensure even feeding of threshing parts (front attachment). - Clean concave and space behind it. - Avoid excessive returns by correct adjustment of cleaning unit. - Clean dirty straw walkers and under-walker return floor. - Reduce drum speed and reduce concave-to-drum clearance. - Reduce ground travel speed. - Provide correct position of deflector curtain above straw walkers. - Have deflector curtain above the straw walkers replaced.
Grain losses over the cleaning stage	- Avoid excessive matting. - Adapt air blast to meet crop conditions. - Adjust wind boards to correct position. - Decrease drum speed when short straw overloads the sieve pan. - Check fan variable-speed pulleys for smooth operation. - Standard cleaning system: Adjust returns passthrough area of upper frogmouth sieve wider open. - Adjust frogmouth sieve gaps wider open and increase air blast. - Avoid excessive returns. - Clean upper sieve, lower sieve and preparation floor. - Reduce ground travel speed.

12.9.2 Installing the grain tank unloading shear bolt

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Trouble and remedy" chapter. 

The shear bolt (1) in the sprocket protects the grain tank unloading drives against damage.



19661

2

	Shear bolt (1)
1	Hex. bolt ISO 4014 M8 x 35 -8.8 Self-locking nut ISO 7042 VM 8 -8

- Eliminate cause of the problem.
- If required install new shear bolt.

Tightening torque = 24.5 Nm

13 Maintenance

13.1 General Information

85074

13.1.1 General warnings Maintenance

In the following sections of this chapter, a procedure instruction refers to the following general warnings.



Danger!

Always stop the engine before carrying out any work on the machine.

Moving machine parts and / or unexpected machine movement.

Death or serious injury.

- Diesel engine OFF.
- Apply parking brake.
- Remove the ignition key.
- Remove key of battery isolating switch.
- Wait for machine parts which run on have come to a complete halt.
- Secure machine by wheel chocks.
- Ensure that the machine cannot be started by any third persons.



Danger!

The front attachment, reel and feeder unit may drop uncontrolled.

Death or serious injuries!

- Apply safety locks.
- Keep a safe distance from the hazard area.

67089

13.2 General Information

11089

13.2.1 Front attachment

**Danger!**

The front attachment, reel and feeder unit may drop uncontrolled.

Death or serious injuries!

- Apply safety locks.
- Keep a safe distance from the hazard area.

7791

13.2.2 Cleaning the engine compartment and hazard areas

- Clean the engine area and above all the exhaust system as well as the areas around the brakes, gearbox and similar components thoroughly in order to avoid fire hazards.
- When working in very dry crop and very dusty conditions, check the spots mentioned above for dirt accumulations more frequently and clean them if necessary.

7466

13.2.3 Belts

- Keep all belts well-tensioned at all times.
- Belts soiled with oil can be cleaned with cleaning lye. Do not use gasoline or similar products.
- After installing a new belt, check tension after the first 2 to 3 working hours and adjust if necessary.

7467

13.2.4 Variable-speed drives

- Whenever the variable-speed pulleys have been greased, operate the pulleys a few times to ensure even spreading of grease on sliding parts.
- Remove any accumulations of dust from between the variable speed pulley halves to make sure the pulleys can be run through their full speed range.

7468

13.2.5 Bolts

- Check all bolts for a tight seat and retighten if necessary (especially all nuts on the chassis and on the steering system).

11103

13.2.6 Lubrication

- Observe the specified oil change intervals and oil grades in the hydraulic system and in the gearboxes.
- Use only the specified grease for greasing the machine.
- Before greasing, remove the dirt on the grease nipple.

- Grease machine regularly according to the lubrication chart. 



Environment!

Lubricants and fuels end up in the environment.

Environmental pollution.

- Lubricants and fuels must be collected and stored in suitable containers and disposed of in a way that is harmless to the environment and in accordance with existing anti-pollution regulations.



Warning!

Contact with hot liquids or machine parts.

Danger of burns

- Wear suitable protective clothing.
- Let liquids or machine parts cool down.
- Comply with instructions.



WARNING:

Cleaning of central lubrication system with unsuitable agents.

Damage to the system.

- Clean system with white spirit or kerosine exclusively.
- Do **not** use trichloroethene (TRI), tetrachloroethene (PER) or similar solvents or alcohol, methanol, acetone or similar substances for cleaning the system.

32862

13.2.7 Cleanliness of lubricants



Caution!

Machine operation with unpermitted or polluted lubricants.

Machine damage.

- Ensure a clean environment.
- Use suitable and clean tools.
- Use permitted lubricants. 
- Lubricants must be free of pollution.



Warning!

Operation of the machine with contaminated lubricants.

Machine damage.

- Make sure surroundings are clean.

13.2.8 Brakes

**Danger!**

Insufficient brake system maintenance.

Death or serious injuries!

- Inspect the brake system thoroughly at regular intervals.
- Adjustment, repairs and service work on the brake system may be performed only by authorised specialist workshops.
- Check the level of the brake fluid at regular intervals.

Only use the recommended type of brake fluid and change the brake fluid as specified. 

**Warning!**

Contact with hot liquids or machine parts.

Danger of burns

- Wear suitable protective clothing.
- Let liquids or machine parts cool down.
- Comply with instructions.

**Warning!**

Incorrect handling of brake fluid.

Medium-grade injuries.

- Observe the details regarding brake fluid use provided on the container. 
- Wear safety gloves.
- Collect brake fluid in a suitable container.
- Dispose of brake fluid in accordance with existing environmental regulations!

11114

13.2.9 Wheels / tyres

**Warning!**

If tyre pressures exceed the specified values, the tyres may explode.

Danger of injury

- Never stand in the vicinity of the tyre while it is being inflated. Always stand clear!
- Regularly check the pressure of the tyres.
- The specified tyre pressure must be respected. 

- Check if wheel nuts / wheel bolts are tightly seated every time after fitting a wheel and after the specified maintenance interval or tighten them. 
- Retighten the track adjustment elements in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions
- The tyres must only be ballasted to the extent that the specified tyre pressures can be maintained. 
- Keep oil and grease away from tyres.
- Check tyres for damage regularly on the inside as well.
- Do not clean tyres by applying a steam cleaner directly.

13.2.10 Hydraulic system



Danger!

Work on the hydraulic system.

Death or serious injury

- Relieve the hydraulic pressure before working on the system.



Danger!

Dealing incorrectly with injuries due to hydraulic fluids.

Death or serious injury.

Even a pinhole can result in severe injuries.

- If hydraulic fluid gets in the skin or eyes, have the injury treated by a medical specialist immediately.



Danger!

Pre-loaded energy accumulators (spring, accumulator, hydraulic cylinder).

Death or serious injury.

- Only have authorised and qualified workshops carry out work on energy accumulators.

**Danger!**

Liquids under high pressure.

Liquids penetrate the skin and cause serious injury.

- Only have authorised and qualified workshops carry out work on the hydraulic system.
- Check hose lines at regular intervals. Search for leaks using a piece of wood or cardboard. Ensure that the oil jet will not be directed towards your body.
- Replace any damaged hose lines.
- Replace hose lines 6 years after the date of manufacture at the latest.

11200

13.2.11 Electrical system**WARNING:**

Work on the electrical system.

Machine damage.

- Before starting work, disconnect the cable from the negative terminal first and then from the positive terminal of the battery.
- When work is complete, first connect the positive terminal and then the negative terminal to the battery.
- Always disconnect the cables from the alternator and battery before performing electrical welding work on the machine and the front attachment.

**Danger!**

Incorrect handling of batteries.

Death or serious injury.

- Be careful with battery gases, they are highly explosive.
- Avoid sparks and naked flames in the vicinity of a battery!
- Remove the covers (vent caps) when recharging the battery to prevent the accumulation of highly explosive gases.
- Be careful when handling battery acids, they are caustic.



WARNING:

Use of fuses that are too strong.
Damage to the electric system.

- Only use original fuses.



Environment!

Handling of used batteries.
Environmental pollution.

- Dispose of old batteries in a way that is harmless to the environment and in accordance with existing anti-pollution regulations.



WARNING:

Incorrect handling of alternators.
Alternator damage.

- Do not turn off the battery isolating switch while the engine is running.
- Never disconnect the cable between the alternator and the battery while the alternator is running.
- Never carry out a voltage test in a cable on a metal object against ground.
- Immediately replace defective lamps of the battery display.

11205

13.2.12 Air conditioner



Danger!

Refrigerant.
Death or serious injury.

- Only have authorised and qualified workshops carry out work on air conditioning systems.
- Never get in contact with refrigerants!
- Wear safety gloves and safety goggles.
- Do not weld any components of the refrigerant circuit and or in the immediate vicinity of any parts of the refrigerant circuit.
- Maximum ambient temperature for refrigerant is 80 °C.

**Environment!**

Lubricants and fuels end up in the environment.

Environmental pollution.

- Lubricants and fuels must be collected and stored in suitable containers and disposed of in a way that is harmless to the environment and in accordance with existing anti-pollution regulations.

**Environment!**

Incorrect handling of refrigerant.

Refrigerants pollute the environment if vented to the atmosphere.

- Take particular care when working on the air conditioner.
- Refrigerant must always be discharged by use of the correct recovery equipment prior to the repair work to prevent it from venting to the atmosphere.

11207

13.2.13 Protective guards**Danger!**

Missing or damaged safety devices.

Death or serious injury.

- Fit safety devices before putting the machine into operation.
- Check function of safety devices at regular intervals.
- Replace worn or damaged safety devices by new ones.

11209

13.2.14 Spare parts**Danger!**

Use of unauthorised spare parts.

Death or serious injury.

- Spare parts must at least comply with the technical standards required by the manufacturer of the implement!
- We recommend using genuine CLAAS spare parts.

13.2.15 Unbalance



Caution!

Uneven running of machine parts.

Machine damage and excessive wear.

- Remove dirt accumulations in rotating machine parts regularly and thoroughly.

85487

13.2.16 Welding work on combine harvester



WARNING:

Overvoltage may occur during all electric welding work on the machine.

Electronic unit damage.

- Carry out all work steps below.
- Connect the earth clamp of the welder in the near vicinity of the area where the welding is being carried out.

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter.
- Disconnect the battery isolating switch.
- Disconnect the electrical connectors between the engine wiring harness and the main wiring harness.
- Remove the electronic plug-in modules from the central terminal compartment.
- Disconnect radio and CB radio.
- Disconnect all cable connections (1) from the alternator.
- **Always** connect the ground clamp of the welders **in the immediate vicinity** of the welding point.

5768

13.2.17 Putting the machine out of action

Before work is carried out on the machine, perform the following steps:

- Stop the diesel engine.
- Apply parking brake.
- Remove the ignition key.
- Remove key of battery isolating switch.
- Wait for machine parts which run on have come to a complete halt.
- Secure machine by wheel chocks.
- Ensure that the machine cannot be started by any third persons.

13.2.18 Cleaning of surfaces with decals applied

**Caution!**

Cleaning areas where adhesives have been applied with a high-pressure jet cleaner.

The decals will be damaged.

- Avoid cleaning with a high-pressure jet cleaner.
- Clean such areas with a high-pressure jet cleaner only from a sufficient distance.
- Set the water pressure and the water temperature as low as possible.
- Do not stress decals mechanically when cleaning.
- Replace damaged and illegible decals (hazard warning signs / safety decals / lettering) immediately.

38041

13.2.19 Winter storage instructions for combines

Winter storage of the machine after the harvest is necessary in order to protect the capital invested into the machine. Thorough and conscientious maintenance and cleaning and the replacement of worn or damaged parts at this point will save time and money when the machine is required for operation again.

**WARNING:**

Cleaning of front attachment / machine with water.

Material damage by corrosion.

- Avoid cleaning with water.
 - Before and after cleaning with water grease all grease points.
After that, let the front attachment/machine run for some minutes.
 - Do not clean hollow spaces and cable leadthroughs with water.
-
- Clean the machine thoroughly inside, particularly the threshing drum, concave, the space behind the drum, the preparation floor, return floors, straw walkers and above the cleaning fan.
 - Open the elevator covers and auger troughs.
 - Clean the exterior of all bearings thoroughly of grease and dust.
 - Preserve the machine including the grease points to be greased at annual intervals after the harvest by pressing in brand-name grease.

To achieve even grease distribution, let the machine run briefly after greasing until a small grease edge has formed at the outside of the bearings.

Before and after cleaning the machine with a high-pressure jet cleaner, the bearings must be greased!

- With the combine still running, operate the variable-speed drives to distribute the grease evenly between the sliding parts.

Coat the inner flanks of the variable speed pulleys with corrosion inhibitor as far as possible.

Remove preservation before putting the machine into operation the next time!

- Seal off peripheries of slip clutches with paint to keep moisture out and to keep friction faces from rusting.
- Grease all polished parts such as finger bars and crop lifters.
- Carry out all maintenance work according to the specified intervals.
- Check machine prior to cleaning.
Have repairs carried out if necessary.
- Store the machine in a dry, weatherproof shed where no fertilisers are stored!
- Lower the front attachment to the ground or remove it in order to relieve the hydraulic system.
- Jack up the machine so that the full weight is not resting on the wheels.
- Check the coolant antifreeze content.
- Charge the battery and recharge every six weeks or leave it with a battery service point to take care of.

12884

13.2.20 Coolant

The engine cooling system has been filled with a mixture of corrosion / frost protection and water at the factory.

The coolant consists of 50% corrosion / frost protection and 50% water.

This ensures frost protection down to approx. -37 °C. Also refer to the specifications of the engine manufacturer.

13.3 Maintenance schedule**13.3.1 Service intervals**

- You can find detailed information on maintenance work below in this chapter. 

Maintenance operations		Service intervals in working hours										
		Before the harvest	After the first		Daily	Every			Once a year or every 500	every 2 years	As required	After the harvest
			10	100		50	100	250				
General maintenance												
Cross off all points according to the greasing cycles	grease										•	
Engine												
Diesel engine surroundings	clean				•						•	
Fuel tank fuel	drain										•	
Fuel tank (machine)	fill up				•						•	
Filler neck filter	clean										•	
Fuel system	bleed										•	
Fuel sediment bowl filter	clean								•		•	
Condensation at the fuel prefilter (standard equipment)	drain								•		•	•
Fuel prefilter (standard equipment)	change								•		•	
Condensation at the fuel prefilter (additional equipment)	drain								•		•	•
Fuel prefilter (additional equipment)	change								•		•	
Fuel filter CATERPILLAR C-6.6 / 3056 E	change								•		•	
Fuel filter PERKINS 1006-6T	change								•		•	
Diesel engine Oil level	check				•							
Diesel engine Oil / oil filter C-6.6	change								•			
Diesel engine Oil / oil filter CATERPILLAR 3056 E PERKINS 1006-6T	change							•				
Diesel engine valves	adjust				(Refer to engine manufacturer's operator's manual)							
Radiator coolant level	check				•						•	
Radiator coolant	change				Every 5 years							
Coolant mixing ratio	check										•	•
Rotary chaff screen	clean				•						•	
Cooling unit	clean				•						•	
Coolant hoses	change									•		
Diesel engine air filter	clean				•						•	

Maintenance operations		Service intervals in working hours										
		Before the harvest	After the first		Daily	Every			Once a year or every 500	every 2 years	As required	After the harvest
			10	100		50	100	250				
Diesel engine air filter	change								•		•	
Diesel engine air filter safety cartridge	change				(or after servicing the main filter cartridge five times)					•	•	
air filter intake sieve	clean				•						•	
Air intake pipes	change									•		
Clamps on air suction hoses	retighten		•									
Chassis												
Wheel nuts of drive axle tyres, tightening torque	check		•**		•*	*immediately after installation. *after the first working hour **during the first 50 working hours: every 10 working hours						
Wheel nuts / wheel bolts of rear axle tyres tightening torque	check		•	•	•*	*immediately after installation.						
Gearbox drive axle surroundings	clean				•						•	
Final drives Oil level	check	•									•	
Final drives Oil	change			•					•			
Rear axle gearbox Oil level	check	•									•	
Rear axle gearbox Oil	change			•					•			
Adjusting the chassis clutch DOMINATOR 130	adjust										•	
Adjusting the short-circuit valve DOMINATOR 130	adjust										•	
Brake												
Brake fluid level	check	•				•					•	
Brake fluid	change				(only through authorised workshop)					•		
Parking brake	adjust				(only through authorised workshop)						•	
Foot brake	adjust				(only through authorised workshop)						•	
Brake pads	check	•				•					•	
Output / drives												
Belts (all)	adjust			•					•		•	
Chains (all)	adjust			•					•		•	

Maintenance operations		Service intervals in working hours										
		Before the harvest	After the first		Daily	Every			Once a year or every 500	every 2 years	As required	After the harvest
			10	100		50	100	250				
Hydraulic system												
Hydraulic system Oil level	check	•			•						•	
Hydraulic system Oil / oil filter / Fresh air filter element	change								•			
Electrical / electronic equipment												
Battery acid level	check	•									•	
Cab / operator's platform												
Cab air filter	clean				•							
Cab air filter	change								•		•	
Cab recirculation air filter	clean	•									•	
Cab roof-mounted units	clean								•		•	
Air conditioner	put into operation	•										
Air conditioner refrigerant moisture saturation	check								•		•	
Air conditioner refrigerant	change				(only through authorised workshop)					•	•	
Intake												
Feed rake conveyor retainers	clean								•			
Feeder chains	adjust					•					•	
Slip clutch feeder chain	adjust	•										
Rasp plate on feed rake conveyor	check	•										
Threshing mechanism												
Concave	adjust			•							•	
Threshing mechanism	clean										•	
Stone trap	clean				•						•	
Separation												
Straw walker	clean										•	
Deflector curtain	check										•	
Performance monitor sensors	clean				•						•	
Cleaning unit												
Performance monitor sensors	clean				•						•	
Fan	clean										•	
Setting the fan speed gauge											•	
Stepped preparation floors	clean										•	
Sieves	clean										•	

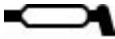
Maintenance operations		Service intervals in working hours										
		Before the harvest	After the first		Daily	Every			Once a year or every 500	every 2 years	As required	After the harvest
			10	100		50	100	250				
Crop receptacle / straw receptacle												
Grain delivery												
Returns elevator chain	adjust					•					•	
Grain elevator chain	adjust					•					•	
Auger troughs	clean										•	
Grain tank	clean										•	
Grain tank unloading tube support transport position	adjust										•	
Attachment parts / machine components												
Fire extinguisher	check									•	•	
Miscellaneous												
Maintenance operations on front attachments	Note										•	

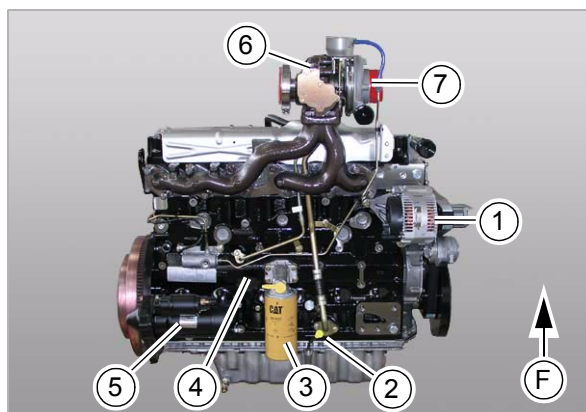
13.4 Lubricants chart**13.4.1 Lubricants**

Component	Capacity	Type of lubricant / Specification	Viscosity class / SAE class	Remark
Engine				
CATERPILLAR C6.6 exhaust gas category 3a	around 14.5 litres*	CLAAS AGRIMOT SDX 15W-40 (mineral) API CI-4/SL MB 228.3	15W-40	Check oil level at dipstick
CATERPILLAR 3056E exhaust gas category 2	around 14 litres*	CLAAS AGRIMOT SDX 15W-40 (mineral) API CH-4 MB 228.3	15W-40	Check oil level at dipstick
Perkins 1006-T6 exhaust gas category 0	around 14 litres*	CLAAS AGRIMOT SDX 15W-40 (mineral) API CH-4 MB 228.3	15W-40	Check oil level at dipstick
Cooling system** CATERPILLAR C6.6 CATERPILLAR 3056 E	around 30 litres*	CLAAS AGRI-COOL radiator protective agent See also the Operator's Manual of the engine manufacturer MB sheet 325.3		Check for sufficient antifreeze protection before winter storage
Cooling system** Perkins 1006-T6	around 33 litres*	CLAAS AGRI-COOL radiator protective agent See also the Operator's Manual of the engine manufacturer MB sheet 325.3		Check for sufficient antifreeze protection before winter storage
** The coolants of MB sheet 325.0 and MB sheet 325.2 can be mixed. ** The coolants of MB sheet 325.3 and CAT EC-1 can be mixed. ** The coolants of MB sheet 325.0 and MB sheet 325.2 must not be mixed with the coolants of MB sheet 325.3 and CAT EC-1. ** Mixing with commercially available coolant is not allowed. ** Use only specified coolant for refilling.				
* Check the necessary filling quantity by checking the oil level! 				

Component	Capacity	Type of lubricant / Specification	Viscosity class / SAE class	Remark
Chassis				
Manual gearbox	around 6.8 litres*	CLAAS AGRISHIFT MT 80W-90 (total driveline) API GL5 MIL: 2105 B	85W-90	Check oil level on oil level check plug
Final drives	around 3.0 litres each*	CLAAS AGRISHIFT MT 80W-90 (total driveline) API GL5 MIL: 2105 B	85W-90	Check oil level on oil level check plug
Brake				
Foot brake	Compensating tank filled	ATE brake fluid	DOT 4	Check liquid level on compensating tank
Hydraulic system				
DOMINATOR 150 / 140 hydraulic system	around 20 litres*	CLAAS AGRIHYD HVLPD 46 (detergent multigrade) **	HVLP Part 3 ISO-VG 46	Check oil level at dipstick
DOMINATOR 130 hydraulic system	around 6 litres*	CLAAS AGRIHYD HVLPD 46 (detergent multigrade) **	HVLP Part 3 ISO-VG 46	Check oil level at dipstick
** When selecting the hydraulic oil, the following conditions need to be met: Density at 15 °C 0.874 g/cm ³ (DIN 51 757) Viscosity 40 °C 46.8 mm ² /s (DIN 51 562) Viscosity 100 °C 8.30 mm ² /s (DIN 51 562) Viscosity index 154 (DIN ISO 2909) Pourpoint -36 °C (DIN ISO 3016) The oil must have detergent properties!				
* Check the necessary filling quantity by checking the oil level! 				

Component	Capacity	Type of lubricant / Specification	Viscosity class / SAE class	Remark
Cab / operator's platform				
Sanden compressor SD 7 H 15	0.3 litres	Sanden refrigerant oil SP 20 PAG Part no. 00 0241 752 0, 0.04 litres Part no. 00 0241 755 0, 0.25 litres		in case of completely new system
Condenser	0.02 litres			in case of replacement
per hose line	0.02 litres			in case of replacement
Evaporator	0.04 litres			in case of replacement
Filter receiver drier	0.01 litres			in case of replacement
Refrigerant loss suddenly drained system	0.02 litres 0.04 litres			
Refrigerant	1500 g	R 134a		
York compressor	0.3 litres	Ester refrigerant oil		in case of completely new system
Condenser	0.02 litres			in case of replacement
per hose line	0.02 litres			in case of replacement
Evaporator	0.04 litres			in case of replacement
Filter receiver drier	0.01 litres			in case of replacement
Refrigerant loss suddenly drained system	0.02 litres 0.04 litres			
Refrigerant	1390 g	R 134a		
* Check the necessary filling quantity by checking the oil level! 				

Component	Capacity	Type of lubricant / Specification	Viscosity class / SAE class	Remark
Threshing mechanism				
Lubrication points				
Grease nipples 	See lubrication chart	CLAAS AGRIGREASE EP 2	EP 2 Grease DIN 51502	400 g cartridge Part no.: 00 0147 437 0
Cleaning the feed rake conveyor retainers		Solid grease, for example: MOLYKOTE G-n plus		50g tube Part no.: 00 0177 571 0
Lubrication points 	See lubrication chart	CLAAS special chain oil		Spray can 500 ml Part no.: 00 0177 353 3
* Check the necessary filling quantity by checking the oil level! 				

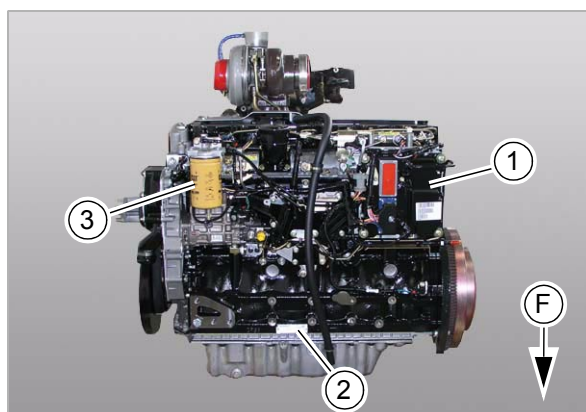
13.5 Engine**13.5.1 Overview of engine
CATERPILLAR C-6.6**

27295

1

	Designation
1	Alternator
2	Oil level dipstick
3	Oil filter
4	Oil filler neck
5	Starter
6	Turbocharger
7	Charge air blower
F	Direction of travel

- Observe the information provided in the operator's manual of the engine manufacturer.

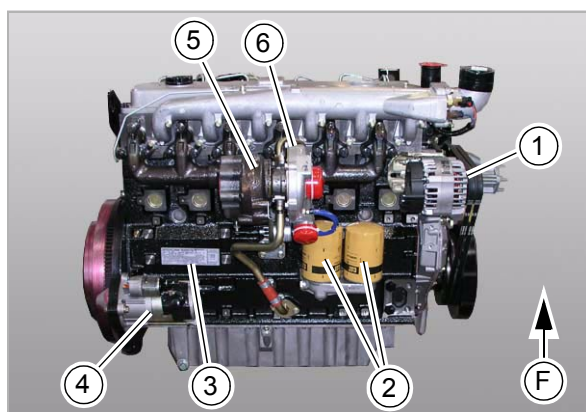


27296

2

	Designation
1	Engine control module
2	Engine number
3	Fuel filter
F	Direction of travel

- Observe the information provided in the operator's manual of the engine manufacturer.

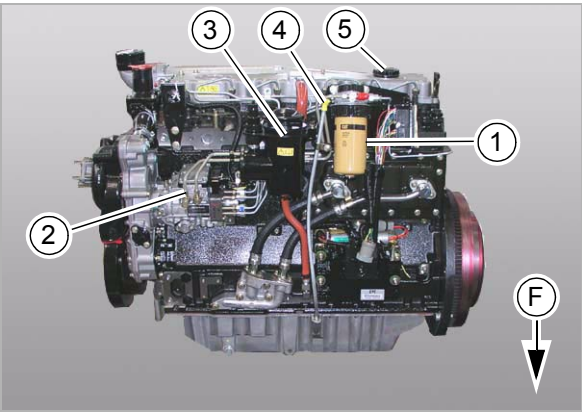


29342

3**13.5.2 Overview of engine
CATERPILLAR 3056 E**

	Designation
1	Alternator
2	Oil filter
3	Engine number
4	Starter
5	Charge air blower
6	Turbocharger

- Observe the information provided in the operator's manual of the engine manufacturer.



	Designation
1	Fuel filter
2	Fuel injection pump
3	Bleeder filter
4	Oil level dipstick
5	Oil filler neck
F	Direction of travel

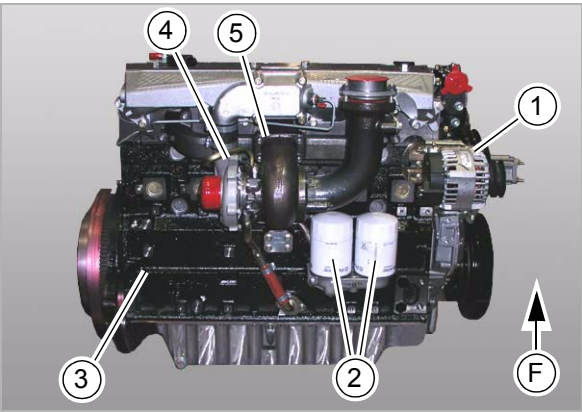
- 4 – Observe the information provided in the operator's manual of the engine manufacturer.

85502

13.5.3 Overview of engine PERKINS 1006-6T

	Designation
1	Alternator
2	Oil filter
3	Starter
4	Charge air blower
5	Turbocharger

- 5 – Observe the information provided in the operator's manual of the engine manufacturer.



	Designation
1	Fuel filter
2	Engine number
3	Fuel injection pump
4	Oil level dipstick
5	Oil filler neck
F	Direction of travel

- 6 – Observe the information provided in the operator's manual of the engine manufacturer.

85730

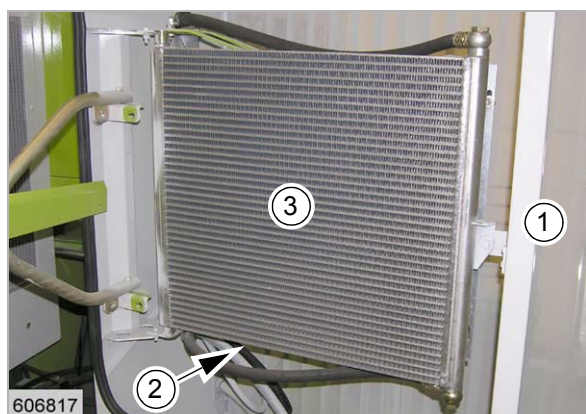
13.5.4 Overview of cooling units

Danger!

Insufficient specialist knowledge for repair and maintenance work.

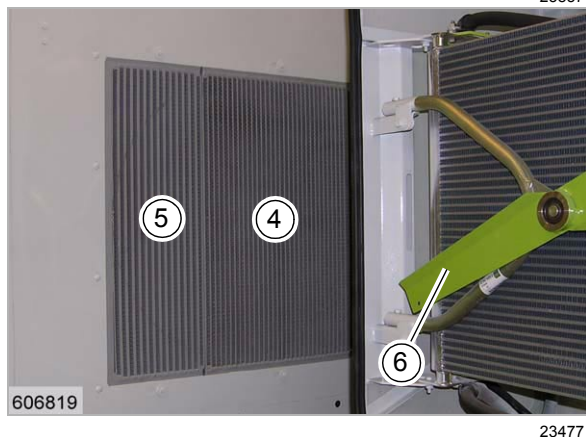
Death or serious injury.

- Only have authorised and qualified work-shops carry out work on this component.



7

	Designation
1	Rotary chaff screen
2	Condenser
3	Oil cooler
4	Radiator
5	Charge air cooler
6	Cleaning rotor

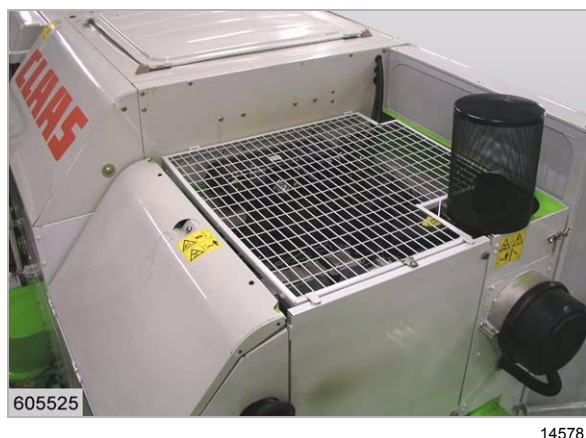


8

13.5.5 Cleaning the diesel engine surroundings

85744

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 👁
- Clean the surroundings of the diesel engine, the exhaust system and the engine output on the machine.



9

13.5.6 Draining fuel from the fuel tank

86078

In case of severe and frequent fouling of the fuel prefilters, the accumulated condensation and dirt in the tank can be drained off.

- Reduce the fuel tank capacity to a minimum.
- Park the machine on level ground.
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 👁



Warning!

Swallowing of fuels.

Poisoning hazard.

- When swallowing fuel, consult a doctor immediately.
- Keep fuels outside of the reach of children.

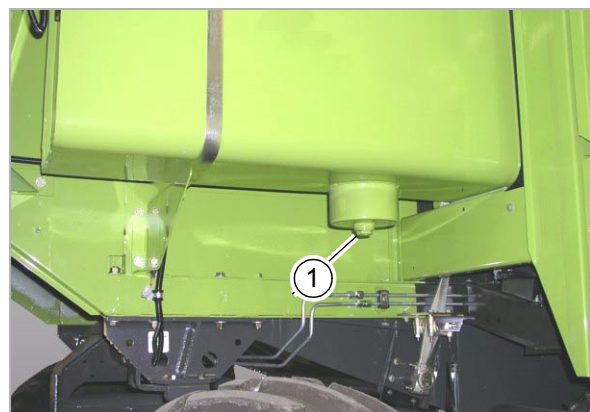


Environment!

Lubricants and fuels end up in the environment.

Environmental pollution.

- Lubricants and fuels must be collected and stored in suitable containers and disposed of in a way that is harmless to the environment and in accordance with existing anti-pollution regulations.



29515

10

- Unscrew bolt (1, size 10).
- Collect fuel in a suitable container.
- Screw in bolt (1, size 10).

Tightening torque = 4 Nm

13.5.7 Fill up the machine's fuel tank

Fill the fuel tank of the machine immediately after finishing work in order to avoid the condensation of water in the tank.

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 👁

**Warning!**

Swallowing of fuels.

Poisoning hazard.

- When swallowing fuel, consult a doctor immediately.
- Keep fuels outside of the reach of children.

**Danger!**

Fire hazard / explosion hazard when handling fuel.

Death or serious injuries!

- Avoid fire, naked flames, smoke and spark formation.
- Wipe up all fuel that has been dropped or splashed.
- Never mix diesel fuel with petrol.

**Caution**

Formation of condensate in the fuel tank

Damage to the diesel engine.

- Always fill up the tank of the vehicle directly after it has been used for work.

- Stop the diesel engine. 👁
- Unscrew cover (1).
- Clean screen in filler neck.

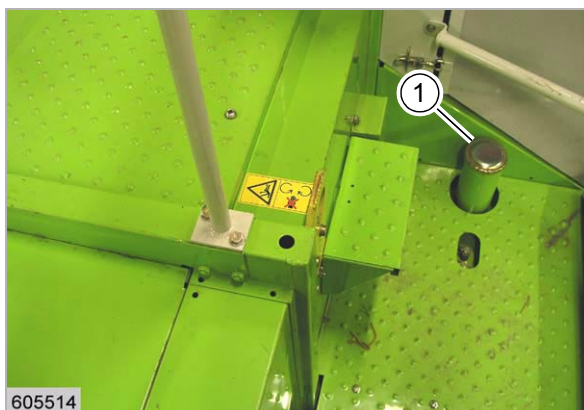
Replace damaged sieves!

**WARNING:**

Use of unpermitted or dirty fuels.

Damage to diesel engine.

- Use only permitted fuels. 👁
- Do not use polluted fuels.
- Ensure that no water will get into the fuel tank when filling up.



605514

14571

11



Environment!

Lubricants and fuels end up in the environment.

Environmental pollution.

- Lubricants and fuels must be collected and stored in suitable containers and disposed of in a way that is harmless to the environment and in accordance with existing anti-pollution regulations.

- Use clean fuel.
Observe max. fuel tank capacity.
- Clean fuel sieve if necessary.
- Screw on the cap (1) and check that it is tight.

85746

13.5.8 Cleaning the fuel tank filler screen

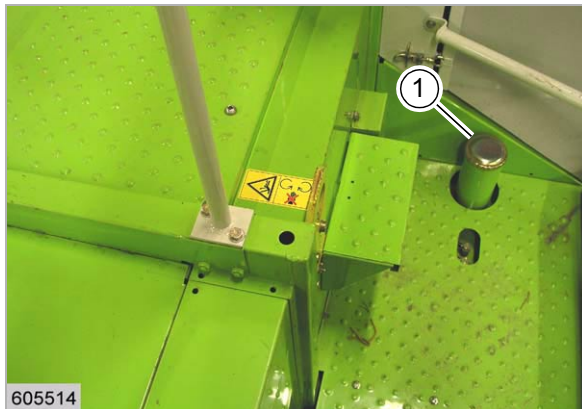
The fuel tank has a sieve in the filler neck.

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter.
- Unscrew cover (1).
- Remove the sieve and clean.

Replace damaged sieve!

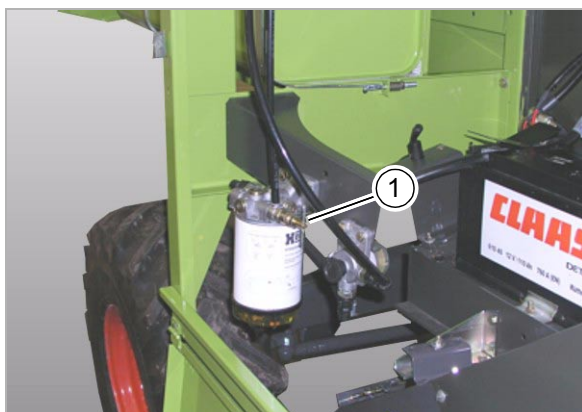
Install sieve.

- Bolt on cover (1).



12

14571



13

29516

86176

13.5.9 Closing / opening the fuel system shut-off tap

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter.



Environment!

Lubricants and fuels end up in the environment.

Environmental pollution.

- Lubricants and fuels must be collected and stored in suitable containers and disposed of in a way that is harmless to the environment and in accordance with existing anti-pollution regulations.

When opening the fuel system (changing or cleaning the filter), always close the shut-off tap (1). Unnecessary escape of fuel is thus avoided. When work is complete, open the shut-off tap (1) again.

- Close shut-off tap (1).
 - To do this, turn in the shut-off tap (1).
- Open shut-off tap (1).

- To do this, turn out the shut-off tap (1).

13.5.10 Bleed fuel system

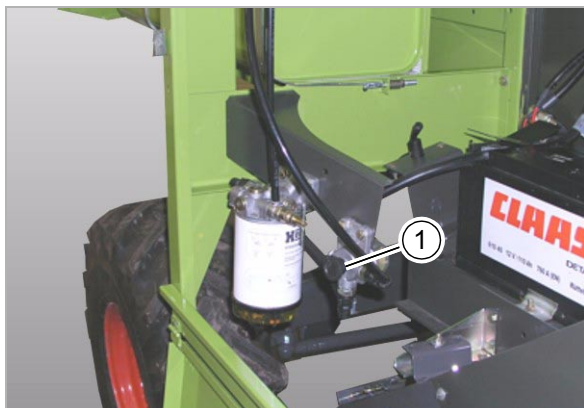
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 
- Observe the information provided in the operator's manual of the engine manufacturer. 

Venting the fuel system (hand pump)

- Slacken off bolt of (1) by turning it anti-clockwise.
- Actuate pump by pumping movements at bolt (1).

The system is vented when the pump resistance is noticeably increased.

- Turn in screw (1).



Standard equipment

29516

14



Accessory

29517

15



Standard equipment

23409

16

Venting the fuel system (electric pump)

- Turn on the ignition – **Do not start the diesel engine.**

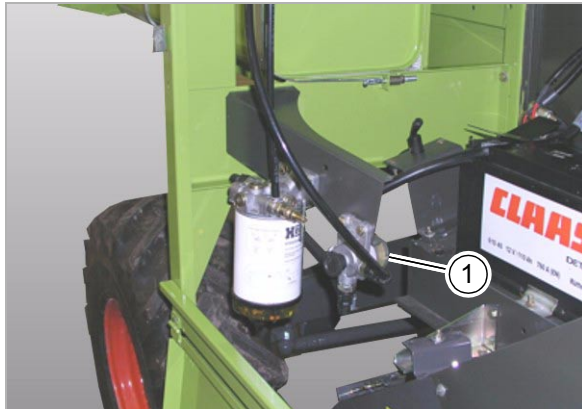
With the ignition turned on, the fuel feed pump (1) is ON and vents the fuel system automatically.

- Switch off the ignition again after some minutes or start the diesel engine.

13.5.11 Cleaning the fuel sediment bowl filter

The fuel sediment bowl cleans the fuel before it enters the fuel feed pump.

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 



Standard equipment

29516

17



Accessory

29517

18



Environment!

Lubricants and fuels end up in the environment.

Environmental pollution.

- Lubricants and fuels must be collected and stored in suitable containers and disposed of in a way that is harmless to the environment and in accordance with existing anti-pollution regulations.

- Close the shut-off tap of the fuel system. 👁
- Unscrew the filter pot (1) and remove the filter element.
- Wash the filter element and sight glass in diesel fuel and blow out with compressed air.



WARNING:

Use of unpermissible spare parts or lubricants.

Machine damage or increased wear.

- Spare parts and lubricants must at least comply with the technical standards required by the manufacturer of the implement!
- The use of genuine CLAAS spare parts and lubricants is recommended.

- Insert filter element and fit filter pot (1).

Make sure the seal is properly fitted!

Replace damaged seals!

- Open the shut-off tap of the fuel system. 👁
- Bleed fuel system. 👁

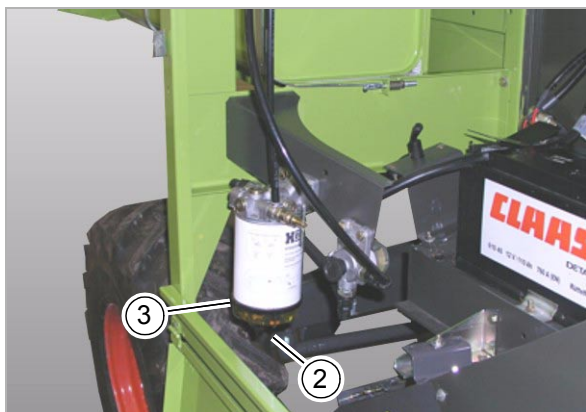
86100

13.5.12 Draining condensation at the fuel pre-filter (standard equipment)

The fuel pre-filter is accessible after opening the right-hand side panel.

Any water contained in the fuel is collected in the sight glass.

- As soon as the drain plug (2) has been loosened, drain the accumulated amount of water and collect it in a container.
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 👁



29516

19

Environment!

Lubricants and fuels end up in the environment.

Environmental pollution.

- Lubricants and fuels must be collected and stored in suitable containers and disposed of in a way that is harmless to the environment and in accordance with existing anti-pollution regulations.

- Fill up the machine.
- Drain condensed water.
 - Connect the hose to the bolt (2).
 - Hold a suitable container for the condensation collected in the sight glass (3) beneath the hose.
 - Loosen bolt (2).
 - Collect escaping liquid in a suitable container.
 - Tighten bolt (2).
- Bleed fuel system.

13.5.13 Changing the fuel prefilter (standard equipment)

86107

The fuel pre-filter is accessible after opening the right-hand side panel.

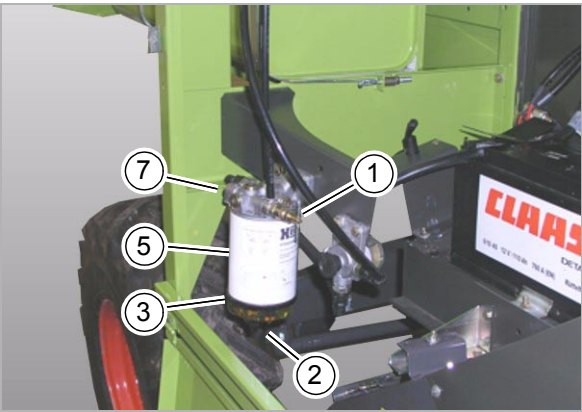
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter.

Environment!

Lubricants and fuels end up in the environment.

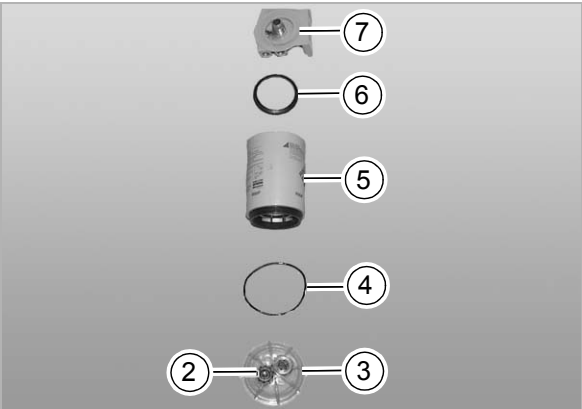
Environmental pollution.

- Lubricants and fuels must be collected and stored in suitable containers and disposed of in a way that is harmless to the environment and in accordance with existing anti-pollution regulations.



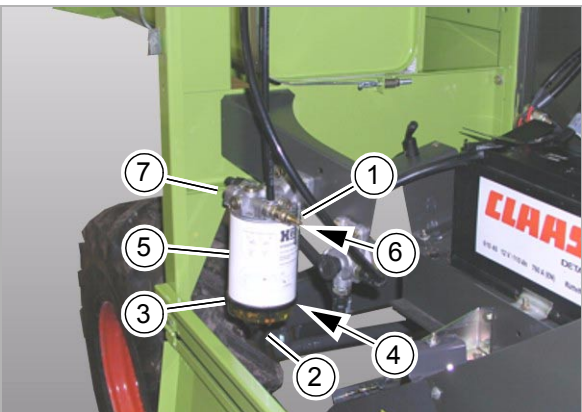
29516

20



13796

21



29516

22

- Drain condensation at the fuel prefilter. 👁
- Close the shut-off tap of the fuel system. 👁
- Drain fuel from filter.
 - Hold a suitable container for the remaining fuel in the sight glass (3) beneath the hose.
 - Loosen bolt (2).
 - Loosen filter (5) by approx. 2 revolutions.
 - Collect escaping liquid in a suitable container.
 - Tighten bolt (2).
- Unscrew filter (5) from the filter head (7).
- Unscrew sight glass (3) from the filter.

	Designation
2	Drain plug
3	Sight glass
4	Seal
5	Filter cartridge
6	Seal
7	Filter head



WARNING:

Use of unpermissible spare parts or lubricants.

Machine damage or increased wear.

- Spare parts and lubricants must at least comply with the technical standards required by the manufacturer of the implement!
- The use of genuine CLAAS spare parts and lubricants is recommended.

- Replace damaged seal (6).
- **Observe installation position of seal!**
- Screw new filter (5) to filter head (7).
- Replace damaged seal (4).
- Screw the sight glass (3) to the filter.
- Tighten bolt (2).
- Open the shut-off tap of the fuel system. 👁
- Bleed fuel system. 👁

13.5.14 Draining condensation at the fuel pre-filter (additional equipment)

The fuel pre-filter is accessible after opening the right-hand side panel.

Any water contained in the fuel is collected in the sight glass.

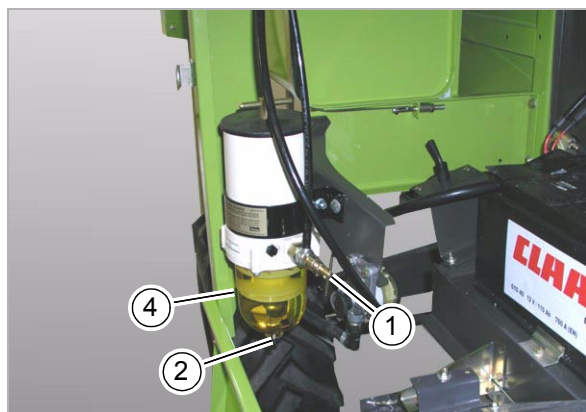
- As soon as the drain plug (2) has been loosened, drain the accumulated amount of water and collect it in a container.
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 

**Environment!**

Lubricants and fuels end up in the environment.

Environmental pollution.

- Lubricants and fuels must be collected and stored in suitable containers and disposed of in a way that is harmless to the environment and in accordance with existing anti-pollution regulations.

**23**

29517

- Fill fuel tank. 
- Drain condensed water.
 - Connect the hose to the bolt (2).
 - Hold a suitable container for the condensation collected in the sight glass (4) beneath the hose.
 - Loosen bolt (2).
 - Collect escaping liquid in a suitable container.
 - Tighten bolt (2).
- Bleed fuel system. 

13.5.15 Changing the fuel pre-filter (accessory)

86114

The fuel pre-filter is accessible after opening the right-hand side panel.

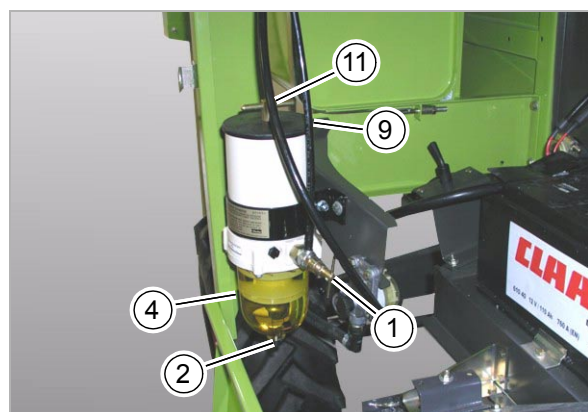
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 

**Environment!**

Lubricants and fuels end up in the environment.

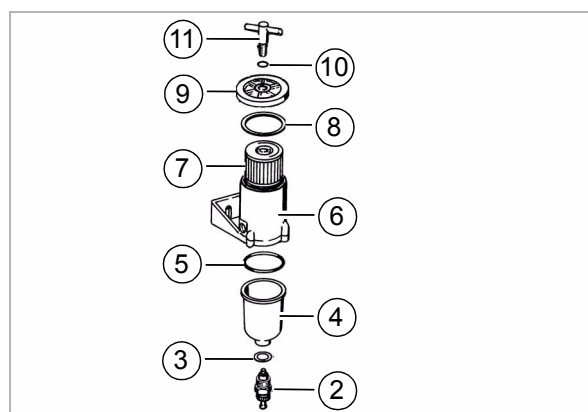
Environmental pollution.

- Lubricants and fuels must be collected and stored in suitable containers and disposed of in a way that is harmless to the environment and in accordance with existing anti-pollution regulations.



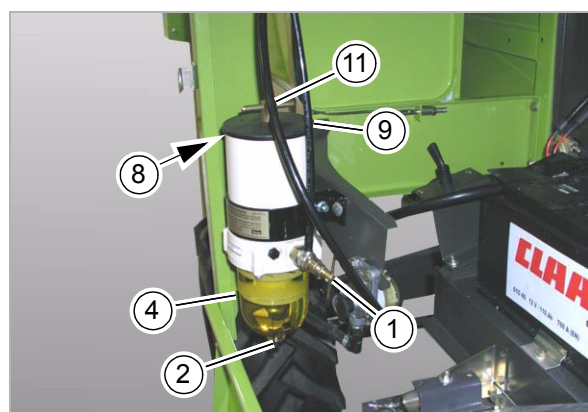
29517

24



13806

25



29517

26

- Drain condensation at the fuel prefilter. 👁
- Close the shut-off tap of the fuel system. 👁
- Drain fuel from filter.
 - Hold a suitable container for the remaining fuel in the sight glass (4) beneath the hose.
 - Loosen bolt (2).
 - Loosen the toggle bolt (11) by approx. 2 revolutions.
 - Collect escaping liquid in a suitable container.
 - Tighten bolt (2).
- Unscrew toggle bolt (11) and remove cover (9).
- Remove filter cartridge (7).

	Designation
2	Drain plug
3	Seal
4	Sight glass
5	Seal
6	Housing
7	Filter cartridge
8	Seal
9	Lid
10	Seal
11	Toggle bolt



WARNING:

Use of unpermissible spare parts or lubricants.

Machine damage or increased wear.

- Spare parts and lubricants must at least comply with the technical standards required by the manufacturer of the implement!
- The use of genuine CLAAS spare parts and lubricants is recommended.

- Replace damaged seal (8).
- **Observe installation position of seal!**
- Install new filter.
- **Press straps of the filter into the housing!**
- Tighten toggle bolt (11).
- Replace damaged seal (3).
- Tighten bolt (2).
- Open the shut-off tap of the fuel system. 👁
- Bleed fuel system. 👁

**13.5.16 Changing the fuel filter
CATERPILLAR C-6.6 / 3056 E**

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 
- Observe the information provided in the operator's manual of the engine manufacturer. 

**Environment!**

Lubricants and fuels end up in the environment.

Environmental pollution.

- Lubricants and fuels must be collected and stored in suitable containers and disposed of in a way that is harmless to the environment and in accordance with existing anti-pollution regulations.

**WARNING:**

Soiling of fuel system.

Machine damage.

- Make sure surroundings are clean.
- Use suitable and clean tools.
- Ensure that no dirt can enter the fuel system.

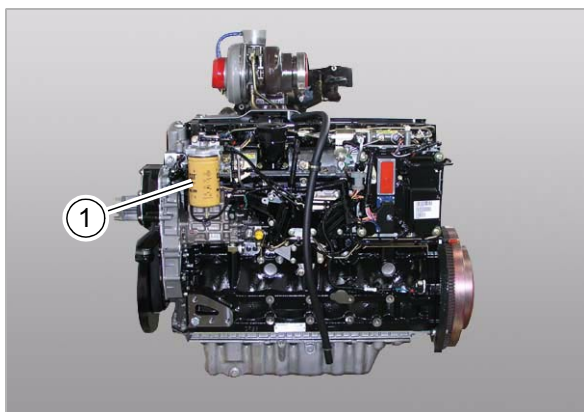
- Close the shut-off tap of the fuel system. 
- Unscrew the filter (1).

**WARNING:**

Use of unpermissible spare parts or lubricants.

Machine damage or increased wear.

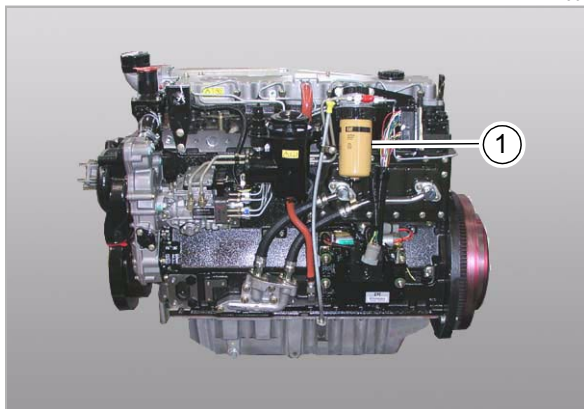
- Spare parts and lubricants must at least comply with the technical standards required by the manufacturer of the implement!
- The use of genuine CLAAS spare parts and lubricants is recommended.



CATERPILLAR C-6.6

27296

27



CATERPILLAR 3056 E

29340

28

- Clean the inside of the filter head.
- Apply some oil to the new seal and screw on new filter (1) until the filter seal touches the filter head. Tighten the filter by hand.
- Open the shut-off tap of the fuel system. 
- Bleed fuel system. 
- Start the diesel engine. 
- Let diesel engine run at min. no-load speed for about 10 seconds.
- Check tightness of fuel filter.

13.5.17 Changing the fuel filter PERKINS 1006-6T

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 
- Observe the information provided in the operator's manual of the engine manufacturer. 



Environment!

Lubricants and fuels end up in the environment.

Environmental pollution.

- Lubricants and fuels must be collected and stored in suitable containers and disposed of in a way that is harmless to the environment and in accordance with existing anti-pollution regulations.



WARNING:

Soiling of fuel system.

Machine damage.

- Make sure surroundings are clean.
 - Use suitable and clean tools.
 - Ensure that no dirt can enter the fuel system.
- Close the shut-off tap of the fuel system. 
 - Drain fuel from filter.
 - Hold a suitable container for the remaining fuel in the sight glass (4) beneath the hose.
 - Slacken off the drain plug.
 - Collect escaping liquid in a suitable container.
 - Tighten drain plug.
 - Unscrew filter (1) with sight glass (4).

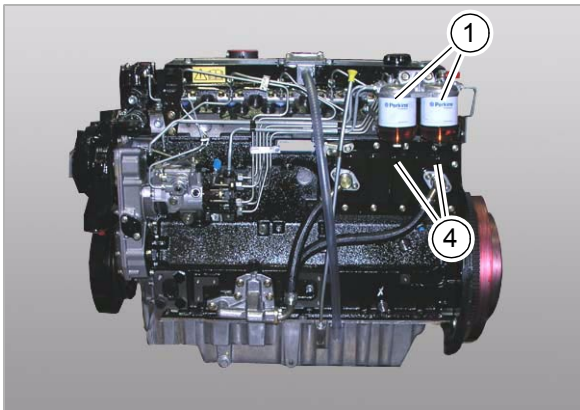


WARNING:

Use of unpermissible spare parts or lubricants.

Machine damage or increased wear.

- Spare parts and lubricants must at least comply with the technical standards required by the manufacturer of the implement!
 - The use of genuine CLAAS spare parts and lubricants is recommended.
- Clean the inside of the filter head.
 - Apply some oil to the new seal and screw new filter (1) with sight glass (4) to the filter head at right angles and centred.
 - Open the shut-off tap of the fuel system. 



29344

29

- Bleed fuel system. 👁
- Start the diesel engine. 👁
Let diesel engine run at min. no-load speed for about 10 seconds.
- Check tightness of fuel filter.

13.5.18 Checking the diesel engine oil level

- Park the machine on level ground.
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 👁
- Observe the information provided in the operator's manual of the engine manufacturer. 📖

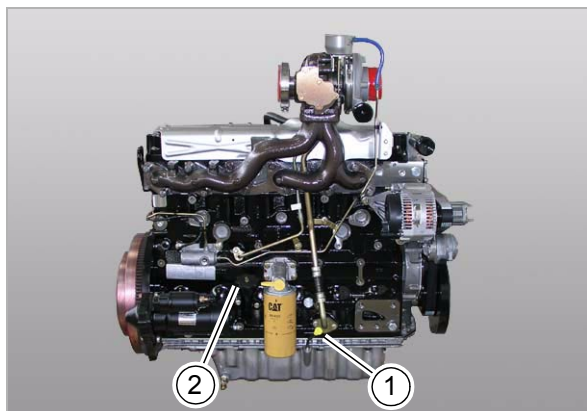


Caution!

Machine operation with unpermitted or polluted lubricants.

Machine damage.

- Ensure a clean environment.
- Use suitable and clean tools.
- Use permitted lubricants. 👁
- Lubricants must be free of pollution.



CATERPILLAR C-6.6

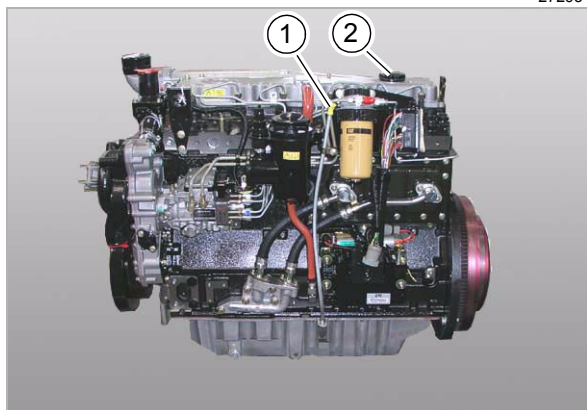
27295

30

- Stop the diesel engine. 👁
- Wait for about 5 minutes.
- Read the oil level on the gauge rod (1).

The oil must not be higher than the FULL mark (maximum) and must not drop below the SAFE mark (minimum) on the oil dipstick.

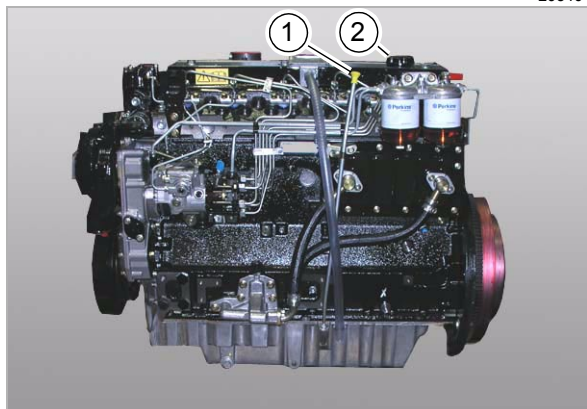
- If necessary, top up oil at (2).



CATERPILLAR 3056 E

29340

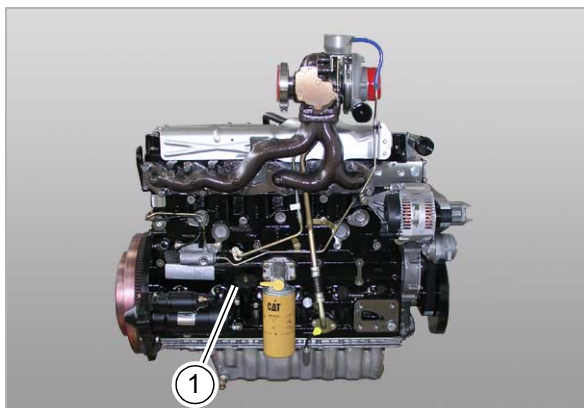
31



PERKINS 1006-6T

29344

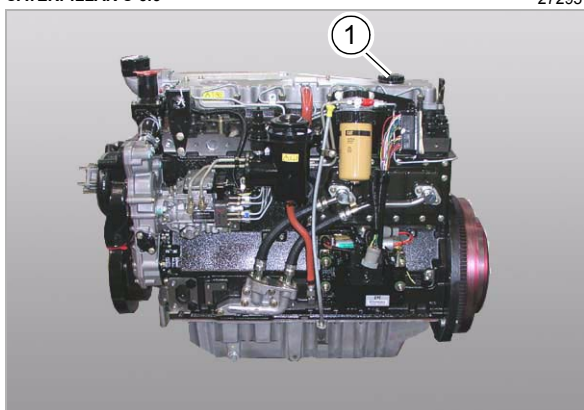
32



CATERPILLAR C-6.6

27295

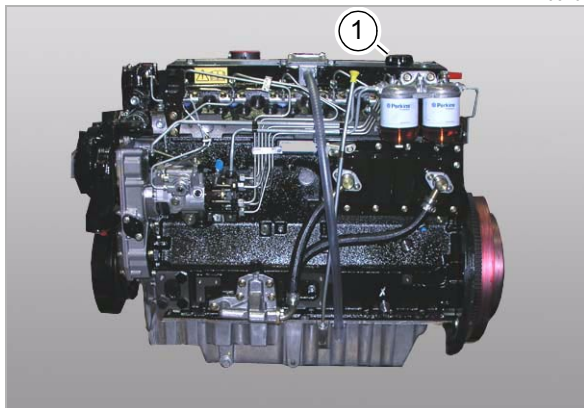
33



CATERPILLAR 3056 E

29340

34



PERKINS 1006-6T

29344

35

13.5.19 Changing the diesel engine oil / oil filter

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 
- Observe the information provided in the operator's manual of the engine manufacturer. 



Warning!

Contact with hot liquids or machine parts.

Danger of burns

- Wear suitable protective clothing.
- Let liquids or machine parts cool down.
- Comply with instructions.



Environment!

Lubricants and fuels end up in the environment.

Environmental pollution.

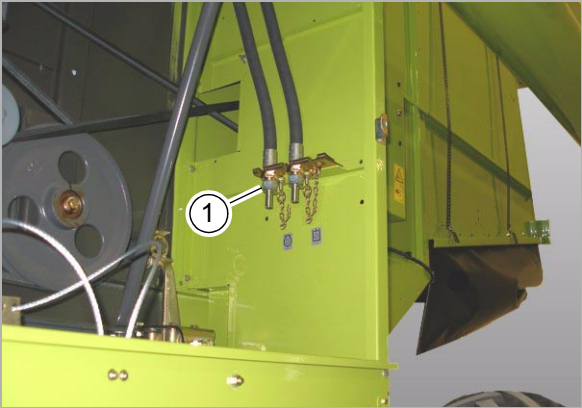
- Lubricants and fuels must be collected and stored in suitable containers and disposed of in a way that is harmless to the environment and in accordance with existing anti-pollution regulations.

Drain the engine oil immediately after switching off the engine with the engine still at operating temperature in order to flush dirt particles in the sump out with the draining oil.

- Unscrew the cover (1).

- Identify the position of the engine oil drain nozzle in the table and on the machine. The oil drain nozzle is marked on the machine by an engine oil decal.

Engine type	DOMINATOR			Position of drain hose	
	150	140	130	Engine oil 	Hydraulic oil 
CATERPILLAR C-6.6	•			left machine side, inside	left machine side, outside
CATERPILLAR C-6.6		•		left machine side, inside	left machine side, outside
CATERPILLAR C-6.6			•	left machine side, inside	on the steering cylinder
CATERPILLAR 3056 E	•			right machine side	left machine side, inside
CATERPILLAR 3056 E		•		right machine side	left machine side, inside
CATERPILLAR 3056 E			•	right machine side	on the steering cylinder
PERKINS 1006-6T			•	right machine side	on the steering cylinder

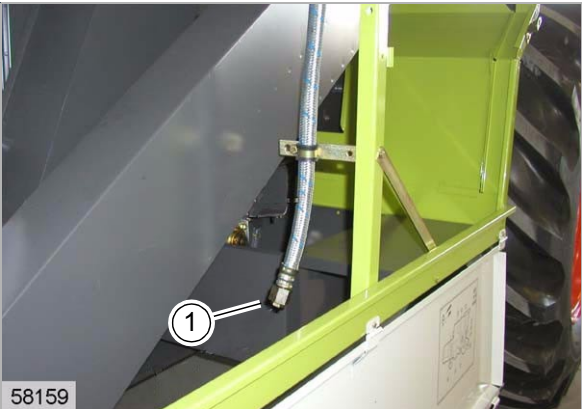


left machine side

29543

36

- Fit a suitable hose on the engine oil drain nozzle.
- Slacken off nut (1) slightly.
- Collect the used oil in a sufficiently large container.
- Tighten nut (1).
- Remove hose.

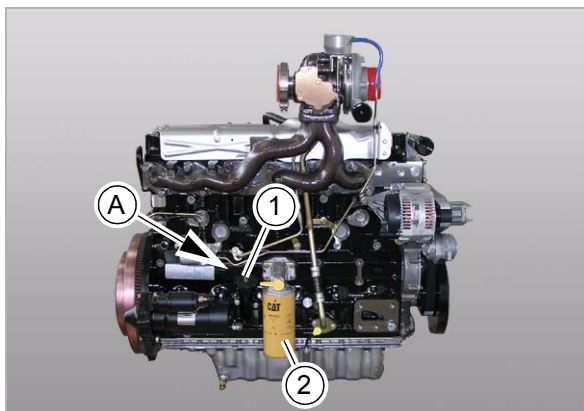


right machine side

23415

37

- Unscrew engine oil drain plug (1).
- Collect the used oil in a sufficiently large container.
- Tighten drain plug (11).



27295

38

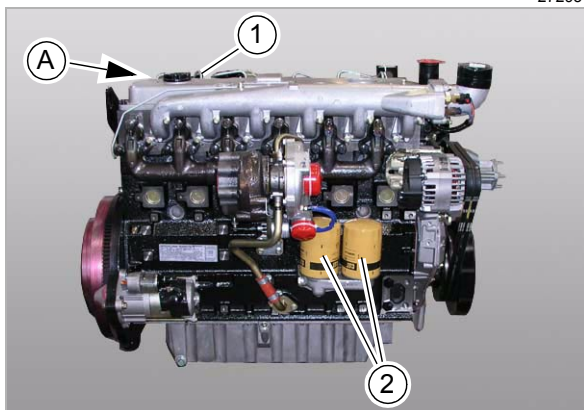
**WARNING:**

Use of unpermissible spare parts or lubricants.

Machine damage or increased wear.

- Spare parts and lubricants must at least comply with the technical standards required by the manufacturer of the implement!
- The use of genuine CLAAS spare parts and lubricants is recommended.

- Unscrew filter (2).
- Apply some oil to the new seal and screw on new filter (2) until the filter seal touches the filter head. Tighten the filter by hand.



29342

39

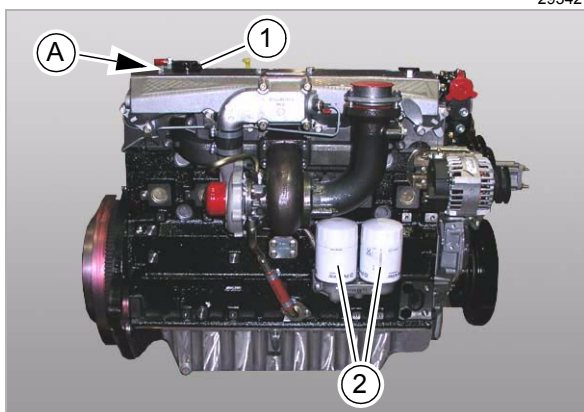
**Caution!**

Machine operation with unpermitted or polluted lubricants.

Machine damage.

- Ensure a clean environment.
- Use suitable and clean tools.
- Use permitted lubricants. 👁
- Lubricants must be free of pollution.

- Top up oil at position (A).
- Check the oil level. 👁
Top up oil if required.
- Screw on the lid (1) at position (A).
- Start the diesel engine. 👁
Let the diesel engine run at lower no-load speed for about 10 seconds.
- Check the oil level. 👁
Top up oil if required. 👁



29343

40

13.5.20 Adjusting the diesel engine valves

38745

- Observe the information provided in the operator's manual of the engine manufacturer. 📖

13.5.21 Checking the radiator coolant level

86455

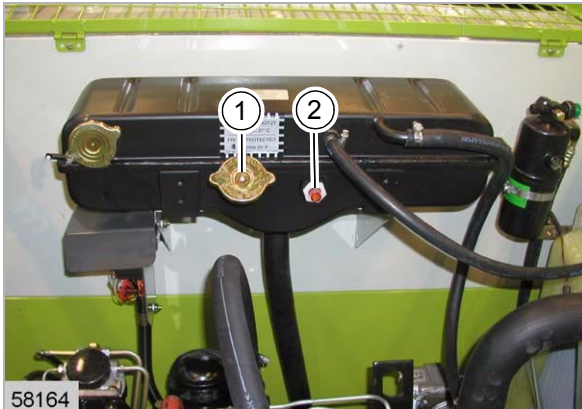
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 👁
- Let diesel engine cool down.
- Ensure that the drain cock of the cooling system is closed.



from serial no. ...

29602

41



58164

up to serial no. ...

23479

42



Warning!

Contact with hot liquids or machine parts.

Danger of burns

- Wear suitable protective clothing.
- Let liquids or machine parts cool down.
- Comply with instructions.

- Unscrew cover (1).



Caution!

Temperature difference between coolant and diesel engine.

Machine damage

- Let diesel engine cool down.
- Do not fill cold coolant into the engine when at operating temperature.

- Check the coolant level.

from serial no. ... : The coolant level must not exceed the FULL mark (maximum) and not fall below the SAFE mark (minimum) of the container.

up to serial no. ... : The coolant level must not rise above the filler neck level and not fall below the SAFE mark (sight glass (2)) of the container.

- Bolt on cover (1).
- Start the diesel engine and let it run at slow idling speed. 👁
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 👁
- Stop the diesel engine. 👁
- Let diesel engine cool down.
- Check coolant level one more time and top up if required.

37872

13.5.22 Checking the coolant mixing ratio



WARNING:

Use of coolant with an incorrect mixing ratio.

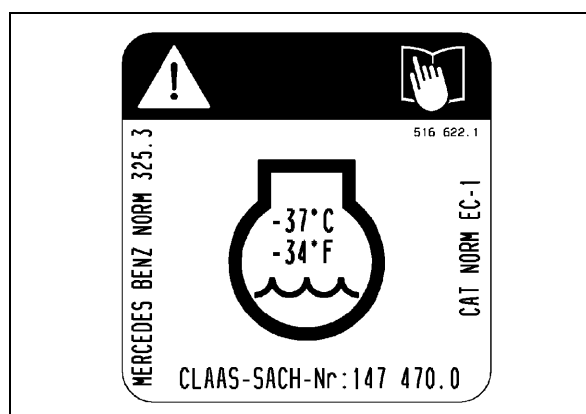
Engine damage by corrosion or cavitation.

- Do not use more than 55 % anti-corrosion agent/antifreeze when mixing. This reduces both frost protection and heat dissipation.
- Operation without anti-corrosion agent/antifreeze is not permitted.

Coolant mixing ratio:

Outside temperature	-37°C	approx. -45°C
Share of water	50 %	45 %
Share of anti-corrosion agent/antifreeze	50 %	55 % max.

In exceptional cases when no anti-corrosion agent/antifreeze is available and/or no frost protection is required (tropical zones), an approved coolant additive without a frost protection requirement must be used (see lubricants chart).



4033

43

**Warning!**

Soiling of liquids / lubricants.

Machine damage

- Use clean, low-lime and low-chlorine water.
- Use clean containers.

Ex works, the machine cooling system is filled with anti-corrosion agent/antifreeze and water in order to prevent damage caused by corrosion and frost.

The coolant consists of 50 % corrosion inhibiting anti-freeze and 50 % water.

This ensures frost protection down to approx. -37 °C.

62703

13.5.23 Changing the radiator coolant

- Drain the radiator coolant. 👁
- Top up radiator coolant. 👁

86461

13.5.24 Draining the radiator coolant

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 👁

**Warning!**

Contact with hot liquids or machine parts.

Danger of burns

- Wear suitable protective clothing.
- Let liquids or machine parts cool down.
- Comply with instructions.

- Let diesel engine cool down.



44

- Fit a suitable hose on the drain cock (1). Place the end of the hose into a container.
- Open the drain cock (1) carefully.

The pressure inside the system is relieved and the coolant escapes.



45

- Slacken off cover (1) to the stop and relieve the excess pressure.
- Unscrew cover (1).

Any possible vacuum in the system is relieved, the remaining coolant flows out of the drain tap.

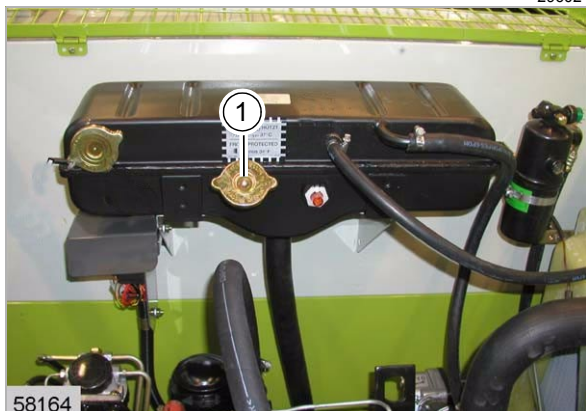


46

- Bolt on cover (1).
- Close drain tap.

from serial no. ...

29602



47

58164
up to serial no. ...

23479

13.5.25 Topping up coolant

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 👁

**Caution**

Mixing coolants changes their properties.

The coolant can flocculate. Engine overheating.

- Only fill with coolant according to the lubricants chart.

- Let diesel engine cool down.
- Ensure that the drain cock of the cooling system is closed.
- Observe the coolant mixing ratio. 👁

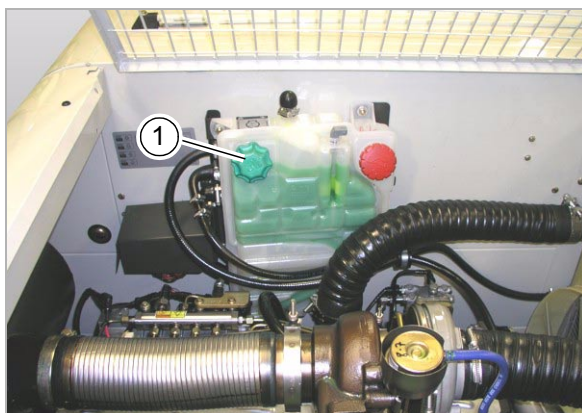
**Warning!**

Contact with hot liquids or machine parts.

Danger of burns

- Wear suitable protective clothing.
- Let liquids or machine parts cool down.
- Comply with instructions.

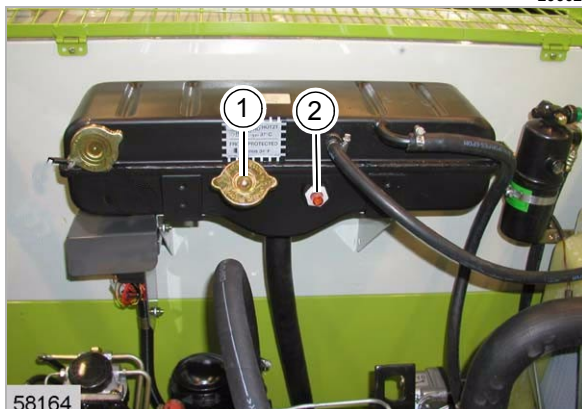
- Unscrew cover (1).



from serial no. ...

29602

48



58164

up to serial no. ...

23479

49

**Caution!**

Temperature difference between coolant and diesel engine.

Machine damage

- Let diesel engine cool down.
- Do not fill cold coolant into the engine when at operating temperature.

- Fill in coolant at nozzle at (1).

from serial no. ... : The coolant level must not exceed the FULL mark (maximum) and not fall below the SAFE mark (minimum) of the container.

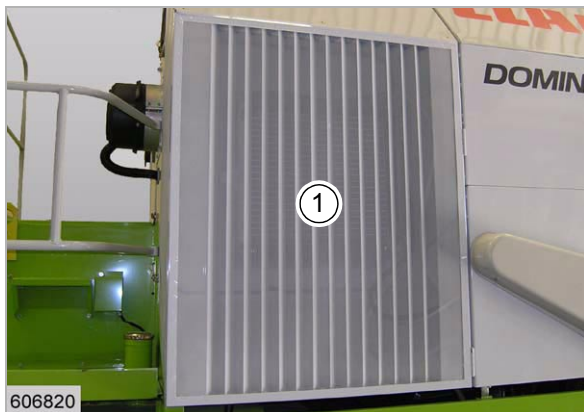
up to serial no. ... : The coolant level must not rise above the filler neck level and not fall below the SAFE mark (sight glass (2)) of the container.

- Bolt on cover (1).
- Start the diesel engine and let it run at slow idling speed. 👁
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 👁
- Stop the diesel engine. 👁
- Let diesel engine cool down.
- Check coolant level one more time and top up if required.

13.5.26 Cleaning the rotary chaff screen

When the engine is running, dust and dirt particles are filtered out at the rotating rotary chaff screen (1).

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 👁
- In case of severe dust, regularly check the rotary chaff screen and clean only when the diesel engine is stopped.



50

23481

13.5.27 Cleaning the cooling unit

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 👁
- Let diesel engine cool down.

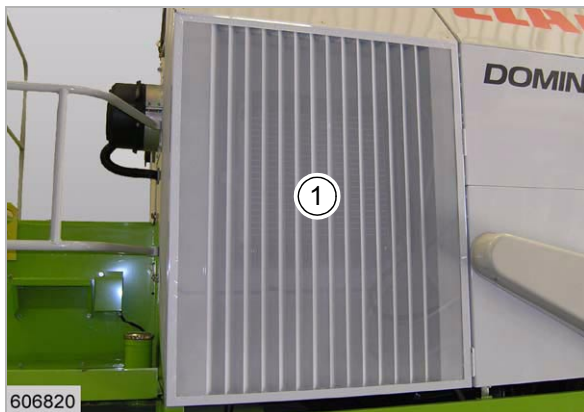


Warning!

Contact with hot liquids or machine parts.

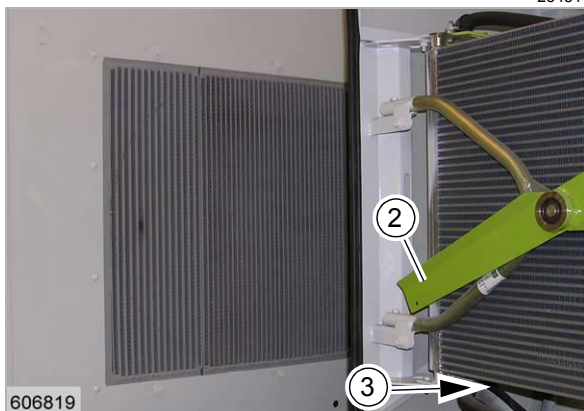
Danger of burns

- Wear suitable protective clothing.
 - Let liquids or machine parts cool down.
 - Comply with instructions.
- Fold the rotary chaff screen (1) open.
 - Clean cooling units and rotary chaff screen with compressed air.
- Clean the condenser (3) with 5 bar max.!**
- Do not damage the fins of cooling unit!**
- Check easy movement of rotor (2) and replace bearing if necessary.
 - Close the rotary chaff screen (1).
 - Secure the rotary chaff screen (1) with lock.



51

23481



52

23477

13.5.28 Changing the coolant hoses

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 👁

38808

**Warning!**

Contact with hot liquids or machine parts.

Danger of burns

- Wear suitable protective clothing.
- Let liquids or machine parts cool down.
- Comply with instructions.

**Caution!**

Improperly performed work on the machine or the front attachment can lead to malfunctioning.

Risk of machine damage

- Have adjustment and repairs performed only by an authorised specialist workshop.

- Drain the radiator coolant.
- Remove all coolant hoses and install new coolant hoses.
- Top up radiator coolant.

85756

13.5.29 Cleaning / changing the diesel engine air cleaner with plastic housing**Caution!**

Machine operation with soiled or damaged air filter.

Engine damage.

- Replace air filter immediately when the display of the on-board information system shows the relevant warning.
- Replace damaged air filters immediately.

**Note!**

Uneconomic use of machine.

Increased fuel consumption.

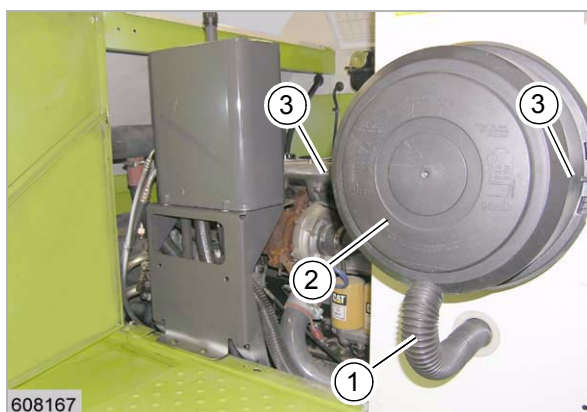
- Replace air filter immediately when a corresponding warning appears in the display of the onboard information system.

The hose (1) is connected to air filter cover (2) and to the exhaust pipe.

The permanent suction effect sucks the major part of the polluted air out of the housing.

The polluted air is discharged through the exhaust.

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter.



53

- Loosen the closures (3).
- Remove cover (2).



54

- Carefully pull out cartridge (1) using slight rotating movements.
- Clean the filter housing thoroughly.



55

- Clean component with compressed air of 5 bar max. from inside to outside.

During fieldwork, the cartridge may also be temporarily cleaned by knocking slightly on the palm of your hand.

Heavy knocking or upsetting the main filter will deform it, resulting in leaks at the filter seat!



56



WARNING:

Use of unpermissible spare parts or lubricants.

Machine damage or increased wear.

- Spare parts and lubricants must at least comply with the technical standards required by the manufacturer of the implement!
- The use of genuine CLAAS spare parts and lubricants is recommended.

- Check cartridge (1) for external and internal damage and replace if necessary.
- Insert cartridge (1) into the housing.

- Refit lid and close it tightly.

Ensure a tight and firm seat!

85761

13.5.30 Changing the diesel engine air cleaner safety cartridge with plastic housing



Caution!

Machine operation with soiled or damaged air filter.

Engine damage.

- Replace air filter immediately when the display of the on-board information system shows the relevant warning.
- Replace damaged air filters immediately.



Note!

Uneconomic use of machine.

Increased fuel consumption.

- Replace air filter immediately when a corresponding warning appears in the display of the onboard information system.

Safety cartridges must not be cleaned and reused!

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter.
- Clean / change the diesel engine air filter with plastic housing.
- Carefully pull out cartridge (1) using slight rotating movements.



608163

23489

57



WARNING:

Use of unpermissible spare parts or lubricants.

Machine damage or increased wear.

- Spare parts and lubricants must at least comply with the technical standards required by the manufacturer of the implement!
- The use of genuine CLAAS spare parts and lubricants is recommended.

- Fit **new** cartridge.
- Reinstall air filter.

85762

13.5.31 Cleaning the air filter intake screen

When the engine is running, air is suctioned through the sieve. Coarse dust and dirt particles remain outside at the sieve.



23485

58



Caution!

Machine operation with soiled or damaged air filter.

Engine damage.

- Replace air filter immediately when the display of the on-board information system shows the relevant warning.
 - Replace damaged air filters immediately.
-
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter.
 - In case of severe dust, regularly check the sieve (1) and clean only when the diesel engine is stopped.

13.5.32 Changing the air intake hoses

38812

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter.



Caution!

Improperly performed work on the machine or the front attachment can lead to malfunctioning.

Risk of machine damage

- Have adjustment and repairs performed only by an authorised specialist workshop.
-
- Remove all air intake hoses and install new air intake hoses.

Tightening torque for hose clamp with round pin, with spring = 10 Nm

Tightening torque for hose clamp with worm thread = 7 Nm

13.5.33 Retightening the air intake tube clamps

38817

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter.

**Caution!**

Improperly performed work on the machine or the front attachment can lead to malfunctioning.

Risk of machine damage

- Have adjustment and repairs performed only by an authorised specialist workshop.

- Retighten clamps at both ends of the air intake hoses.
- Replace damaged or porous hoses.

Tightening torque for hose clamp with round pin, with spring = 10 Nm

Tightening torque for hose clamp with worm thread = 7 Nm

13.6 Chassis

11114

13.6.1 Wheels / tyres



Warning!

If tyre pressures exceed the specified values, the tyres may explode.

Danger of injury

- Never stand in the vicinity of the tyre while it is being inflated. Always stand clear!
 - Regularly check the pressure of the tyres.
 - The specified tyre pressure must be respected. 👁
-
- Check if wheel nuts / wheel bolts are tightly seated every time after fitting a wheel and after the specified maintenance interval or tighten them. 👁
 - Retighten the track adjustment elements in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions
 - The tyres must only be ballasted to the extent that the specified tyre pressures can be maintained. 👁
 - Keep oil and grease away from tyres.
 - Check tyres for damage regularly on the inside as well.
 - Do not clean tyres by applying a steam cleaner directly.

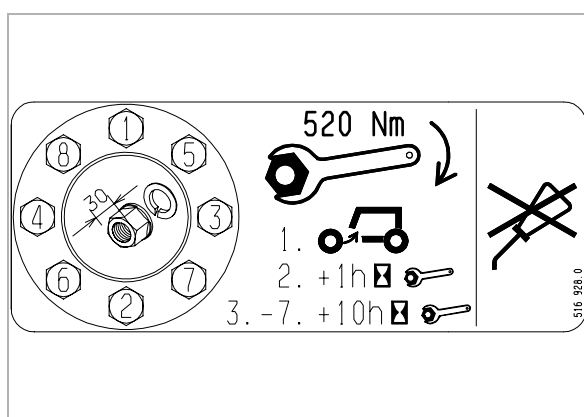
13.6.2 Checking the tightening torque of wheel nuts / wheel bolts

- Tighten all wheel nuts / wheel bolts (1) of the machine on the drive axle and the rear axle as specified.



59

9617



60

Drive axle decal

30848

Drive axle



Danger!

Wheel bolts / wheel nuts may come loose when not tightened as specified.

Death or serious injuries!

- Retighten all wheel bolts / wheel nuts on new machines and when wheels have been removed and refitted.
- Observe the maintenance intervals:
 - immediately after installation.
 - after the first working hour.
 - during the first 50 working hours: every 10 working hours.
- The threads must be clean and free of grease.
- Tighten the wheel bolts / wheel nuts crosswise (as numbered on the decal).
- Observe the tightening torque.

Tightening torque of drive axle wheels

Use	Designation of thread, type of fastening	Wrench size	Tightening torque
Drive axle	M22 x 1.5 - 8.8, nut with spring washer C 18.5 DIN 74361 (Limes type conical spring washer)	30	520 Nm



Rear axle decal

30789

61

Rear axle / rear drive axle



Danger!

Wheel bolts / wheel nuts may come loose when not tightened as specified.

Death or serious injuries!

- Retighten all wheel bolts / wheel nuts on new machines and when wheels have been removed and refitted.
- Observe the maintenance intervals:
 - immediately after installation.
 - after the first 10 working hours.
 - after the first 100 working hours.
- The threads must be clean and free of grease.
- Tighten wheel bolts / wheel nuts crosswise.
- Observe the tightening torque.

Tightening torque of rear axle wheels / rear drive axle wheels			
Use	Designation of thread, type of fastening	Wrench size	Tightening torque
Rear axle	M18 x 1.5 - 8.8, bolt with spring washer C 18.5 DIN 74361 (Limes type conical spring washer)		260 Nm

39373

13.6.3 Cleaning the surroundings of the drive axle manual gearbox

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter.
- Clean surroundings of gearbox on the machine.



62

14198

13.6.4 Checking the final drive oil level
DOMINATOR 150 / 140

86778

- Park the machine on level ground.
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter.



63

23392

Caution!

Machine operation with unpermitted or polluted lubricants.

Machine damage.

- Ensure a clean environment.
- Use suitable and clean tools.
- Use permitted lubricants.
- Lubricants must be free of pollution.

- Unscrew bolt (1).

The oil level must be up to the bore at bolt (1).

- Top up oil if required.
- Remove dirt from bolt (1).
- Screw in bolt (1) with sealant.
- Repeat this procedure on the other side of the machine.

**13.6.5 Draining the final drive oil
DOMINATOR 150 / 140**

86780

- Park the machine on level ground.
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter.

**Warning!**

Contact with hot liquids or machine parts.

Danger of burns

- Wear suitable protective clothing.
- Let liquids or machine parts cool down.
- Comply with instructions.

**Environment!**

Lubricants and fuels end up in the environment.

Environmental pollution.

- Lubricants and fuels must be collected and stored in suitable containers and disposed of in a way that is harmless to the environment and in accordance with existing anti-pollution regulations.



64

- Remove screw (1).
- Collect the used oil in a sufficiently large container.
- Clean screw (1).
- Turn in screw (1).
- Repeat this procedure on the other side of the machine.

13.6.6 Topping up the final drive oil DOMINATOR 150 / 140

86782

- Park the machine on level ground.
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 👁



Environment!

Lubricants and fuels end up in the environment.

Environmental pollution.

- Lubricants and fuels must be collected and stored in suitable containers and disposed of in a way that is harmless to the environment and in accordance with existing anti-pollution regulations.



WARNING:

Use of unpermissible spare parts or lubricants.

Machine damage or increased wear.

- Spare parts and lubricants must at least comply with the technical standards required by the manufacturer of the implement!
- The use of genuine CLAAS spare parts and lubricants is recommended.



Caution!

Machine operation with unpermitted or polluted lubricants.

Machine damage.

- Ensure a clean environment.
- Use suitable and clean tools.
- Use permitted lubricants. 👁
- Lubricants must be free of pollution.



606772

23392

65

- Unscrew bolt (1).
- Fill in new oil.
- Check oil level , top up if necessary.
- Remove dirt from bolt (1).
- Screw in bolt (1) with sealant.
- Repeat this procedure on the other side of the machine.

13.6.7 Checking the final drive oil level DOMINATOR 130

86784

- Park the machine on level ground.
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 



Caution!

Machine operation with unpermitted or polluted lubricants.

Machine damage.

- Ensure a clean environment.
- Use suitable and clean tools.
- Use permitted lubricants. 
- Lubricants must be free of pollution.



606774

Right side

23393

66

- Unscrew bolt (1).

The oil level must be up to the bore at bolt (1).

- Top up oil if required. 
- Remove dirt from bolt (1).
- Screw in bolt (1) with sealant.
- Repeat this procedure on the other side of the machine.

13.6.8 Draining the final drive oil DOMINATOR 130

86786

- Park the machine on level ground.
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 



Warning!

Contact with hot liquids or machine parts.

Danger of burns

- Wear suitable protective clothing.
- Let liquids or machine parts cool down.
- Comply with instructions.



Environment!

Lubricants and fuels end up in the environment.

Environmental pollution.

- Lubricants and fuels must be collected and stored in suitable containers and disposed of in a way that is harmless to the environment and in accordance with existing anti-pollution regulations.



Right side

23393

67

- Remove screw (1).
- Collect the used oil in a sufficiently large container.
- Clean screw (1).
- Turn in screw (1).
- Repeat this procedure on the other side of the machine.

13.6.9 Topping up the final drive oil DOMINATOR 130

86788

- Park the machine on level ground.
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter.



Environment!

Lubricants and fuels end up in the environment.

Environmental pollution.

- Lubricants and fuels must be collected and stored in suitable containers and disposed of in a way that is harmless to the environment and in accordance with existing anti-pollution regulations.

**WARNING:**

Use of unpermissible spare parts or lubricants.

Machine damage or increased wear.

- Spare parts and lubricants must at least comply with the technical standards required by the manufacturer of the implement!
- The use of genuine CLAAS spare parts and lubricants is recommended.

**Caution!**

Machine operation with unpermitted or polluted lubricants.

Machine damage.

- Ensure a clean environment.
- Use suitable and clean tools.
- Use permitted lubricants.
- Lubricants must be free of pollution.



606774
Right side

68

23393

- Unscrew bolt (1).
- Fill in new oil.
- Check oil level , top up if necessary.
- Remove dirt from bolt (1).
- Screw in bolt (1) with sealant.
- Repeat this procedure on the other side of the machine.

13.6.10 Checking the drive axle gearbox oil level

86771

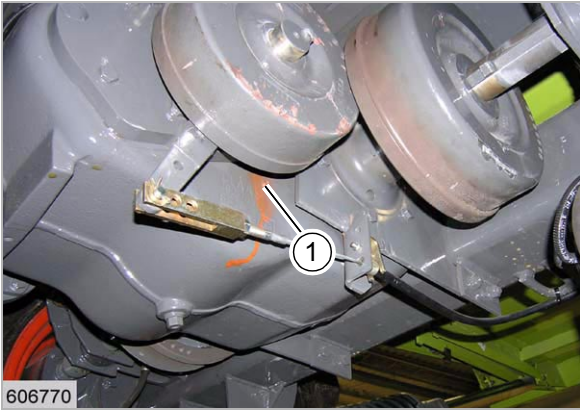
- Park the machine on level ground.
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter.

**Caution!**

Machine operation with unpermitted or polluted lubricants.

Machine damage.

- Ensure a clean environment.
- Use suitable and clean tools.
- Use permitted lubricants.
- Lubricants must be free of pollution.



69

- Unscrew bolt (1).

The oil level must be up to the bore at bolt (1).

- Top up oil if required. 👁
- Remove dirt from bolt (1).
- Screw in bolt (1) with sealant.

13.6.11 Draining the oil from the drive axle gearbox

86773

- Park the machine on level ground.
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 👁



Warning!

Contact with hot liquids or machine parts.

Danger of burns

- Wear suitable protective clothing.
- Let liquids or machine parts cool down.
- Comply with instructions.

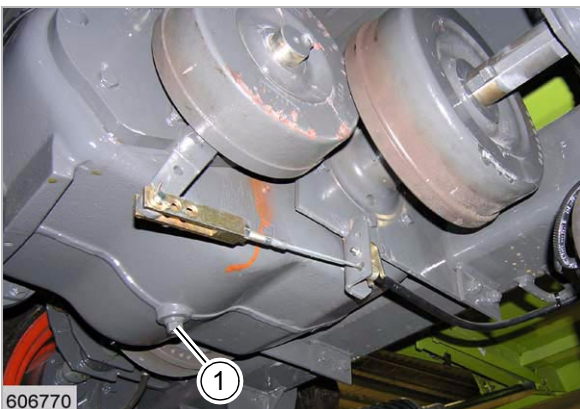


Environment!

Lubricants and fuels end up in the environment.

Environmental pollution.

- Lubricants and fuels must be collected and stored in suitable containers and disposed of in a way that is harmless to the environment and in accordance with existing anti-pollution regulations.



70

- Remove screw (1).
- Collect the used oil in a sufficiently large container.
- Clean screw (1).
- Turn in screw (1).

13.6.12 Topping up oil in the drive axle gearbox

- Park the machine on level ground.
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 



Environment!

Lubricants and fuels end up in the environment.

Environmental pollution.

- Lubricants and fuels must be collected and stored in suitable containers and disposed of in a way that is harmless to the environment and in accordance with existing anti-pollution regulations.



WARNING:

Use of unpermissible spare parts or lubricants.

Machine damage or increased wear.

- Spare parts and lubricants must at least comply with the technical standards required by the manufacturer of the implement!
- The use of genuine CLAAS spare parts and lubricants is recommended.

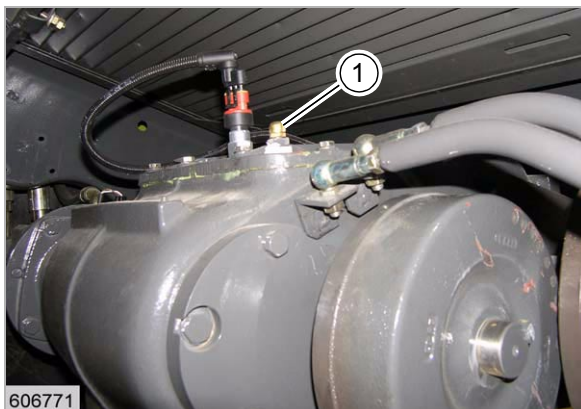


Caution!

Machine operation with unpermitted or polluted lubricants.

Machine damage.

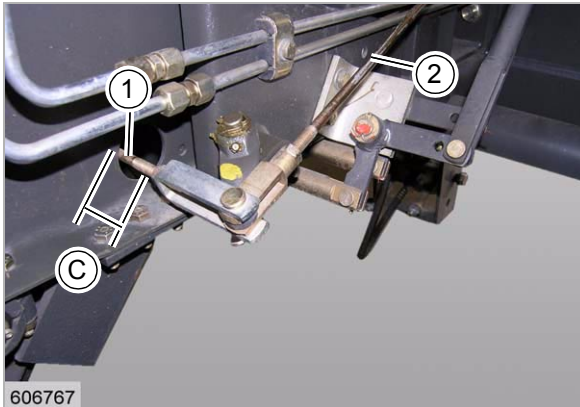
- Ensure a clean environment.
 - Use suitable and clean tools.
 - Use permitted lubricants. 
 - Lubricants must be free of pollution.
-
- Unscrew bolt (1).
 - Fill in new oil.
 - Check oil level , top up if necessary.
 - Remove dirt from bolt (1).
 - Screw in bolt (1) with sealant.



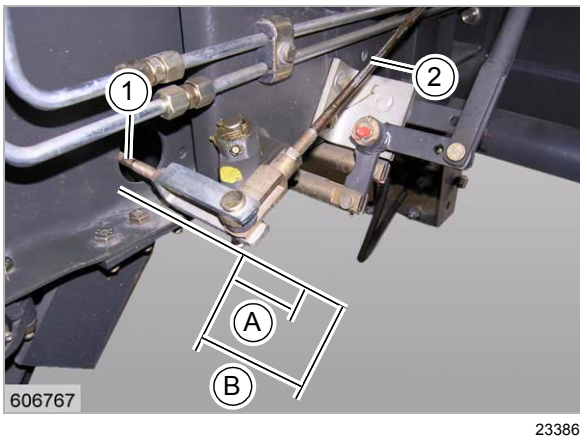
23390

13.6.13 Adjusting the chassis clutch DOMINATOR 130

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 
- Unhinge rods (1 and 2) at lever (3).
- Pull rod (1) to the outside until a resistance is clearly felt and adjust the pre-set dimension (C = 40 mm) from the inner edge of the nut up to the side panel.



72



73

- Fit rods (1 and 2) to lever (3), using pin (4).
- Depress the clutch pedal until a clear resistance is felt, measure the play (A = 7 - 11 mm) and adjust at rod (1) if required. Note: The play should be set to the upper tolerance limit (10 - 11 mm).
- Depress the clutch pedal to the maximum, measure the overall clutch path (B = 20±1 mm) and adjust at rod (2) if required.



Caution

Incorrect installation of components.

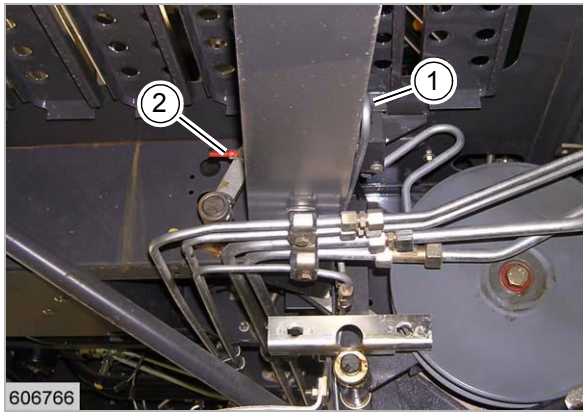
Increased wear on components or machine damage.

- The yokes (5) of rods (1 and 2) must not touch lever (3) either when operated or when in rest position.
- Observe the adjusting dimensions.
- Ensure that the overall clutch path is (B = 20±1 mm).

86746

13.6.14 Adjusting the short-circuit valve DOMINATOR 130

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 

**74**

23387

- With the clutch pedal in rest position, adjust linkage (2) so that the actuating lever of short-circuit valve (1) is retracted by 3 to 5 mm.

13.7 Brake

13.7.1 Checking / refilling brake fluid



Warning!

Incorrect handling of brake fluid.

Medium-grade injuries.

- Observe the details regarding brake fluid use provided on the container.
- Wear safety gloves.
- Collect brake fluid in a suitable container.
- Dispose of brake fluid in accordance with existing environmental regulations!



Danger!

Insufficient brake system maintenance.

Death or serious injuries!

- Inspect the brake system thoroughly at regular intervals.
- Adjustment, repairs and service work on the brake system may be performed only by authorised specialist workshops.
- Check the level of the brake fluid at regular intervals.

Only use the recommended type of brake fluid and change the brake fluid as specified.

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter.
- Open the lid (1).
- Top up brake fluid up to the specified mark.
- Close the lid (1).

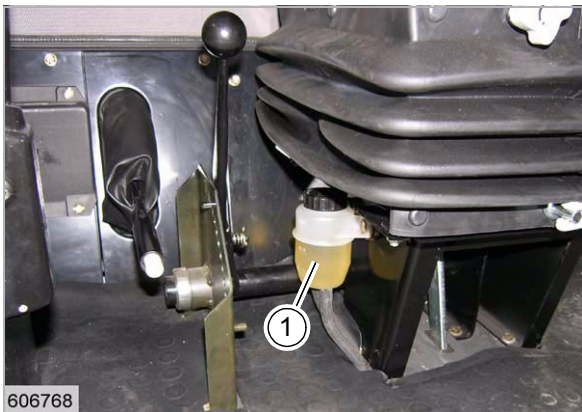


Danger!

Machine loses brake fluid.

Death or serious injuries!

- In case of loss of brake fluid, there is a leak in the brake system.
- Have the brake system inspected by an authorised workshop.



75

23388

606768

13.7.2 Adjusting the parking brake

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter.



76

Danger!

Improperly adjusted brake system.

Death or serious injuries!

- Adjustment, repairs and service work on the brake system may be performed only by authorised specialist workshops.
- Comply with instructions.

Check the adjustment of the parking brake (1).

The parking brake is correctly adjusted if the brake takes effect after the first 3 to 4 teeth are actuated.

- **Ensure** that the ratchet still engages securely in the segment even after prolonged use of the machine.
- If required, adjust parking brake.
- If necessary, change segment.

80335

13.7.3 Adjusting the foot brake

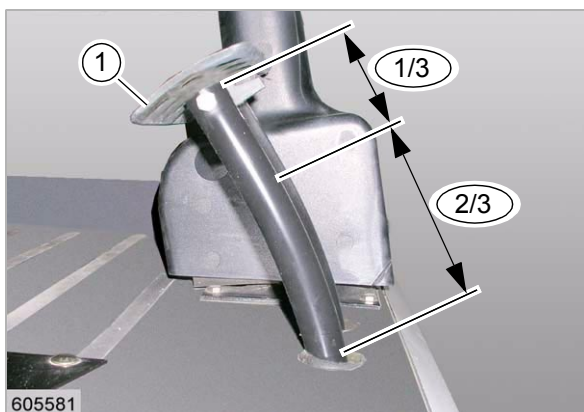
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 

**Danger!**

Improperly adjusted brake system.

Death or serious injuries!

- Adjustment, repairs and service work on the brake system may be performed only by authorised specialist workshops.
- Comply with instructions.



77

Check the adjustment of the foot brake (1).

The foot brake is correctly adjusted when the brake takes effect after depressing the pedal by one third of its path.

- Check the braking effect.
- Check the brake pads at regular intervals.
- Replace the brake pads.

13.8 Drive belts / drive chains

13.8.1 General warnings

In the following sections of this chapter, a procedure instruction refers to the following general warnings.



Danger!

Always stop the engine before carrying out any work on the machine.

Moving machine parts and / or unexpected machine movement.

Death or serious injury.

- Diesel engine OFF.
- Apply parking brake.
- Remove the ignition key.
- Remove key of battery isolating switch.
- Wait for machine parts which run on have come to a complete halt.
- Secure machine by wheel chocks.
- Ensure that the machine cannot be started by any third persons.

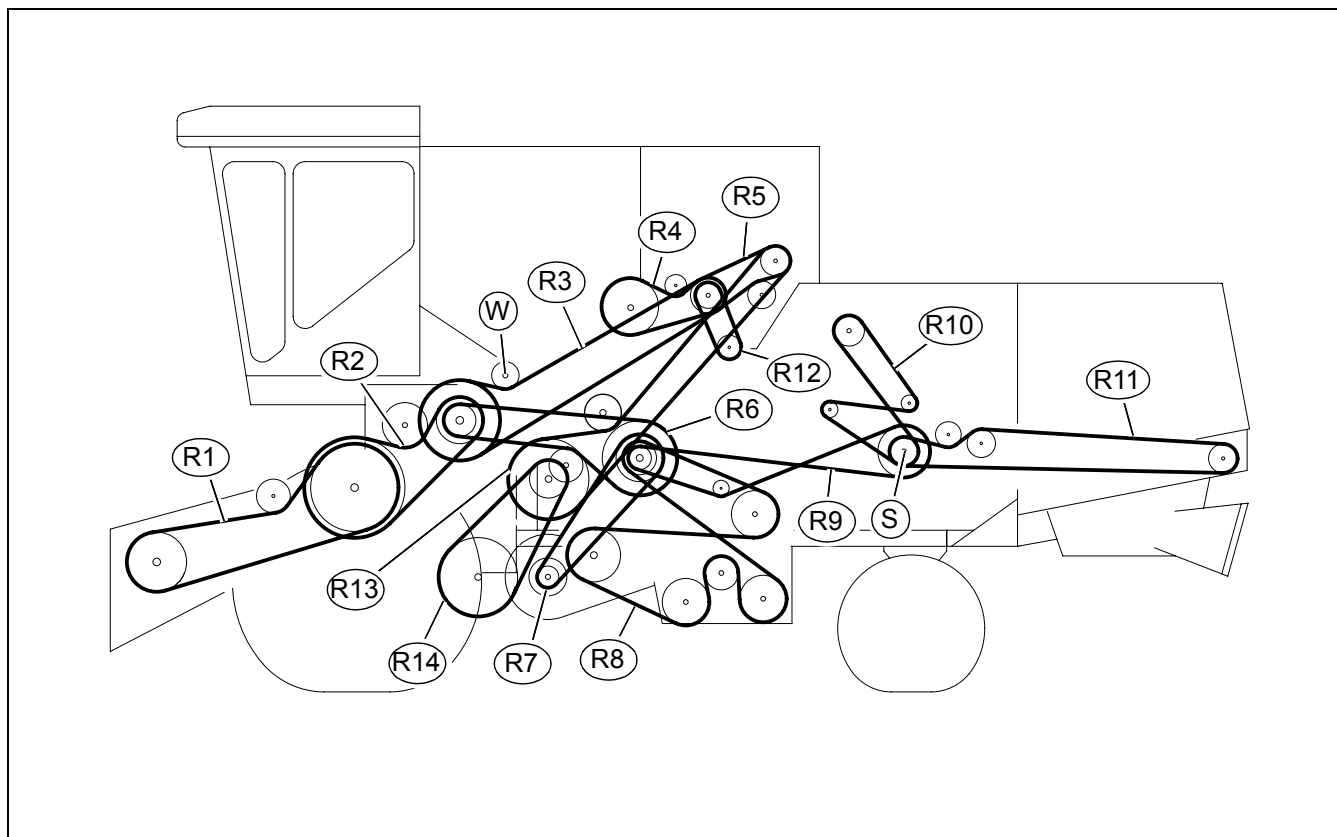


Danger!

Machine components may run on although the drive has been shut down.

Death or serious injury.

- Never touch any machine parts that are running on.
- Wait until all machine parts have stopped moving.

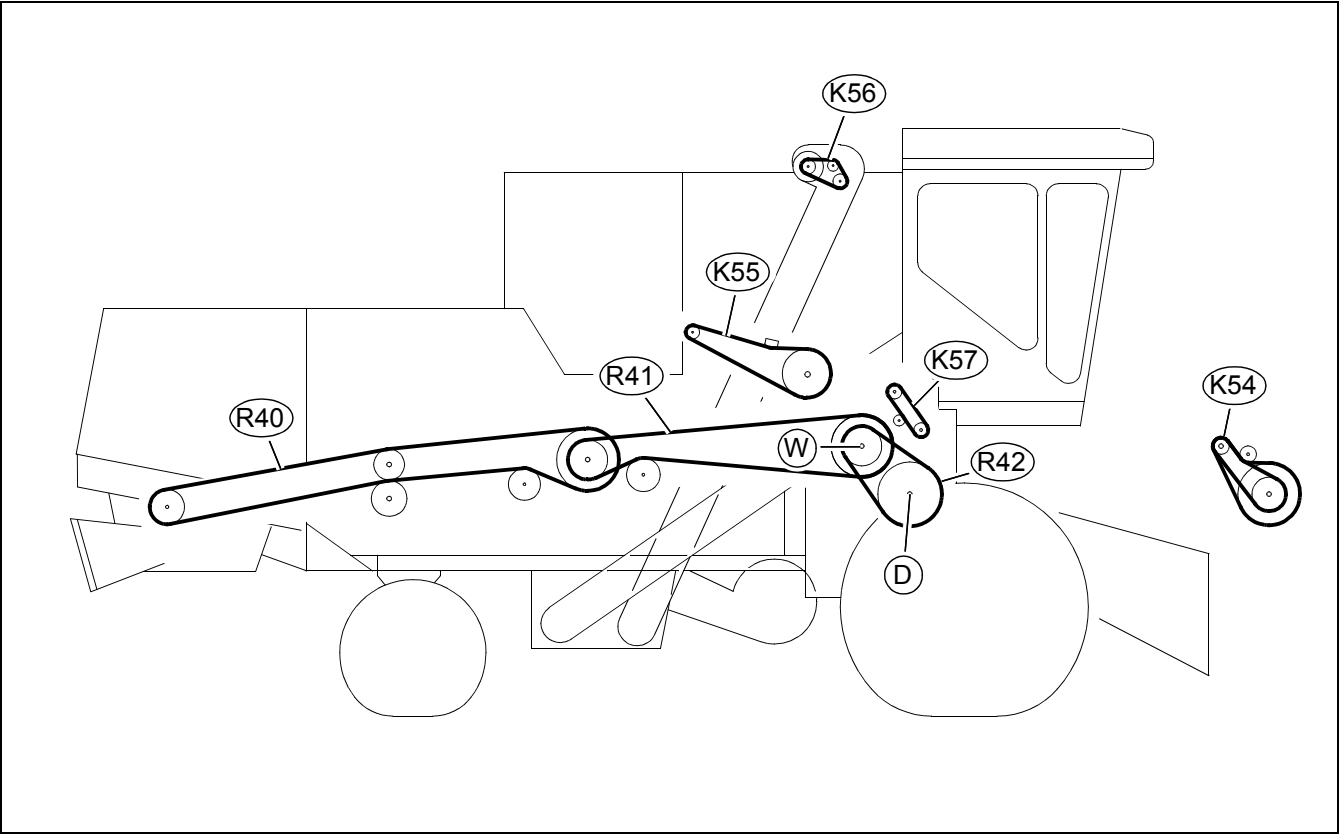
13.8.2 Drive diagram, left side DOMINATOR 150 / 140 / 130

30063

78

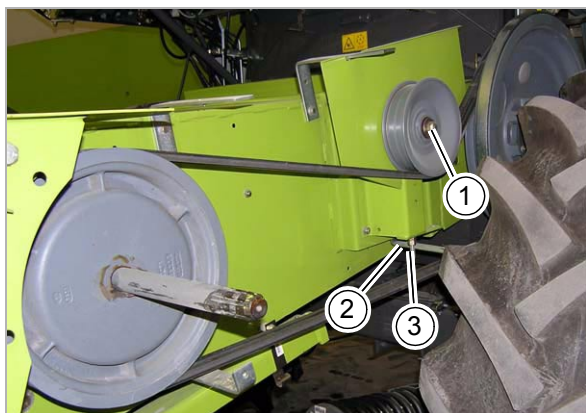
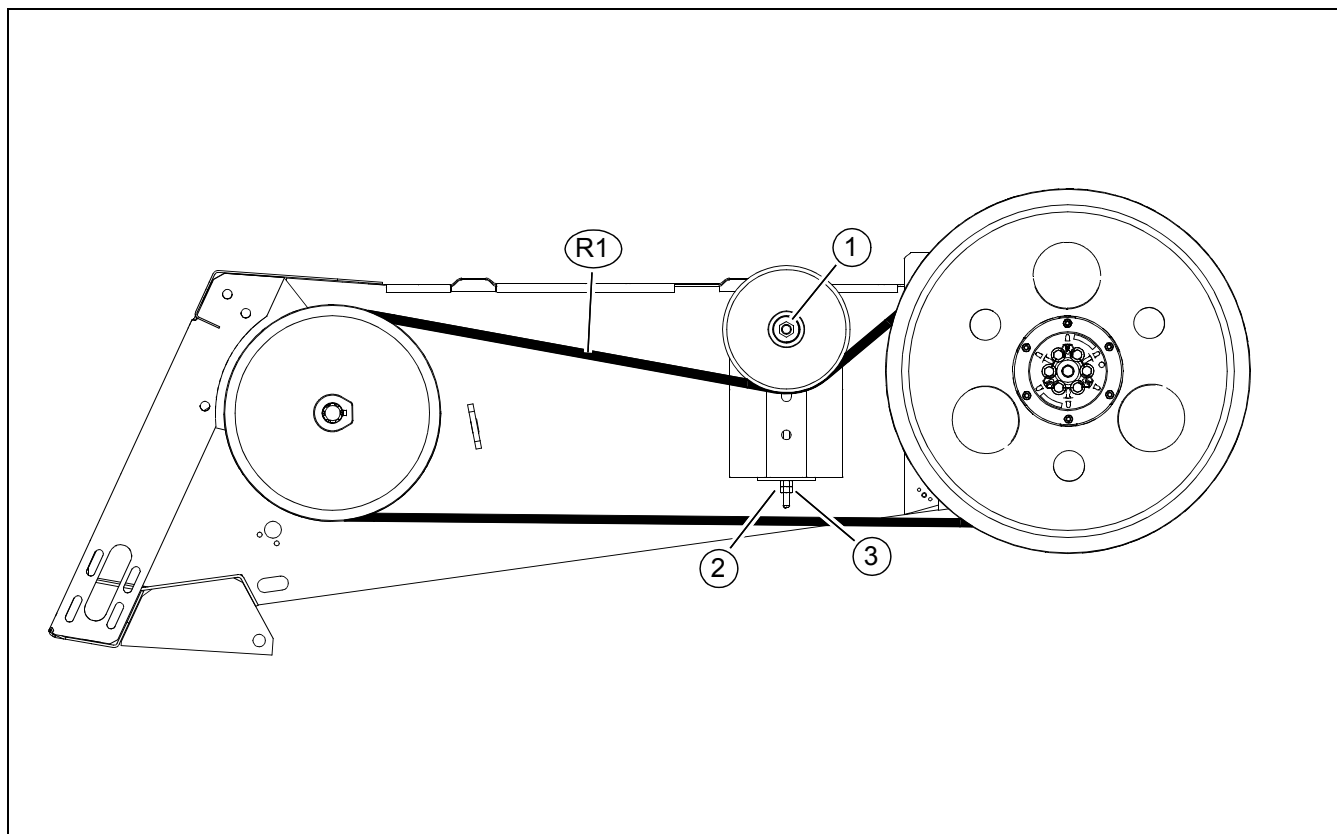
	Designation
R1	Front attachment drive, stage 2
R2	Front attachment drive, stage 1
R3	Threshing mechanism drive
R4	Grain tank unloading drive 1st step
R5	Hydraulic ground drive DOMINATOR 150 / 140
R6	Sieve pan drive 1st step
R7	Fan drive
R8	Sieve pan drive 2nd step
R9	Straw walker drive
R10	Intensive separation system drive
R11	Straw spreader drive
R12	Air conditioner compressor drive
R13	Ground drive DOMINATOR 130
R14	Ground drive variable-speed drive DOMINATOR 130
W = Impeller, S = Straw walker drive shaft, R = Drive belt	

13.8.3 Drive diagram, right side DOMINATOR 150 / 140 / 130



29863 79

	Designation
R40	Straw chopper drive 2nd step
R41	Straw chopper drive 1st step
R42	Threshing drum variable speed drive
K54	Threshing drum chain drive
K55	Grain tank unloading drive 2nd step
K56	Grain tank filler auger drive
K57	Returns auger drive
D = Threshing drum, W = Impeller, R = Drive belt, K = Drive chains	

13.8.4 Adjusting belt (R1)

23846

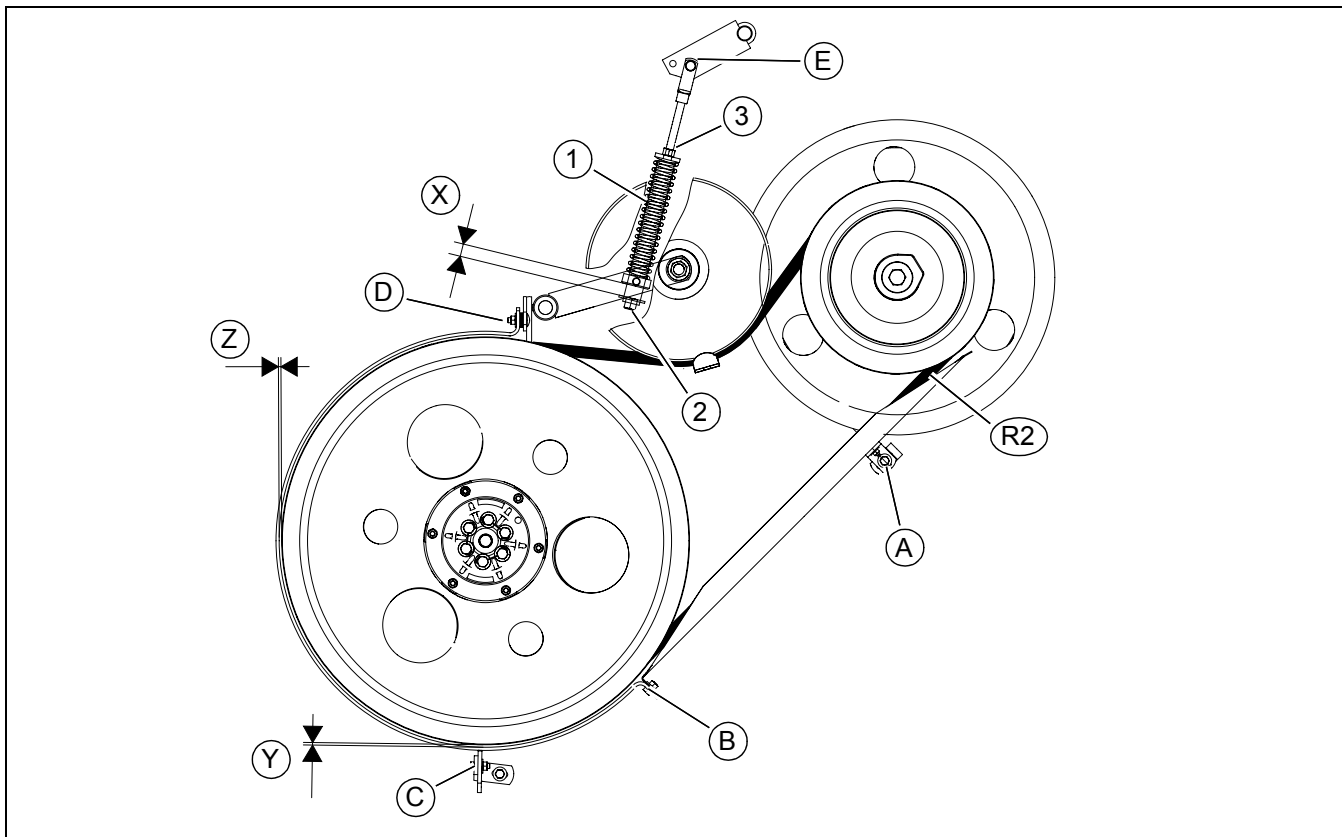
29864

80

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 
 - Loosen nut (1).
 - Turn nuts (2) and (3) until the belt is tensioned.
 - Lock nuts (2) and (3).
 - Tighten nut (1).
- Tightening torque = 130 Nm**
- Carry out a test run and check belt tension.

81

13.8.5 Adjusting belt (R2)



29951

82

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter.



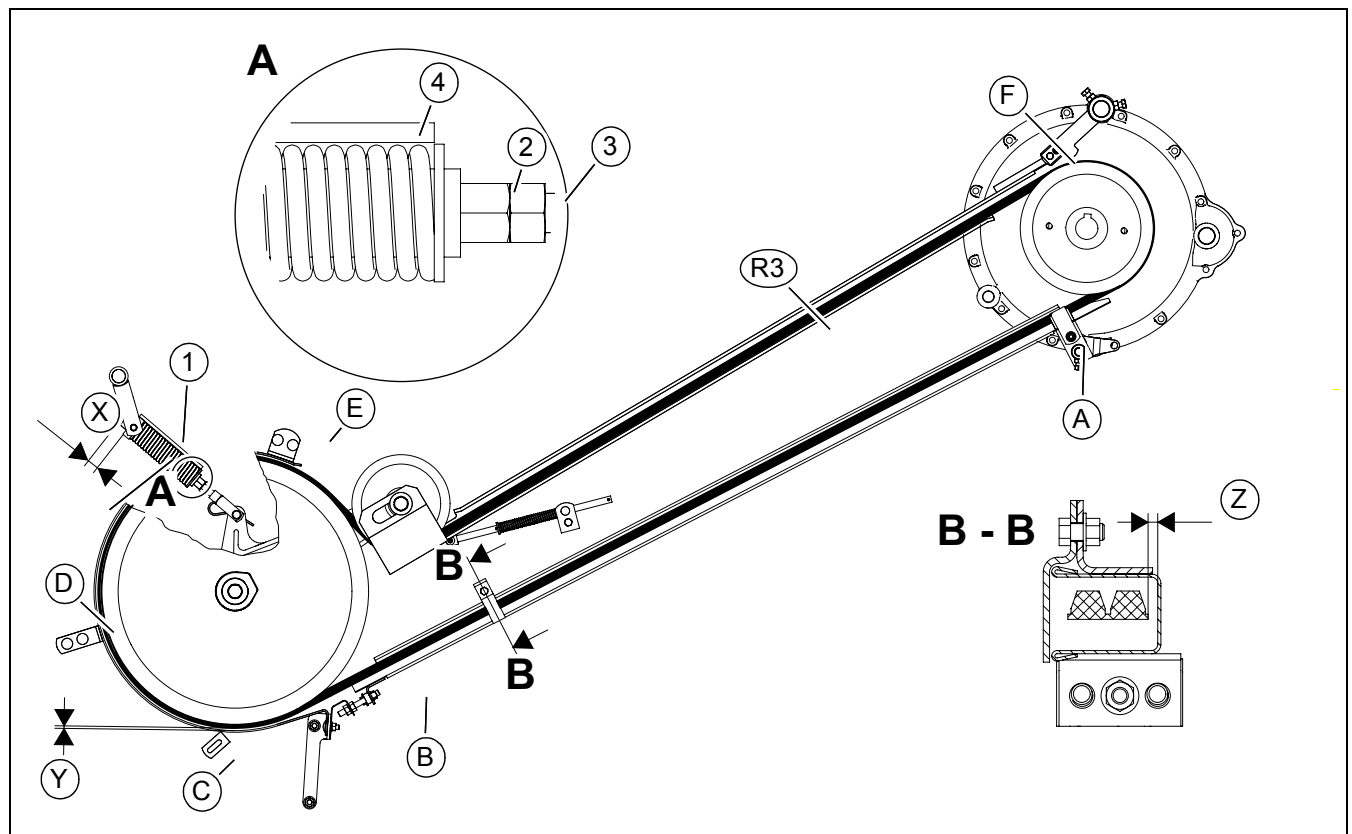
Danger!

Parts can be thrown off by a relaxing spring.
Serious injuries.

- Precisely follow the following handling instructions.

- Adjust the spring-loaded cylinder (1):
 - Ensure that spring-loaded cylinder (1) is mounted in the rear hole (E).
 - Adjust spring guide tube (2) with the front attachment engaged until dimension (X) is **around 20 mm**. Adjust nut (3) at the same time and jam with the spring guide tube. Check dimension (X).
- Adjusting the belt guide:
 - Adjust belt guides at position (A, B, C and D) so with the front attachment engaged that the following dimensions result between belt back and belt guide.
Dimension (Y) = 5 - 7mm,
dimension (Z) = 4 mm
 - Tighten all the bolts.
- Carry out a test run and check belt tension.

13.8.6 Adjusting belt (R3)

30207 **83**

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter.

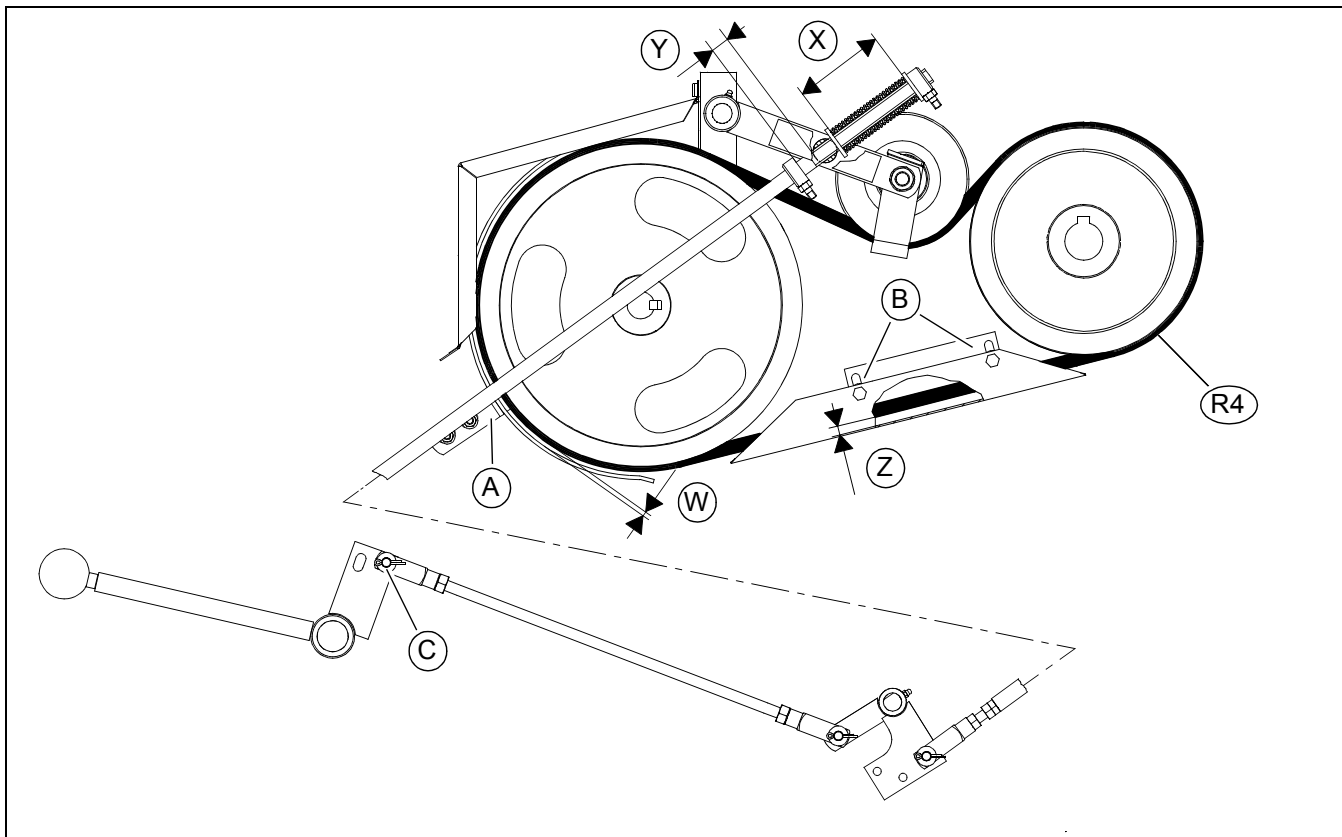
**Danger!**

Parts can be thrown off by a relaxing spring.
Serious injuries.

- Precisely follow the following handling instructions.

- Adjust the spring-loaded cylinder (1):
 - Slacken off lock nut (3) with the threshing mechanism engaged and turn the hex. head (2) of spring guide tube until the indicator rod (4) is flush with the end of the spring.
The **dimension (X) = 20 mm** results.
 - Jam spring guide tube and jam nut (3).
- Adjusting the belt guide:
 - Adjust the belt guides at position (A, B, C, D, E and F) so with the threshing mechanism engaged that **dimension (Y) = 5 mm results on the entire circumference** between belt back and belt guide.
 - Tighten all the bolts.
- Carry out a test run and check belt tension.

13.8.7 Adjusting belt (R4)



29977

84

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter.



Danger!

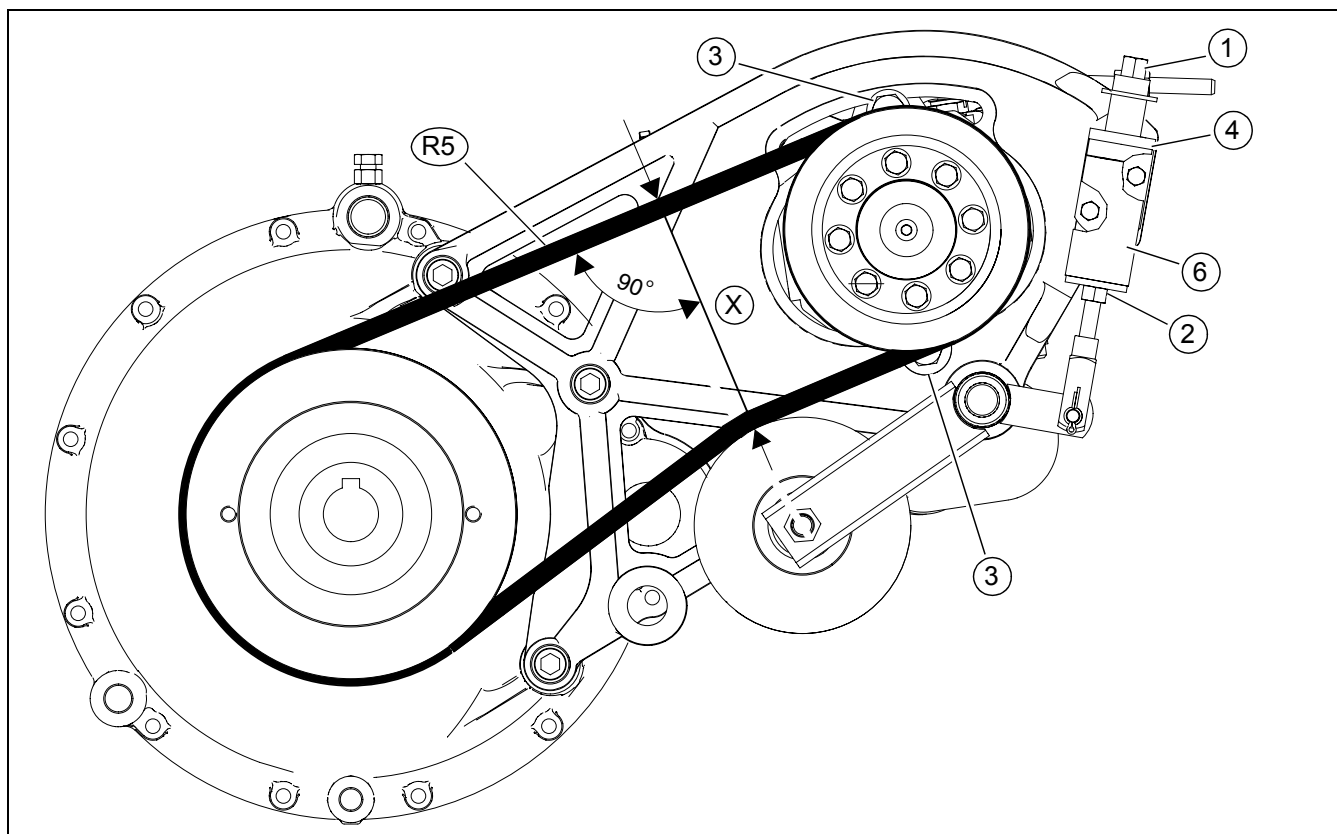
Parts can be thrown off by a relaxing spring.
Serious injuries.

- Precisely follow the following handling instructions.

- Ensure that the linkage is mounted in the bottom hole (C).
- Adjust the spring-loaded cylinder (1):
 - Adjust the set collar (2) so with the grain tank unloading engaged that the **spring length (X) is 100 mm**.
 - Now adjust set collar (1) so with the grain tank unloading engaged that the **dimension (Y) is 20 mm**.
- Adjusting the belt guide:
 - Adjust belt guides at position (A and B) so with the grain tank unloading engaged that the following dimensions result between belt back and belt guide.
Dimension (W) = 5 mm on the entire circumference, dimension (Z) = 7 mm
 - Tighten all the bolts.

- Carry out a test run and check belt tension.

13.8.8 Adjusting belt (R5)



29986

85

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter.

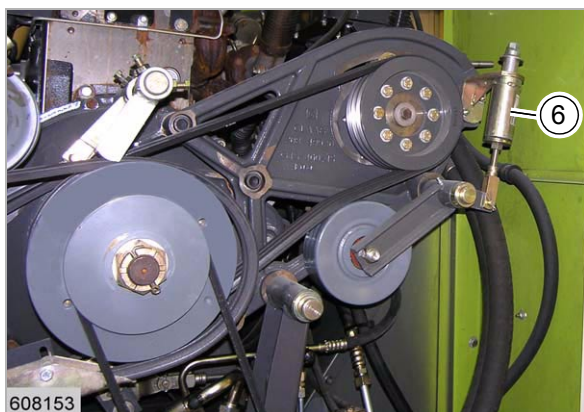


Warning!

Pinch points during assembly work.

Bruises of limbs.

- Keep limbs out of the hazard area.
- Use suitable tools.

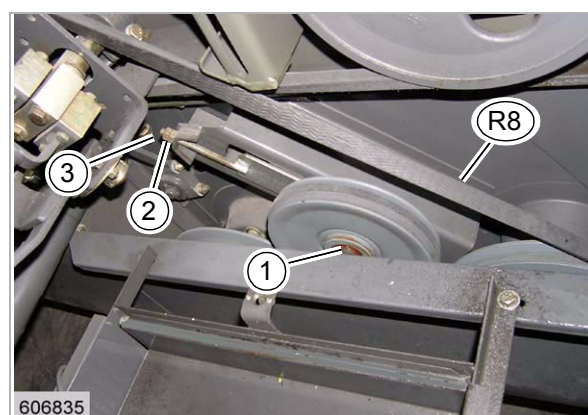
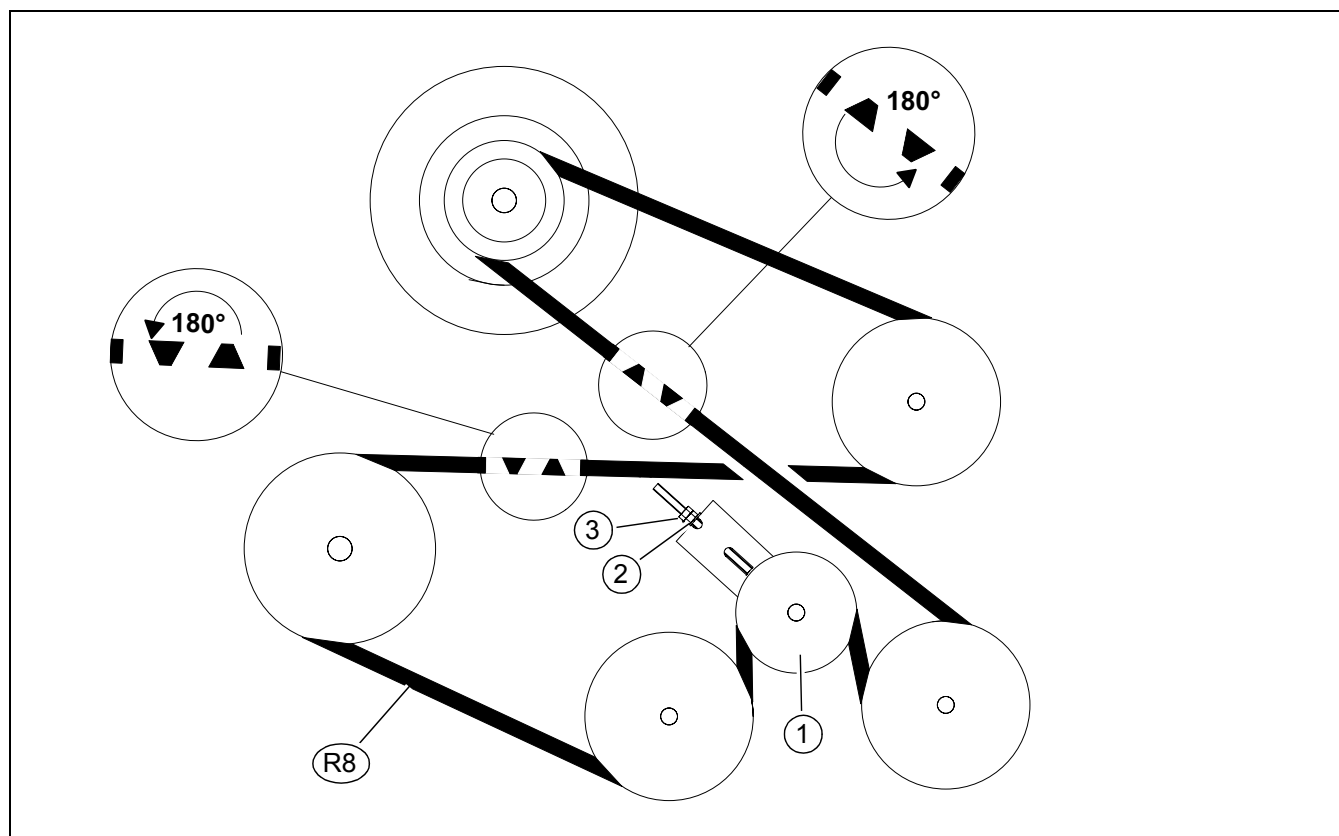


23840

86

- Slacken off nut (2) until tube (6) has a little play from bracket (4).
- Check **dimension (X) = 187⁺¹⁰ mm**.
- Slacken off bolts (3) if required and relocate hydraulic pump until dimension (Y) has been reached. Ensure that tube (6) always has some play from bracket (4) while relocating.
- Tighten bolts (3).
- Jam spring guide tube (1) and nut (2). Ensure that tube (6) makes contact with bracket (4) without play.
- Carry out a test run and check belt tension.

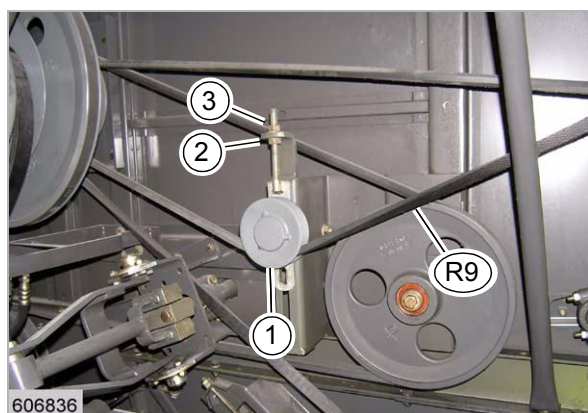
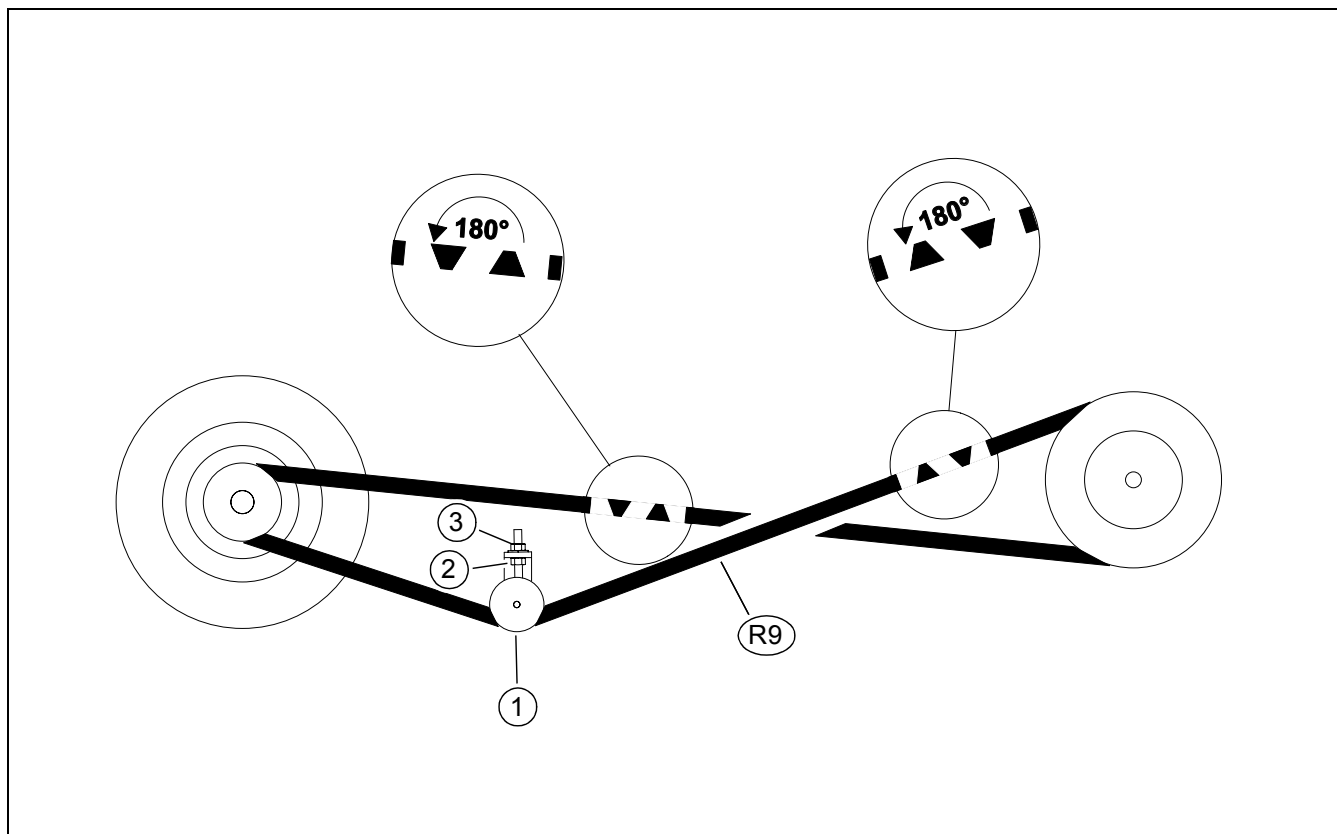
13.8.9 Adjusting belt (R8)



88

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter.
- Loosen the clamping screw of the jockey pulley (1).
- Turn nuts (2) and (3) until belt (R10) is tensioned.
- Lock nuts (2) and (3).
- Tighten the clamping screw of the jockey pulley (1).
 - **Tightening torque = 130 Nm**
- Carry out a test run and check belt tension.

13.8.10 Adjusting belt (R9)



606836

23841

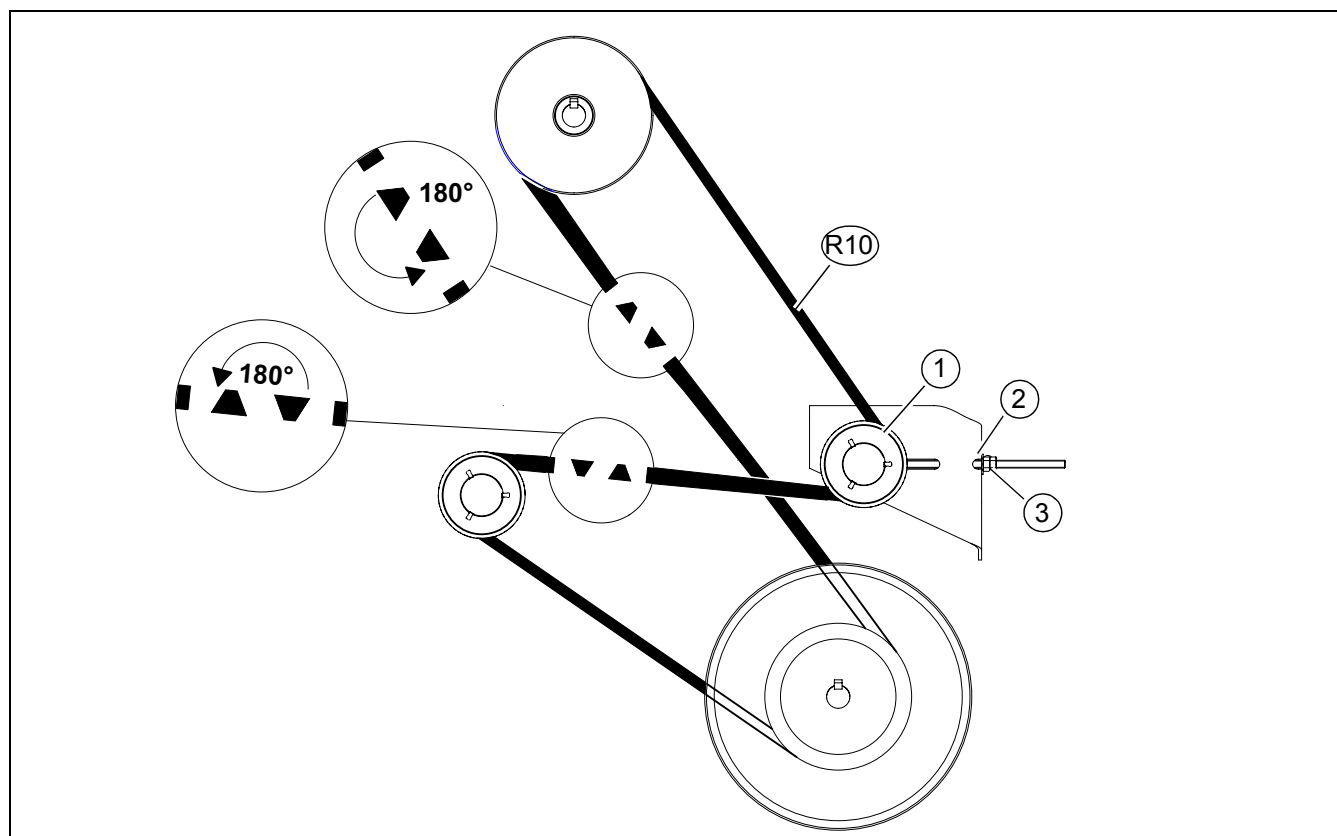
90

30039

89

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter.
- Loosen the clamping screw of the jockey pulley (1).
- Turn nuts (2) and (3) until belt (R10) is tensioned.
- Lock nuts (2) and (3).
- Tighten the clamping screw of the jockey pulley (1).
 - **Tightening torque = 40 Nm**
- Carry out a test run and check belt tension.

13.8.11 Adjusting belt (R10)



30029

91



23843

92

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter.
- Loosen the clamping screw of the jockey pulley (1).
- Turn nuts (2) and (3) until belt (R10) is tensioned.
- Lock nuts (2) and (3).
- Tighten the clamping screw of the jockey pulley (1).
 - **Tightening torque = 40 Nm**
- Carry out a test run and check belt tension.

13.8.12 Removing belt (R7)

- Set fan speed to the highest value with crank (1). 👁
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 👁

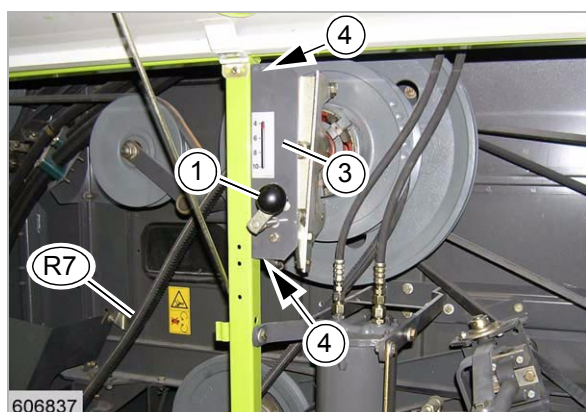
**Warning!**

Pinch points during assembly work.

Bruises of limbs.

- Keep limbs out of the hazard area.
- Use suitable tools.

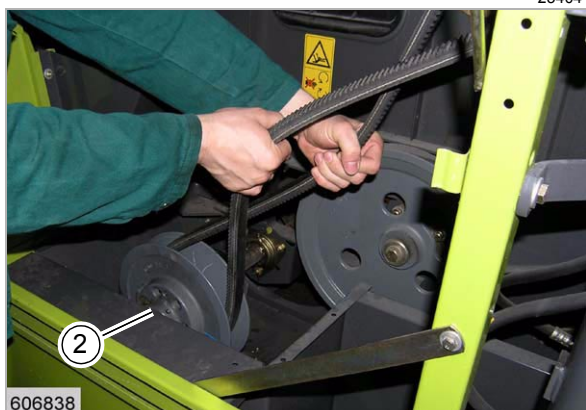
- Unscrew two bolts (4) from bracket (3).
- Tension the belt (R7) manually until the spring-loaded variable-speed pulley (2) is fully spread.
- Remove belt (R7).



606837

93

23404



606838

94

23405

13.8.13 Installing belt (R7)

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 👁



WARNING:

Use of unpermissible spare parts or lubricants.

Machine damage or increased wear.

- Spare parts and lubricants must at least comply with the technical standards required by the manufacturer of the implement!
- The use of genuine CLAAS spare parts and lubricants is recommended.

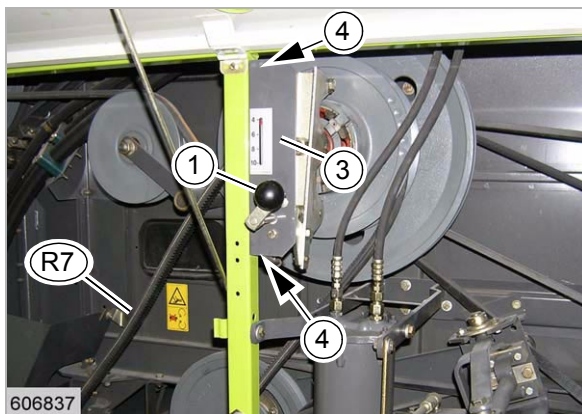


Warning!

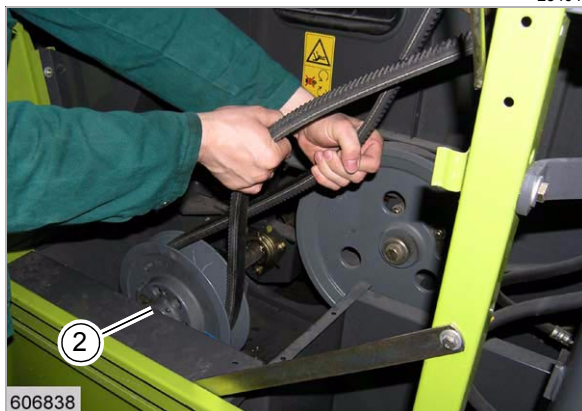
Pinch points during assembly work.

Bruises of limbs.

- Keep limbs out of the hazard area.
- Use suitable tools.



95

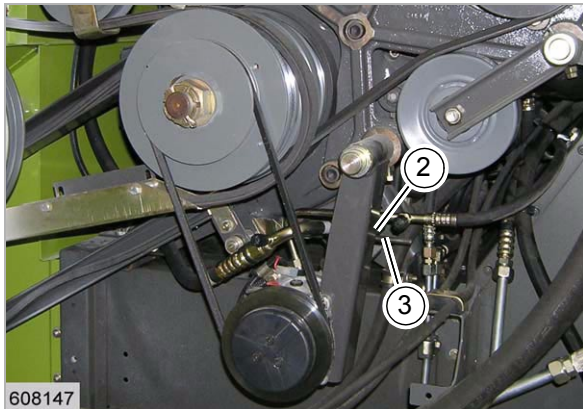


96

- Clean the grooves or the contact faces of pulleys to be free from grease and rust.
- First put the belt (R7) on the spring-loaded variable speed pulley (2).
- Pull the belt into the variable-speed pulley (2) until it is fully spread.
- Install belt (R7) on the upper variable-speed pulley.
- Bolt down bracket (3) with bolts (4).
- Check / adjust the fan speed display. 👁
- Let the variable-speed drive run up and down through its entire range several times, then check belt tension.

13.8.14 Adjusting belt (R12)

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 
- Turn nuts (2) and (3) until belt (R12) is tensioned.
- Lock nuts (2) and (3).
- Carry out a test run and check belt tension.

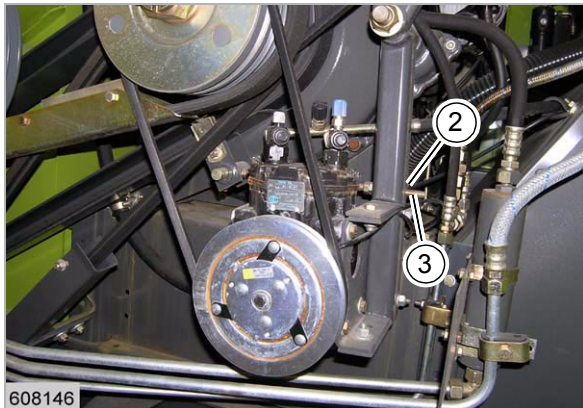


608147

Sanden compressor

19303

97



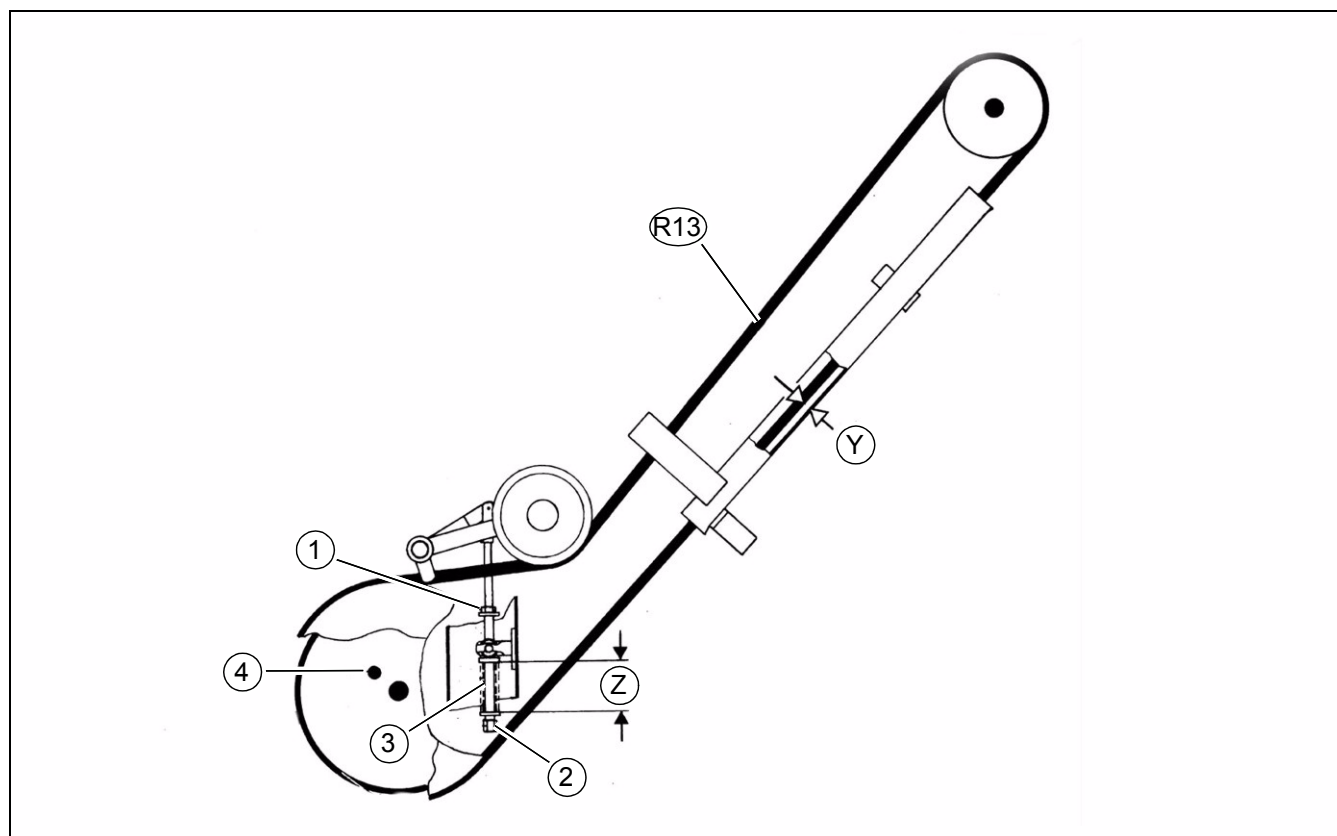
608146

York compressor

19297

98

13.8.15 Adjusting belt (R13)



30057

99

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 

Adjust the spring-loaded cylinder (3):

- Loosen lock nut (1). Adjust spring guide tube (2) so that spring (3) is slightly coil-bound. Then turn the spring guide tube 2 mm back. The spring must then have a length (Z) of approx. 87 mm.

Adjusting the belt guide:

- Adjust the guide so that there is 13 mm clearance (Y) between the back of the belt and the belt guide along its full length.
- Carry out a test run and check belt tension.

13.8.16 Removing belt (R14)

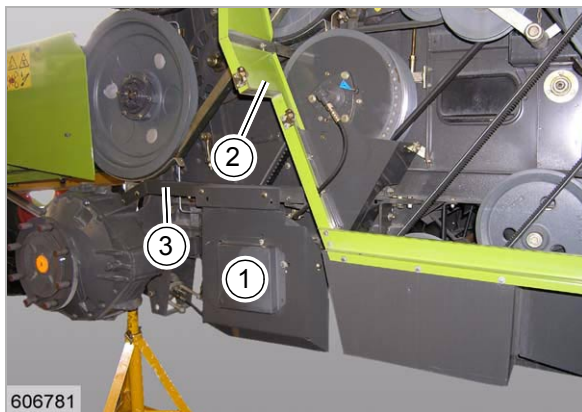
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 
- Operate the variable-speed drive to the full speed position while the engine is running.

**Warning!**

Pinch points during assembly work.

Bruises of limbs.

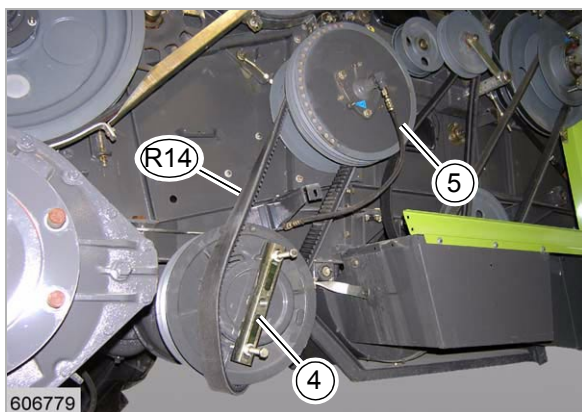
- Keep limbs out of the hazard area.
- Use suitable tools.

**100**

23402

**101**

23401

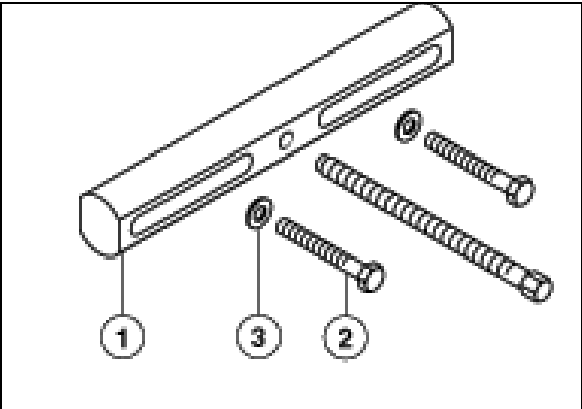
**102**

23403

- Securely support the machine on the left-hand side. Remove the left-hand traction wheel.
- Remove guards (1 and 2) as well as angle iron (3).

- Remove belt (R13).

- Screw special tool (4) on the variable-speed pulley.
- Push the lever on the hydraulic control unit to the "slow" position and at the same time push the hydraulically operated variable-speed pulley halves apart.



103

567

Environment!



Lubricants and fuels end up in the environment.

Environmental pollution.

- Lubricants and fuels must be collected and stored in suitable containers and disposed of in a way that is harmless to the environment and in accordance with existing anti-pollution regulations.

- Unscrew the hydraulic hose from hydraulic cylinder (5).
- Remove belt (R14).

Special tool 5

1	Puller bridge Part no. 00 0181 621 0
2	Hex. bolt M 12 x 200 ISO 40172 - 8.8 Part no. 00 0244 421 0
3	Washer 13 x 30 x 3 Part no. 00 0236 844 0

87716

13.8.17 Installing belt (R14)

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter.👁️

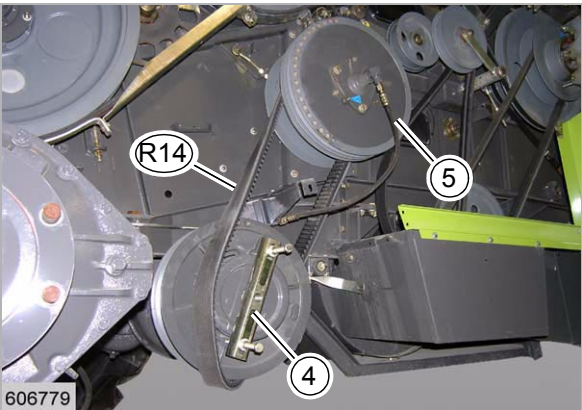


Warning!

Pinch points during assembly work.

Bruises of limbs.

- Keep limbs out of the hazard area.
- Use suitable tools.

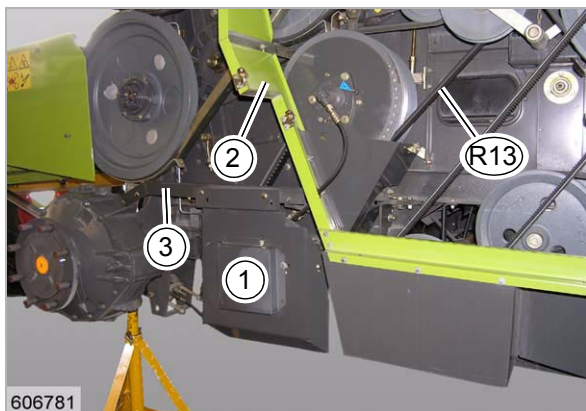


104

606779

23403

- Adjust belt (R14).👁️
- Install belt (R14).
- Remove special tool (4).
- Install belt (R13).
- Screw on hydraulic hose (5).



606781

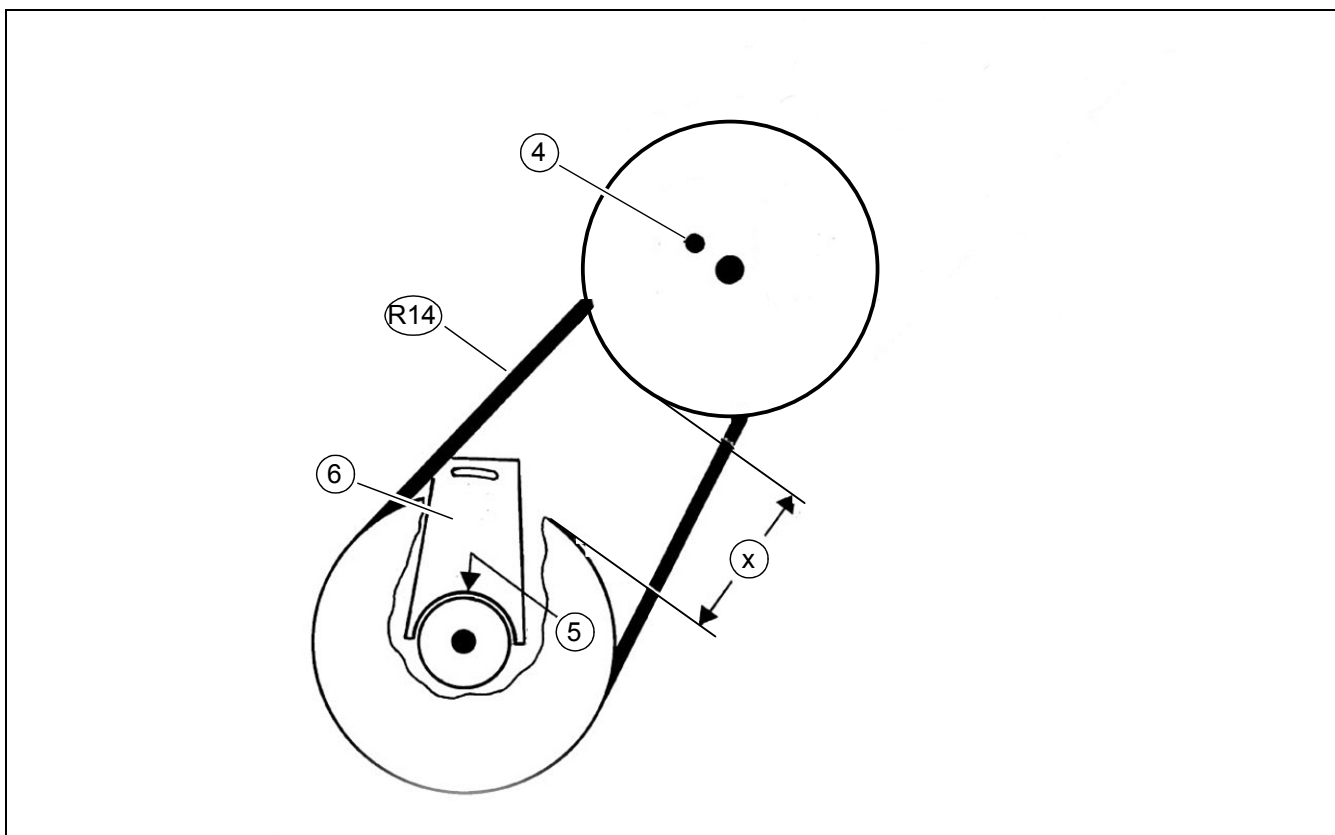
105

23402

- Fit guards (1 and 2) and angle iron (3).
- Install drive wheel on the left machine side.

13.8.18 Adjusting belt (R14)

87717



30056

106

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter.



Warning!

Pinch points during assembly work.

Bruises of limbs.

- Keep limbs out of the hazard area.
- Use suitable tools.

Setting the ground drive variable-speed pulleys:

- The distance (X) between the variable-speed pulleys must be 280 mm.

67089

- Force the spring-loaded ground drive variable-speed pulley apart, using a special tool.
- Slacken the bolts that secure the gearbox housing. Adjust the gearbox housing up or down until measurement (X) has been obtained (provision for adjustment ± 3 mm). Retighten the bolts that secure the gearbox housing.
- Loosen support plate (6). Push down the plate to locate tightly against the transmission neck at (5), then tighten the bolts that secure the plate.
- Remove the special tool.
- Whenever the settings have been adjusted, make a functional test, check for proper adjustments and correct as required.

Note: The stop bolt (4) serves for limiting the maximum ground speed according to the German Regulations Authorizing the Use of Vehicles for Road Traffic.

87272

13.8.19 Removing belt (R42)

- Set variable speed drive to lowest speed.
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 👁

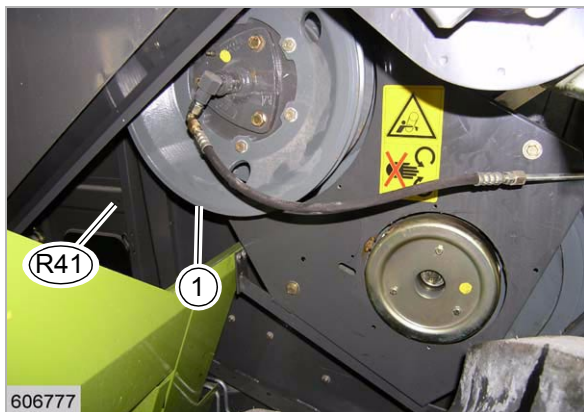


Danger!

Pinch points due to pre-loaded components.

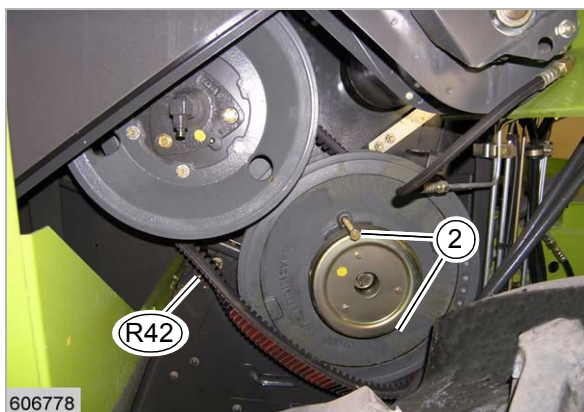
Consequences: Death or serious injuries

- Never move your hands between two pre-loaded components.
 - Use a special tool.
 - Avoid the hazard area.
- Remove guards.
 - Remove belt (R41) from pulley (1). 👁
 - Screw in special tool (2, part no. 00 0236 302 0, 2 pcs.) through the tapped holes of the front pulley half.
 - Screw in bolts (2) until the variable-speed drive is completely spread apart.
 - Remove belt (R42). 👁



107

23399



108

23400

87276

13.8.20 Installing belt (R42)

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 👁

**WARNING:**

Use of unpermissible spare parts or lubricants.

Machine damage or increased wear.

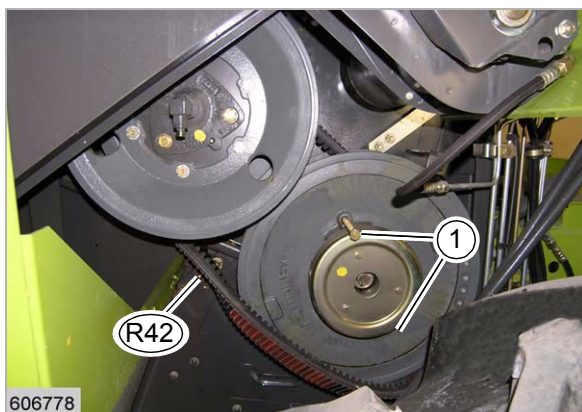
- Spare parts and lubricants must at least comply with the technical standards required by the manufacturer of the implement!
- The use of genuine CLAAS spare parts and lubricants is recommended.

**Danger!**

Pinch points due to pre-loaded components.

Consequences: Death or serious injuries

- Never move your hands between two pre-loaded components.
 - Use a special tool.
 - Avoid the hazard area.
-
- Clean the grooves or the contact faces of pulleys to be free from grease and rust.
 - Pull belt (R42) firmly between the pulley halves and unscrew the bolts (1).
 - Continue turning the variable speed drive about 2 revolutions.
 - Adjust belt (R42). 👁
-
- Install belt (R41). 👁
 - Fit the guards.
 - Let the variable-speed drive run up and down through its entire range several times, then check belt tension.
 - Adjust the threshing drum speed. 👁

**109****110**

13.9 Hydraulic system

86485

13.9.1 Checking the hydraulic system oil level

- Park the machine on level ground.
- Lower the feeder as far as possible. 👁
- Lower the reel all the way. 👁
- Swing in unloading auger tube. 👁
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 👁



Caution!

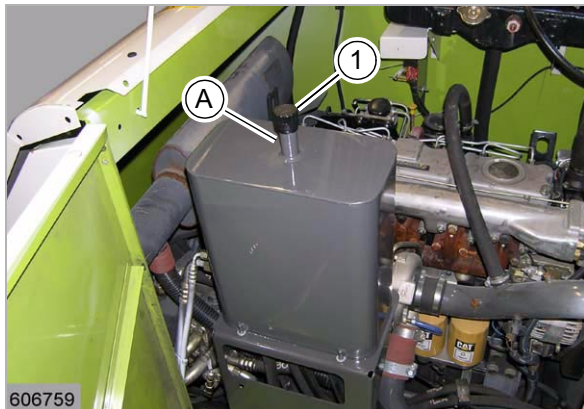
Machine operation with unpermitted or polluted lubricants.

Machine damage.

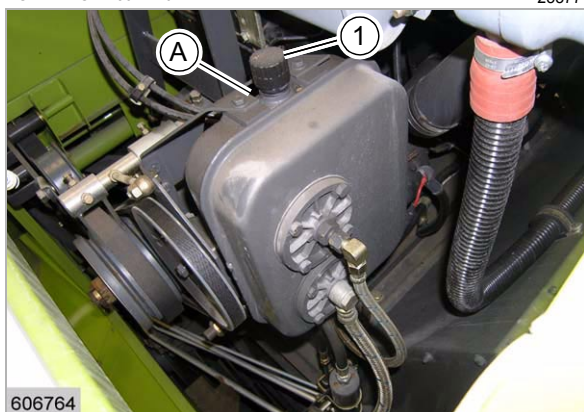
- Ensure a clean environment.
 - Use suitable and clean tools.
 - Use permitted lubricants. 👁
 - Lubricants must be free of pollution.
- Read the oil level on the gauge rod (1).

The oil must not be higher than the FULL mark (maximum) and must not drop below the SAFE mark (minimum) on the oil dipstick.

- If necessary, refill with oil at (A).



111



112

86487

13.9.2 Changing the hydraulic system oil / oil filter / fresh air filter element DOMINATOR 150 / 140

- Park the machine on level ground.
- Lower the feeder as far as possible. 👁
- Lower the reel all the way. 👁
- Swing in unloading auger tube. 👁

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 

**Warning!**

Contact with hot liquids or machine parts.

Danger of burns

- Wear suitable protective clothing.
- Let liquids or machine parts cool down.
- Comply with instructions.

**Environment!**

Lubricants and fuels end up in the environment.

Environmental pollution.

- Lubricants and fuels must be collected and stored in suitable containers and disposed of in a way that is harmless to the environment and in accordance with existing anti-pollution regulations.

**WARNING:**

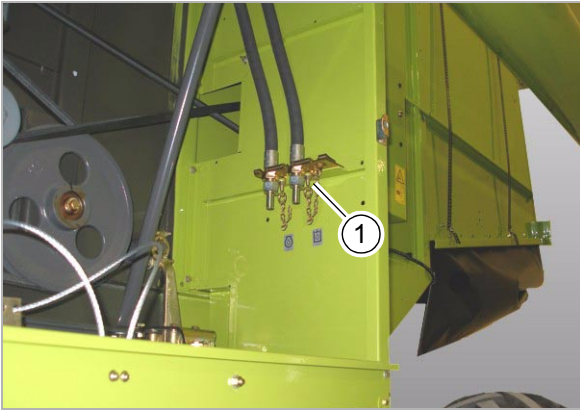
Use of unpermissible spare parts or lubricants.

Machine damage or increased wear.

- Spare parts and lubricants must at least comply with the technical standards required by the manufacturer of the implement!
- The use of genuine CLAAS spare parts and lubricants is recommended.

- Identify the position of the hydraulic oil drain nozzle in the table and on the machine. The oil drain nozzle is marked on the machine by a hydraulic oil decal.

Engine type	DOMINATOR			Position of drain hose	
	150	140	130	Engine oil 	Hydraulic oil 
CATERPILLAR C-6.6	•			left machine side, inside	left machine side, outside
CATERPILLAR C-6.6		•		left machine side, inside	left machine side, outside
CATERPILLAR C-6.6			•	left machine side, inside	on the steering cylinder
CATERPILLAR 3056 E	•			right machine side	left machine side, inside
CATERPILLAR 3056 E		•		right machine side	left machine side, inside
CATERPILLAR 3056 E			•	right machine side	on the steering cylinder
PERKINS 1006-6T			•	right machine side	on the steering cylinder

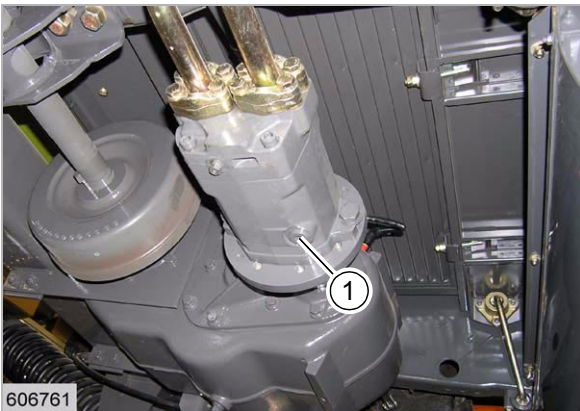


left machine side

29543

113

- Fit a suitable hose on the hydraulic oil drain nozzle.
- Slacken off nut (1) slightly.
- Collect the used oil in a sufficiently large container.
- Tighten nut (1).
- Remove hose.

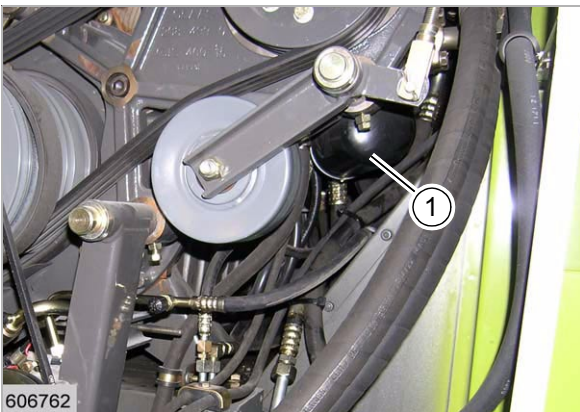


606761

23379

114

- Unscrew bolt (1).
- Collect the used oil in a sufficiently large container.
- Turn in screw (1).

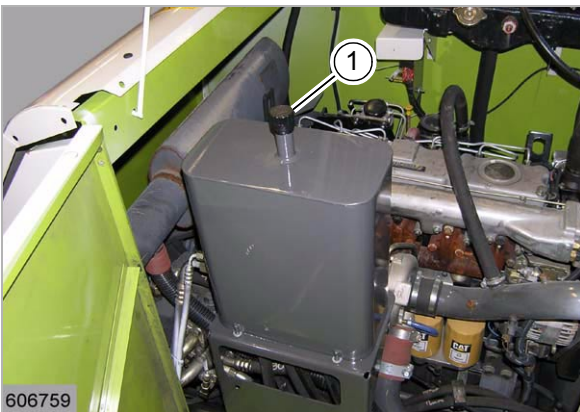


606762

23380

115

- Remove oil filter (1).
Collect escaping oil in a suitable container.
- Screw on a new oil filter.



606759

23377

116



Caution!

Machine operation with unpermitted or polluted lubricants.

Machine damage.

- Ensure a clean environment.
- Use suitable and clean tools.
- Use permitted lubricants. 
- Lubricants must be free of pollution.

- Unscrew fresh air filter element (1).
- Fill new hydraulic oil into the oil tank.

Use a filling screen!

Fill in hydraulic oil slowly!

- Correct oil level.

- Start the machine.
- Start the diesel engine. 
- Let diesel engine run at min. no-load speed for about 10 seconds.
- Stop the diesel engine. 
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 
- Check the hydraulic tank oil level and top up if necessary. 
- Repeat this process until topping up is not necessary any more following a check.
- Start the machine.
- Start the diesel engine. 
- Set gearbox to neutral. (No gear engaged). 
- Let machine run with the ground speed control lever halfway actuated for about 2 minutes in both directions of travel.
- Stop the diesel engine. 
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 
- Check the hydraulic system oil level and top up if necessary. 
- Screw on a new fresh air filter element (1).

86525

13.9.3 Changing the hydraulic system oil / oil filter / fresh air filter element DOMINATOR 130

To change the hydraulic oil of the lift hydraulic system, turn the steering wheel to pump the oil out of the hydraulic oil tank with the engine stopped.

- Park the machine on level ground.
- Lower the feeder as far as possible. 
- Lower the reel all the way. 
- Swing in unloading auger tube. 
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 



Warning!

Contact with hot liquids or machine parts.

Danger of burns

- Wear suitable protective clothing.
- Let liquids or machine parts cool down.
- Comply with instructions.



Environment!

Lubricants and fuels end up in the environment.

Environmental pollution.

- Lubricants and fuels must be collected and stored in suitable containers and disposed of in a way that is harmless to the environment and in accordance with existing anti-pollution regulations.

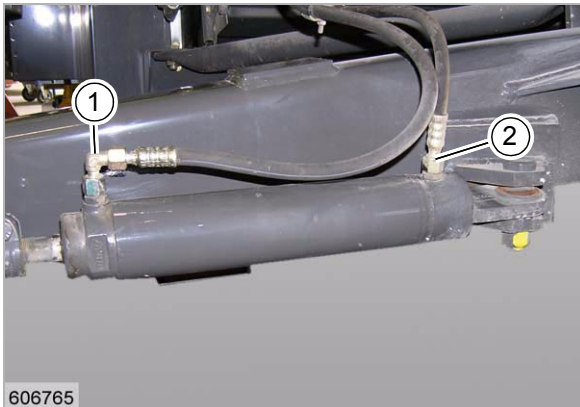


WARNING:

Use of unpermissible spare parts or lubricants.

Machine damage or increased wear.

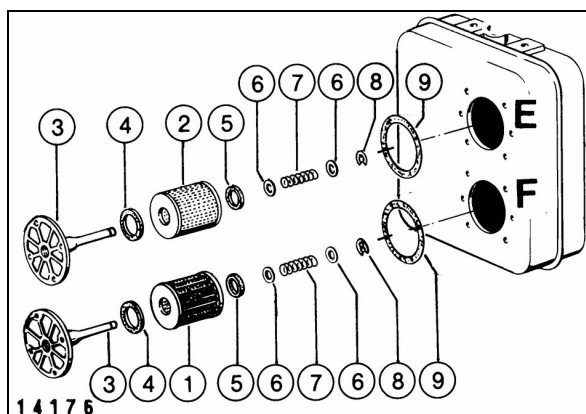
- Spare parts and lubricants must at least comply with the technical standards required by the manufacturer of the implement!
- The use of genuine CLAAS spare parts and lubricants is recommended.



117

23383

- Unscrew one hydraulic hose (1 or 2) from the steering cylinder and place the end into a sufficiently large container.
- Collect the used oil in a sufficiently large container.
- Turn the steering wheel in the appropriate direction until all the oil has been pumped out of the system.
- Connect the hydraulic hose to the steering cylinder again.



118

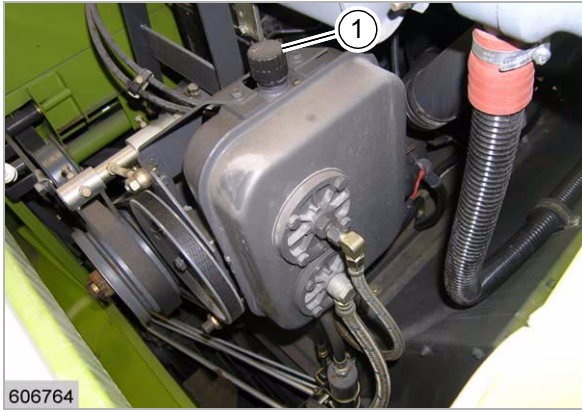


119

- Unscrew hydraulic lines at position (A).
- Unscrew filter head (3), remove lock washer (8) and screen filter (1).
- Wash out the screen insert element (1) with benzene and blow out with compressed air.
Always replace damaged screen filters and seals (9).
- Fit cleaned screen filter (1) and lock washer (8) on filter head (3) and screw it on.
- Unscrew filter head (3), remove lock washer (8) and paper filter cartridge (2).
Always replace paper filter cartridge (2) and seals.
- Fit new paper filter cartridge (2) and lock washer (8) on filter head (3) and screw it on.
- Screw on hydraulic lines at position (A).

Hydraulic oil filter, exploded view

1	Screen insert
2	Paper filter cartridge / screen insert
3	Filter head
4	Felt ring
5	Felt ring
6	Washer 13
7	Compression spring
8	Lock washer
9	Gasket



120



Caution!

Machine operation with unpermitted or polluted lubricants.

Machine damage.

- Ensure a clean environment.
- Use suitable and clean tools.
- Use permitted lubricants. 👁
- Lubricants must be free of pollution.

- Unscrew fresh air filter element (1).
- Fill new hydraulic oil into the oil tank.

Use a filling screen!

Fill in hydraulic oil slowly!

- Correct oil level.
 - Start the machine.
 - Start the diesel engine. 👁
 - Let the diesel engine run at lower maximum no-load speed.
 - Turn the steering wheel up to the stop in both directions several times.
 - Stop the diesel engine. 👁
 - Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 👁
 - Check the hydraulic tank oil level and top up if necessary. 👁
 - Repeat this process until topping up is not necessary any more following a check.
- Screw on a new fresh air filter element (1).

13.10 Electric system / Electronics

85765

13.10.1 Checking the battery electrolyte level

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 👁



Environment!

Handling of used batteries.

Environmental pollution.

- Dispose of old batteries in a way that is harmless to the environment and in accordance with existing anti-pollution regulations.

The battery can be accessed from the discharge and cooling system compartment.



608160

121

23496



Danger!

Incorrect handling of batteries.

Death or serious injury.

- Be careful with battery gases, they are highly explosive.
- Avoid sparks and naked flames in the vicinity of a battery!
- Remove the covers (vent caps) when recharging the battery to prevent the accumulation of highly explosive gases.
- Be careful when handling battery acids, they are caustic.

- Unscrew all covers (1).
- Check electrolyte level.

The electrolyte level must be about 10 mm above the inside plates.

- Top up distilled water if required.
- Fit all covers (1).
- Fit safety device.
- Close the cover.

13.11 Cab / Operator's platform

86809

13.11.1 Cleaning / changing the cab air filter

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 



Warning!

Incorrectly installed or defective air filter.

Dust getting into the cab.

Dust is inhaled and causes damage to your health.

- Ensure tight seat of filter.
- Replace defective air filters immediately.

- Use a suitable ladder on the right machine side.

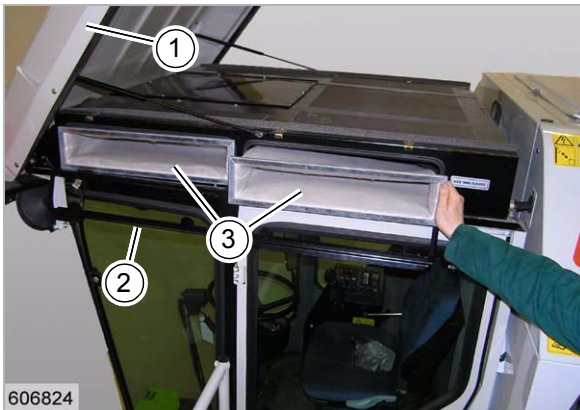


Danger!

Danger of falling!

Death or serious injuries!

- Use a suitable ladder.



122

23853

- Open cab roof (1).
- Open frame (2).
- Remove filter (3).
- Clean filter surface by vacuum cleaning, knocking on it or blowing off with compressed air.
- Replace damaged filters and sealing profiles.
- Close cab roof (1).



123

29686

86833

13.11.2 Cleaning the cab recirculation air filter

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 
- Remove the recirculation air grille (1).
- Clean filter surface by vacuum cleaning, knocking on it or blowing off with compressed air.
- Replace damaged filters.
- Install recirculation air grille (1).

13.11.3 Cleaning the cab roof units

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 

**Note!**

Dirty units will have reduced heating and cooling capacity.

Uneconomic use of machine.

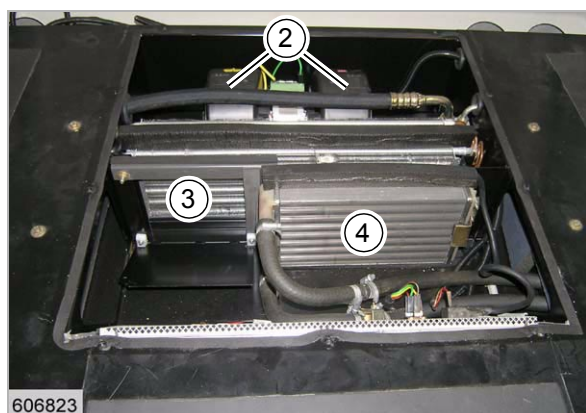
- Observe the specified maintenance intervals. 
- Clean the units more frequently when working in very dusty conditions.

**WARNING:**

Cleaning of sensitive components with excessive levels of compressed air or other cleaning means.

Component damage.

- Never direct the compressed air jet directly to sensitive components such as cooling fins or filter elements.
- Never use a steam jet cleaner for cleaning.

**124**

23854

- Open cab roof (1).
- Unscrew cover from cab.
- Blow out evaporator (3) and hot-water radiator (4) with compressed air (5 bar max.).
- Replace damaged seals (1) beneath the cover.
- Bolt down cover from cab.
- Close cab roof (1).

	Designation
2	Fan
3	Evaporator
4	Radiator



125

29685

13.11.4 Putting the air conditioner into operation

To prevent compressor damage on machines with an air conditioner, the air conditioner should be put back into operation after an extended standstill period.

This putting into operation ensures that the oil is distributed accordingly in the air conditioner.

- Start the diesel engine and let it run at idle speed. 👁
- Switch the air conditioner on.
- Set the temperature controller (1) to the lowest temperature.
- Let machine run in idle speed for about 5-10 minutes.

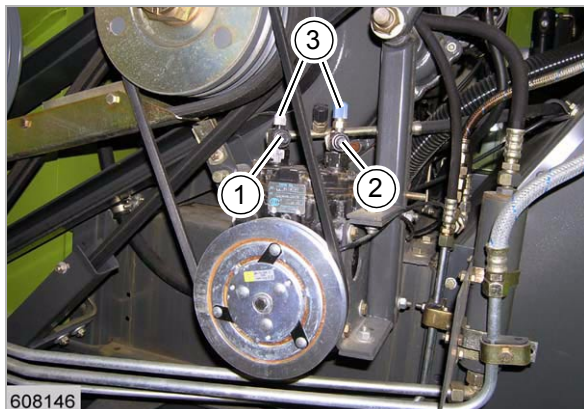
The air conditioner can now be operated again as usual.

86828

13.11.5 Precautions for protecting the air conditioner during extended standstill periods - DOMINATOR 130 with York compressor

- In the cold season, switch on the cab heater and heat up the cab to around +21 °C.
On combines with air conditioner without heater, possibly use an electric heater or similar to raise the cab temperature to +21 °C.
- Operate the air conditioner for five to ten minutes.
- Shut off the air conditioner and switch off the engine. 👁
- Close the compressor service valves (1 and 2). Screw on the caps (3) tightly.
- Ensure that the blade-type fuse (4) in the current-carrying line to the electro-magnetic clutch of the compressor is definitely removed.
Running the compressor with the service valves closed will result in damage to the compressor.
- Now fit the cap (5) so no water can penetrate into the compressor.

Note: The blade-type fuse is located between the engine and the grain tank.



126

19297



127

19298

86837

13.11.6 Checking the air conditioner refrigerant moisture saturation

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 👁



606815

128

23858

**Danger!**

Refrigerant.

Death or serious injury.

- Only have authorised and qualified work-shops carry out work on air conditioning systems.
- Never get in contact with refrigerants!
- Wear safety gloves and safety goggles.
- Do not weld any components of the refrigerant circuit and or in the immediate vicinity of any parts of the refrigerant circuit.
- Maximum ambient temperature for refrigerant is 80 °C.

- Check the moisture saturation at the receiver/dryer (1).

The moisture saturation of the receiver/dryer is exceeded when the blue ball in the sight glass has turned pink, or the orange ball has become colourless.

- If necessary, change refrigerant.
- If required, replace filter receiver drier (1).

13.11.7 Changing the air conditioner refrigerant

86839

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 👁

**Danger!**

Refrigerant.

Death or serious injury.

- Only have authorised and qualified work-shops carry out work on air conditioning systems.
- Never get in contact with refrigerants!
- Wear safety gloves and safety goggles.
- Do not weld any components of the refrigerant circuit and or in the immediate vicinity of any parts of the refrigerant circuit.
- Maximum ambient temperature for refrigerant is 80 °C.



23858

- Check refrigerant moisture saturation. 👁
- Suction refrigerant.
- If required, replace filter receiver drier (1).
- Top up with specified quantity of refrigerant.

13.12 Feeder unit

13.12.1 Cleaning the feed rake conveyor retainers

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 👁

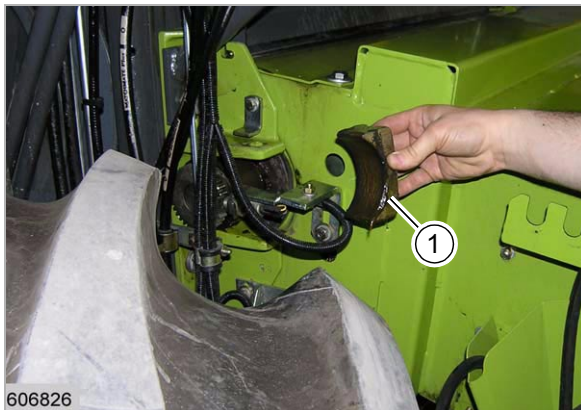


Caution!

Machine operation with unpermitted or polluted lubricants.

Machine damage.

- Ensure a clean environment.
- Use suitable and clean tools.
- Use permitted lubricants. 👁
- Lubricants must be free of pollution.



606826

130

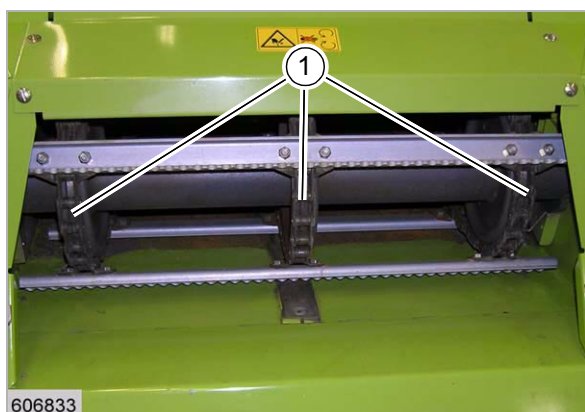
23849

The bearing blocks (1) in the coupling forks of the feed rake conveyor must be cleaned and graphite lubricant must be applied.

- Remove front attachment. 👁
- Support the feed rake conveyor at the front.
- Remove bearing block (1) on one side, clean it, refit it with graphite lubricant and secure with a pin.
- Repeat this procedure on the other side of the machine.

13.12.2 Adjusting the feeder chains

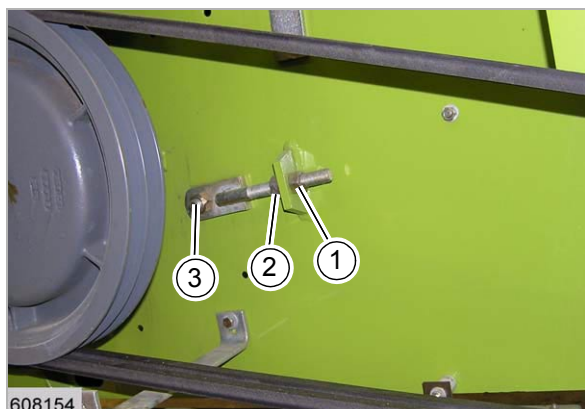
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 👁



131



132



133

- Check the tension of the feeder chains (1) on the feed rake conveyor through the flaps (2), with the front attachment installed.

The feeder chains are correctly adjusted if the third and fourth feeder bars from the front slightly touch the ground.

- If necessary adjust the feeder chains.

- Adjust the feeder chains.
 - Loosen nuts (1) and (3) on both sides.
 - Adjust nut (2) until the chains on both sides are uniformly tensioned.
 - After tensioning, tighten the nuts (1) and (3) on both sides.
 - Close flaps.

13.12.3 Adjusting the feeder chain slip clutch

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 



134

19597

The slip clutch (1) protects the feeder chain against overload.

**Note!**

Insufficient specialist knowledge for repair and maintenance work.

Machine damage.

- Only have authorised and qualified workshops carry out work on this component.

- Never tighten the bolts to such an extent that the slip clutch becomes locked and thereby fails to function as a safety device.

- Adjust the slip torque when the slip clutch is cold.

Slip torque = **220 Nm for springs with spacer tubes**

Slip torque = **430 Nm with double springs**

13.12.4 Checking the rasp plates on the feed rake conveyor

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 

The rasp plates wear due to the front attachment movements.

- Check wear of rasp plates.



135

22082

Condition	Task
Rasp plate protrude around 1 mm at the rear.	- Check rasp plates in the next maintenance interval.
The rasp plates are flush with the feed rake conveyor when installed in the first hole pattern.	- Relocate rasp plates and use second hole pattern.
The rasp plates are flush with the feed rake conveyor when installed in the second hole pattern.	- Install new rasp plates.

13.13 Threshing mechanism

13.13.1 Cleaning the stone trap

The stone trap collects stones and other foreign objects up to a certain size and thus protects the threshing mechanism against damage.

- Raise the feeder unit all the way. 
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 



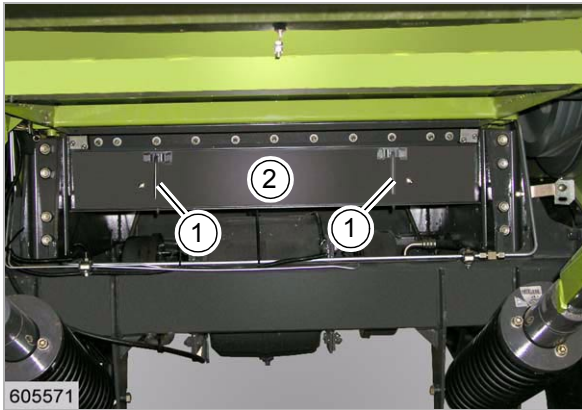
Danger!

The front attachment, reel and feeder unit may drop uncontrolled.

Death or serious injuries!

- Apply safety locks. 
- Keep a safe distance from the hazard area.

- Open the latch (1) and remove the flap (2).
- Clean the stone trap.
- Install the flap and close the latch.



136

19603



137

19604

13.13.2 Cleaning the threshing mechanism

Especially when working in green and damp crops, the concave, the threshing drum and the preparation floor can quickly become clogged with dirt.

A large inspection hole facilitates inspection and cleaning after the flap (1) is removed.

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 



605568

138

19609

- Open cover (1).
- Clean the threshing concave, threshing drum and preparation floor.

**WARNING:**

Unbalance of the threshing drum.

Machine damage.

- Uniformly clean the rasp bars and cover plates from the inside.
-
- Uniformly clean the rasp bars and cover plates from the inside.
 - Close flap (1).

13.14 Separation

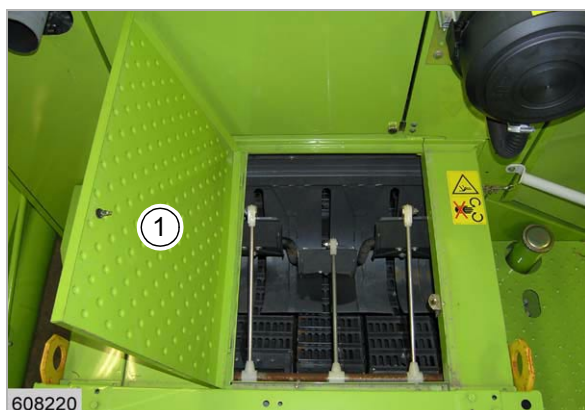
13.14.1 Cleaning the straw walker

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 

The straw walkers must be checked / cleaned when working with moist straw and straw with a high weed content. If necessary, remove dirt with an aid.

The straw walker house can be accessed through a flap (1) on the machine roof and through a flap (2) in the grain tank.

- Open flap.
- If necessary, remove dirt with an aid.



19626



19630

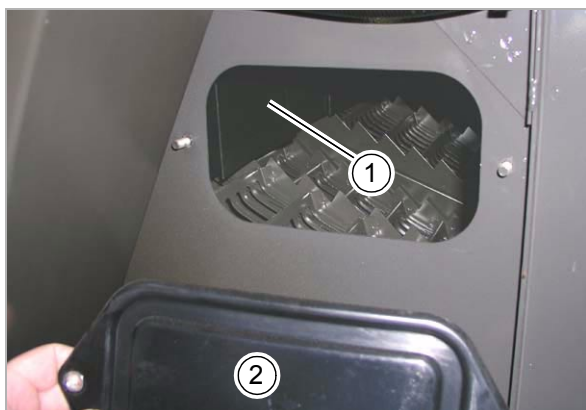
13.14.2 Checking the deflector curtain

A height-adjustable deflector curtain (1) located behind the impeller collects even the last deflected bouncing grains and directs them onto the front of the straw walker.

A worn or excessively high deflector curtain will cause the bouncing grains to be thrown too far to the rear of the straw walker and not be separated in time any more.

The deflector curtain (1) can be seen through the flaps (2) on the left and right side of the machine.

- Check flawless condition of deflector curtain and replace it if necessary.



141

28513



142

19623

13.14.3 Cleaning the separation throughput monitor sensor

82752

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 👁
- Clean sensor (1).



143

19647

13.15 Cleaning unit

82760

13.15.1 Cleaning the cleaning throughput monitor sensor

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 
- Clean sensor (1).



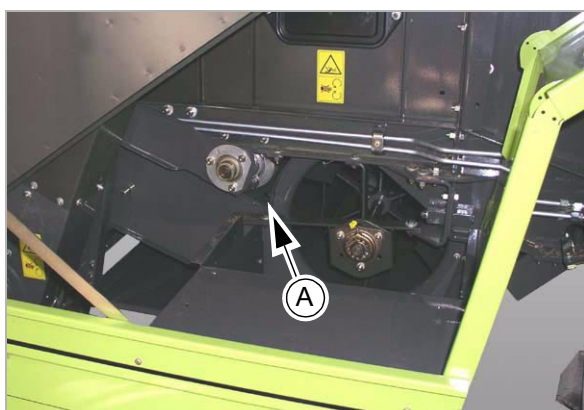
19648

144

13.15.2 Cleaning the fan

82772

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 
- Clean the space (A) above the fan.



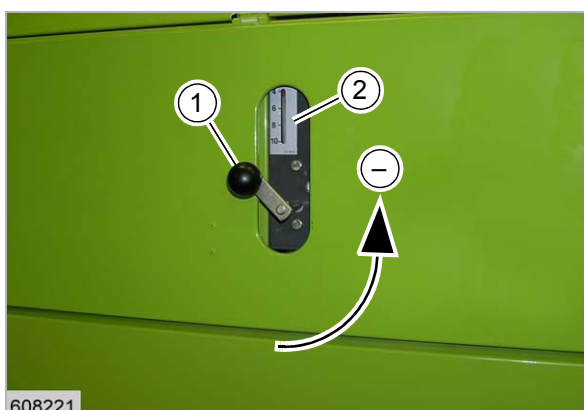
28594

145

13.15.3 Setting the fan speed gauge

82923

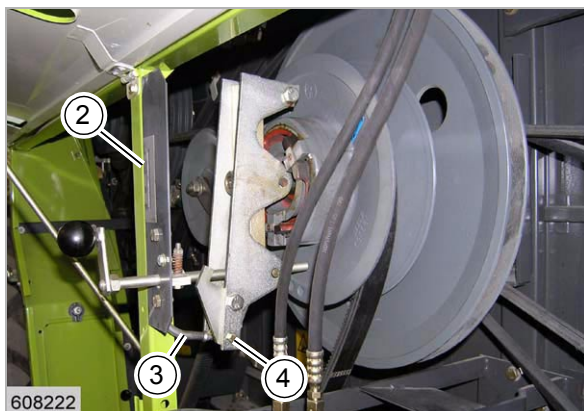
- Start the diesel engine. 
- Engage the threshing mechanism. 
- Set the diesel engine speed to fast idling speed. 
- Set fan speed to the lowest value with crank (1).
- Stop the threshing mechanism. 
- Stop the diesel engine. 



608221

19634

146



147

19635

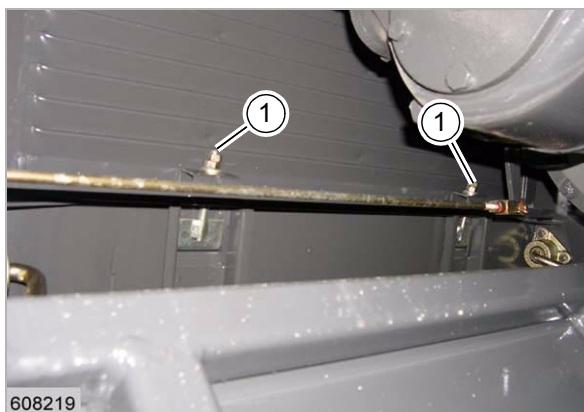
- Open the side panel.
- Loosen clamp (4) and adjust plastic indicator rod (3) so that the coloured ring points to the lowest number of the indicator (2).
- Close the side panel.

82782

13.15.4 Cleaning the stepped preparation floors

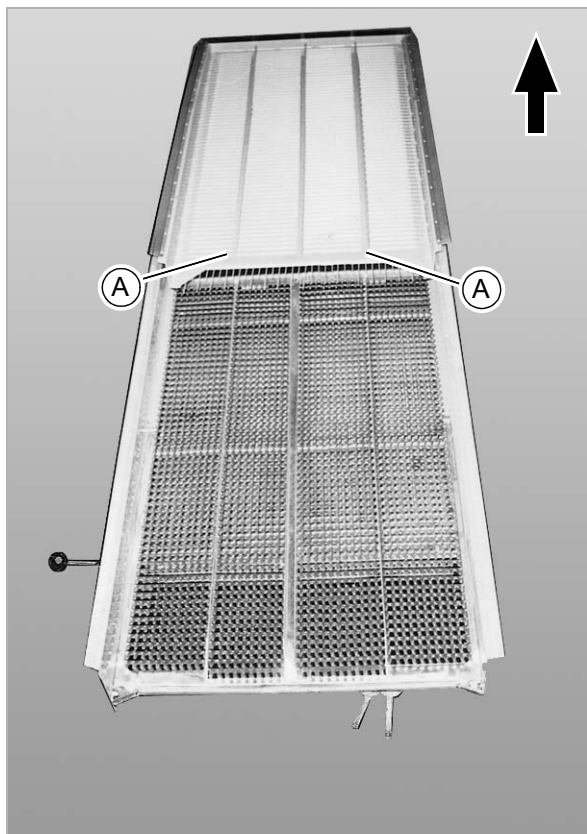
A heavily soiled preparation floor results in an uneven flow of the crop to the sieves, causing overloading of the sieves and resulting in grain losses. The stepped preparation floor sections of the preparation floor can be pulled out to the rear for cleaning work.

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 
- Loosen the nuts at the brackets (1).
- Detach the bracket (1).



148

19632



19633

149

- Suspend the stepped preparation floors at (A) and pull them out to the rear.
- Clean the stepped preparation floors.
- Clean the guides and push in the stepped preparation floors towards the front.
- Suspend bracket and bolt on with nuts.
- Lock nuts.



608225

19638

150

13.15.5 Cleaning the sieves

82787

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 
- Clean the sieves.

13.16 Grain delivery

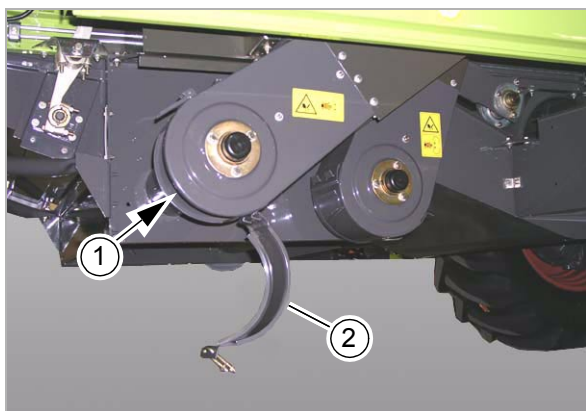
83199

13.16.1 Adjusting the returns elevator chain

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 
- Check the tension of the returns elevator chain (1) with the flap (2) open.

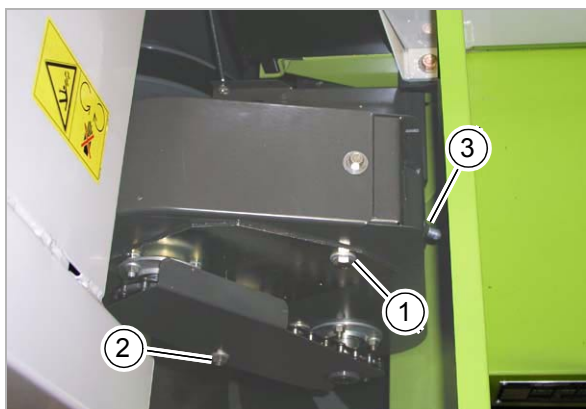
The returns elevator chain is correctly adjusted if the delivery plates do not scrape against the elevator housing and the chain can still be moved by hand on the side at the lower sprocket.

- If necessary, adjust the returns elevator chain.



151

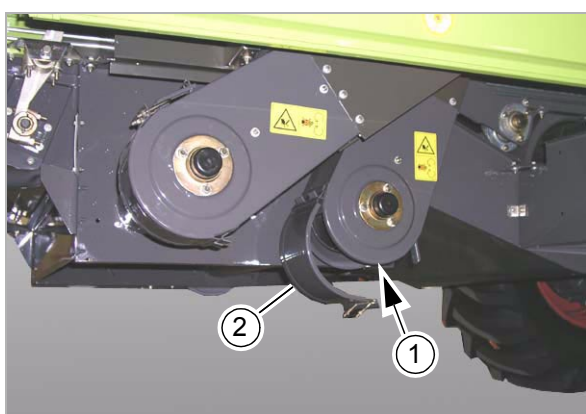
28687



152

28688

- Adjust the returns elevator chain.
 - Loosen the bolts (1) on both sides.
 - Loosen bolt (2) and relax the chain.
 - Adjust the nut (3) until the chain is tensioned.
 - After tensioning, tighten the bolts (1) on both sides.
 - Tension the chain with a block tensioner and tighten bolt (2).
 - Close the flap.



153

28689

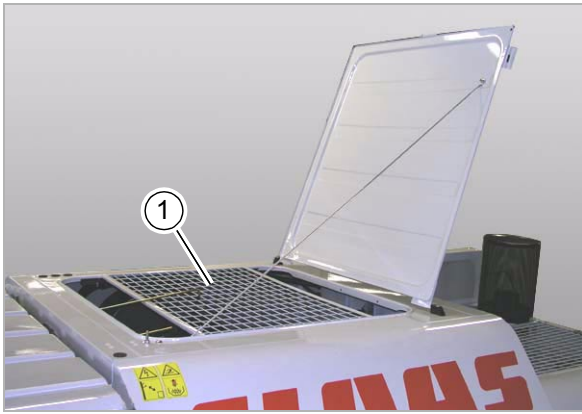
13.16.2 Adjusting the grain elevator chain

83207

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 
- Check the tension of the grain elevator chain (1) with the flap (2) open.

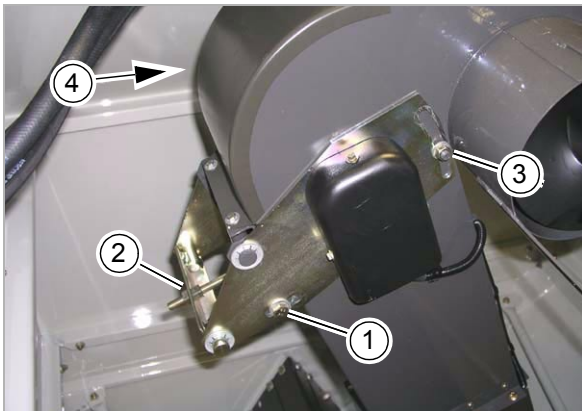
The grain elevator chain is correctly adjusted if the delivery plates do not scrape against the elevator housing and the chain can still be moved by hand on the side at the lower sprocket.

- If necessary, adjust the grain elevator chain.



154

29583



155

29584



Danger!

Danger of falling!

Death or serious injuries!

- Arrange for additional safety precautions.
- Only enter areas protected by railings.
- Areas originally without railings must be protected by additional railings.

- Open the grain tank cover and fold it open to the rear as far as possible.
- Remove guard (1).
- Adjust the grain elevator chain.
 - Loosen bolt (1).
 - Slacken off the nuts (3) on both sides.
 - Unscrew guard (4) and check filler auger chain.

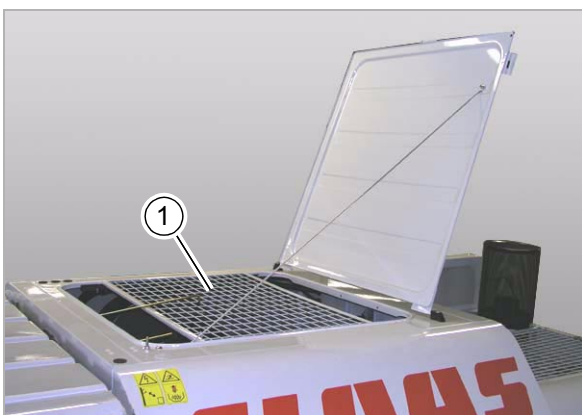


WARNING:

The maximum chain tension is exceeded.

Machine damage.

- Check filler auger chain tension.
- If necessary, slacken off filler auger chain before tensioning the grain elevator chain.
- Adjust nut (2) until the chain is tensioned.
- After tensioning, tighten bolt (1) and nut (2).
- If necessary, tension filler auger chain with the block tensioner and tighten bolt.
- Fit guard (4) and ensure a tight seat.
- Tighten the nuts (3) on both sides.
- Close the flap.
- Fit guard (1).
- Remove additional safety precautions.



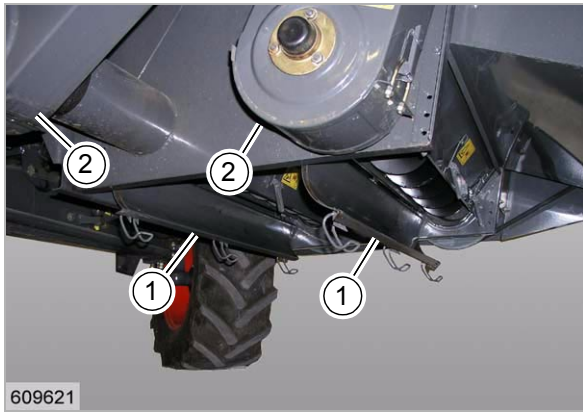
156

29583

83208

13.16.3 Cleaning the auger troughs

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter.

**157**

19651

**Warning!**

Sharp edges and pointed machine parts.

Slight injuries.

- Do not touch sharp edges of the auger flights.
- Wear safety gloves.

- Open the auger troughs (1).
- Clean the auger troughs.
- Close the auger troughs (1).
- Open the flaps (2) of the elevators.
- Clean the flaps.
- Close the flaps (2) of the elevators.

13.16.4 Cleaning the grain tank

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 👁



Warning!

Sharp edges and pointed machine parts.

Slight injuries.

- Do not touch sharp edges of the auger flights.
- Wear safety gloves.

- Open cover (1).
- Clean the grain tank.
- Close flap (1).



158

609627

19660

13.16.5 Adjusting the grain tank unloading tube support transport position

83151

- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the "Maintenance" chapter. 👁

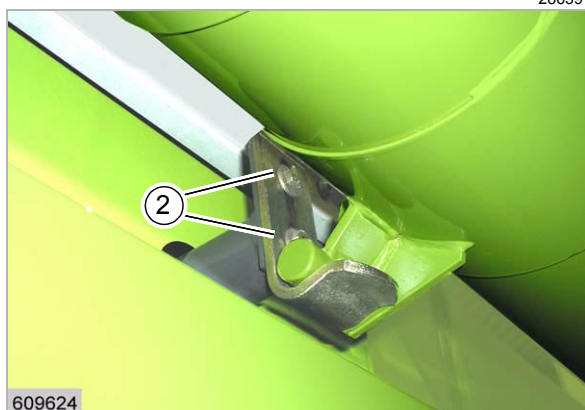
In the transport position the grain tank unloading tube rests on the support bracket (1).

- Adjust the support height with the two bolts (2) so that the unloading auger tube lies safely on the support.



159

28639



160

609624

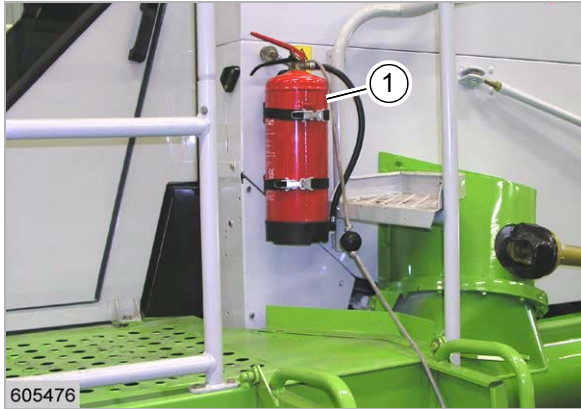
19659

13.17 Various components / Machine body**13.17.1 Checking the fire extinguisher**

The operational readiness of the fire extinguisher (1) must be checked according to the details given in the maintenance schedule.

The testing intervals may differ in other countries. In such cases, the information on the fire extinguisher is valid for the respective countries.

The date of manufacture or the date last checked is shown on the extinguisher.



605476

161

14530

14 Lubrication chart

14.1 Lubrication points

85078

14.1.1 General warnings Lubrication chart

The following general warnings are addressed in the sections below of this chapter by means of instructions.



Danger!

Always stop the engine before carrying out any work on the machine.

Moving machine parts and / or unexpected machine movement.

Death or serious injury.

- Diesel engine OFF.
- Apply parking brake.
- Remove the ignition key.
- Remove key of battery isolating switch.
- Wait for machine parts which run on have come to a complete halt.
- Secure machine by wheel chocks.
- Ensure that the machine cannot be started by any third persons.



Danger!

The front attachment, reel and feeder unit may drop uncontrolled.

Death or serious injuries!

- Apply safety locks.
- Keep a safe distance from the hazard area.

5009

14.1.2 Lubricants

Lubricants used on the machine and on the front attachment are subdivided into grease and chain oil.

Grease

Only use brand-name grease!

CLAAS brand-name grease:

AGRIGREASE EP 2

EP 2 Grease DIN 51502:

KP2K-25

NLGI2

AGRIGREASE LC 00/000

DIN 51502:

MP 00/000K-45

NLGI 00/000

Chain lubrication oil

Use only chain lubrication oil based on rape oil!

14.1.3 Greasing cycles

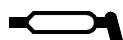
- Observe the general warnings at the beginning of the Lubrication chart chapter. 

Grease point number	Working hours					Remark
	10	50	100	250	500	
1	•					
2	•					Option
3	•					Option
4		•				
5		•				
6		•				
7		•				
8		•				
9			•			
10			•			
11			•			For better grease distribution, actuate the variable speed drive several times.
12			•			
13			•			
14			•			For better grease distribution, actuate the variable speed drive several times.
15			•			
16			•			For better grease distribution, actuate the variable speed drive several times.
17			•			For better grease distribution, actuate the variable speed drive several times.
18			•			
19			•			
20			•			
21			•			
22			•			
23			•			
24			•			Option
25			•			
26			•			

Grease point number	Working hours					Remark
	10	50	100	250	500	
27			•			For better grease distribution, actuate the variable speed drive several times.
28			•			For better grease distribution, actuate the variable speed drive several times.
29					•	Option
30					•	
31					•	
32					•	
33					•	
34					•	
35					•	
36					•	Option
37					•	Option
38					•	Option

Lubricant symbols in figures

The following symbols are used in figures:

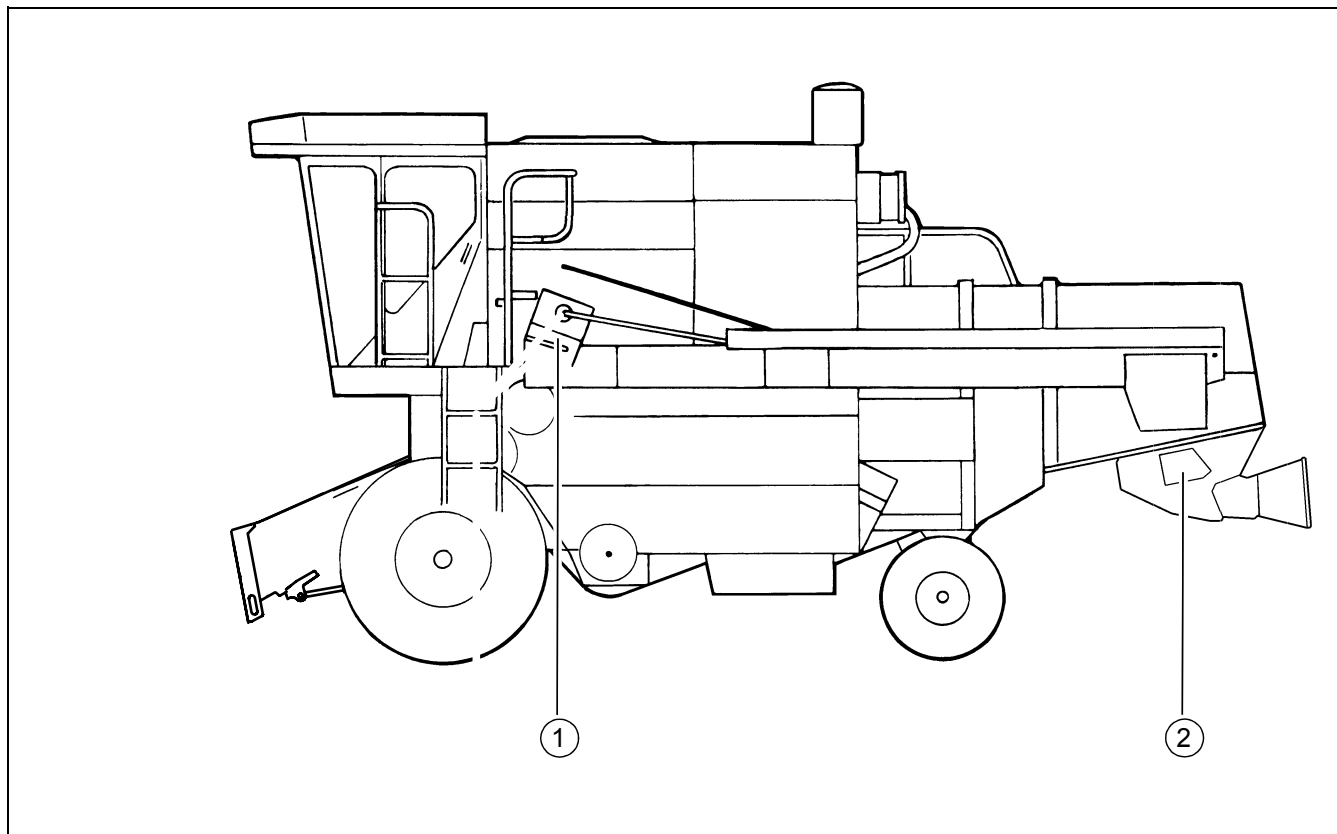


Lubricate the lubrication point.
For grease see the lubricants chart.



Lubricate the lubrication point.
For chain lubrication oil see the lubricants chart.

14.1.4 Lubrication points - 10 h on the left



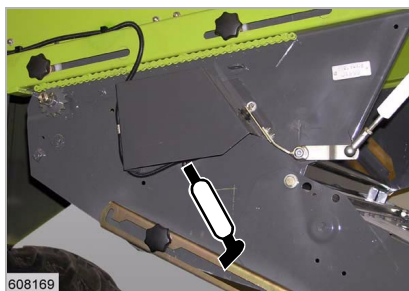
30113



606168

30114

1

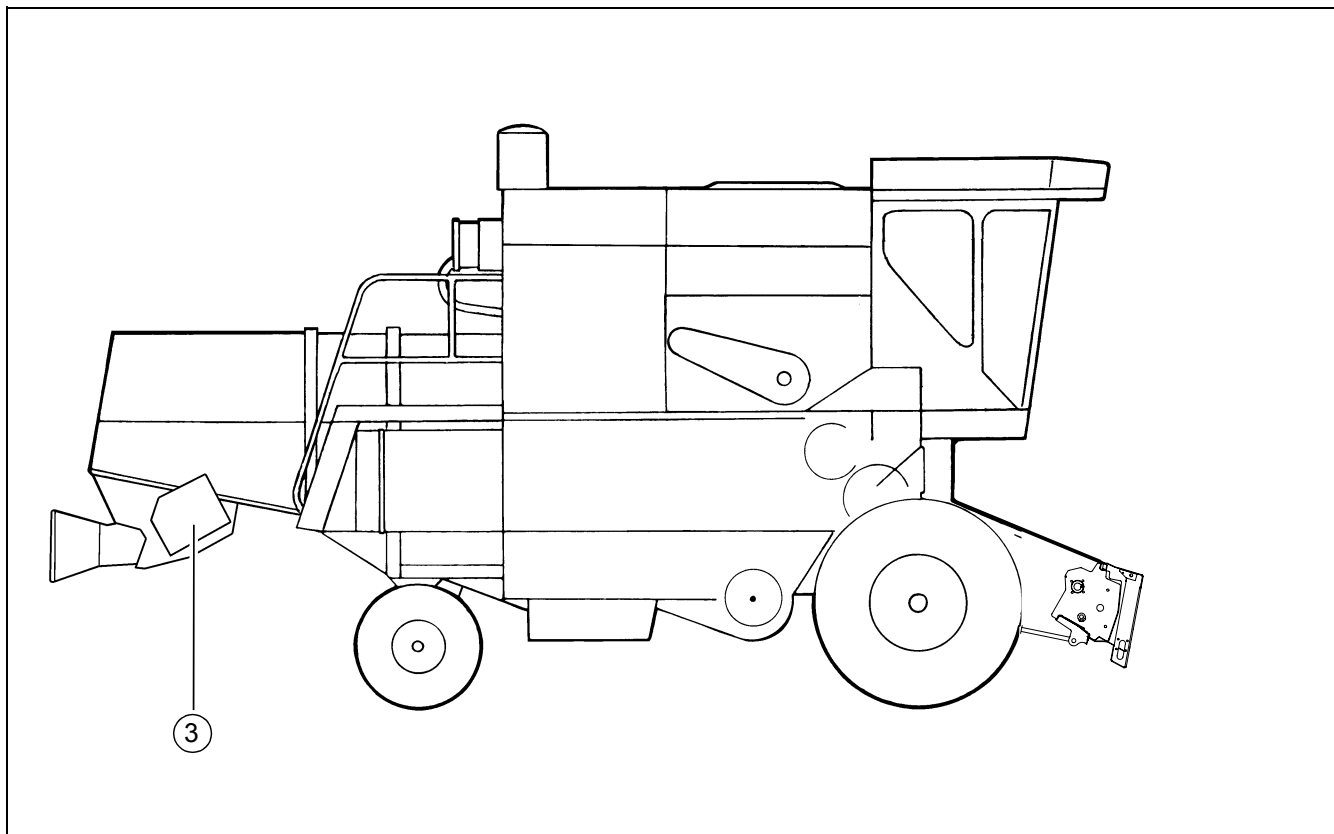


608169

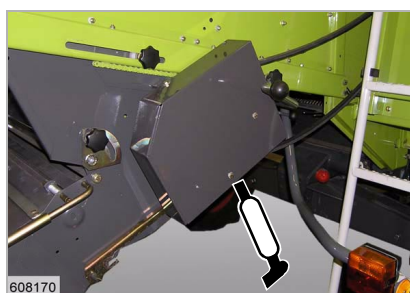
30115

2

14.1.5 Lubrication points - 10 h on the right



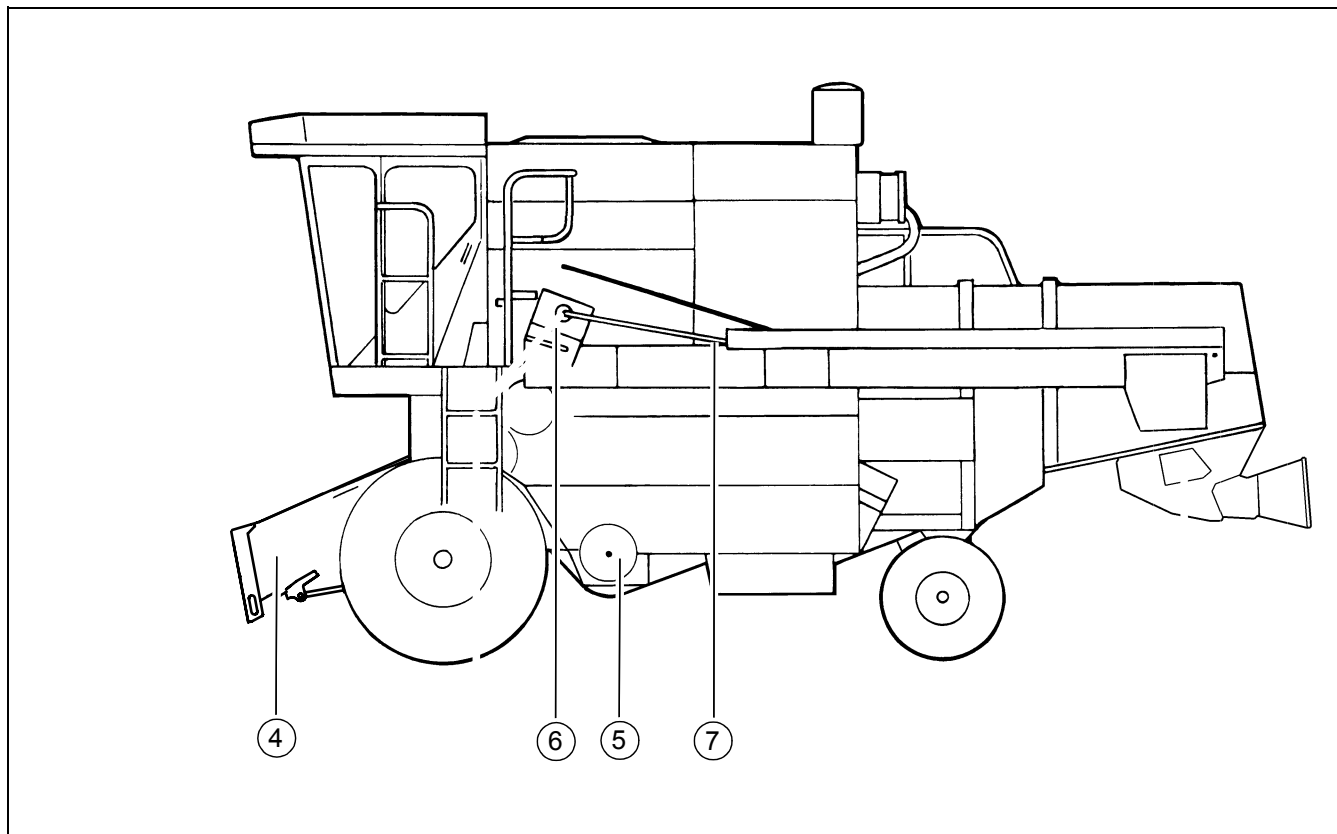
30112



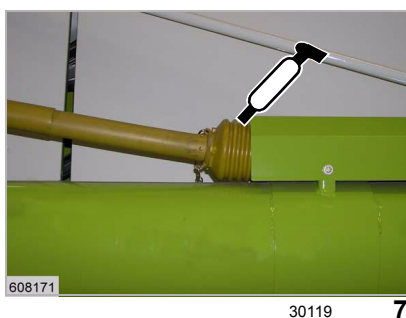
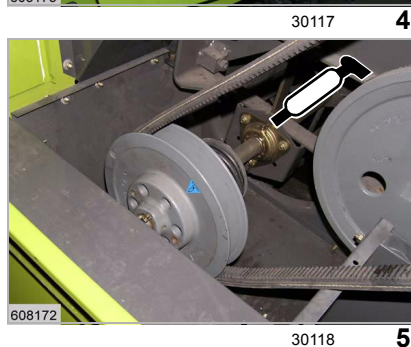
30116

3

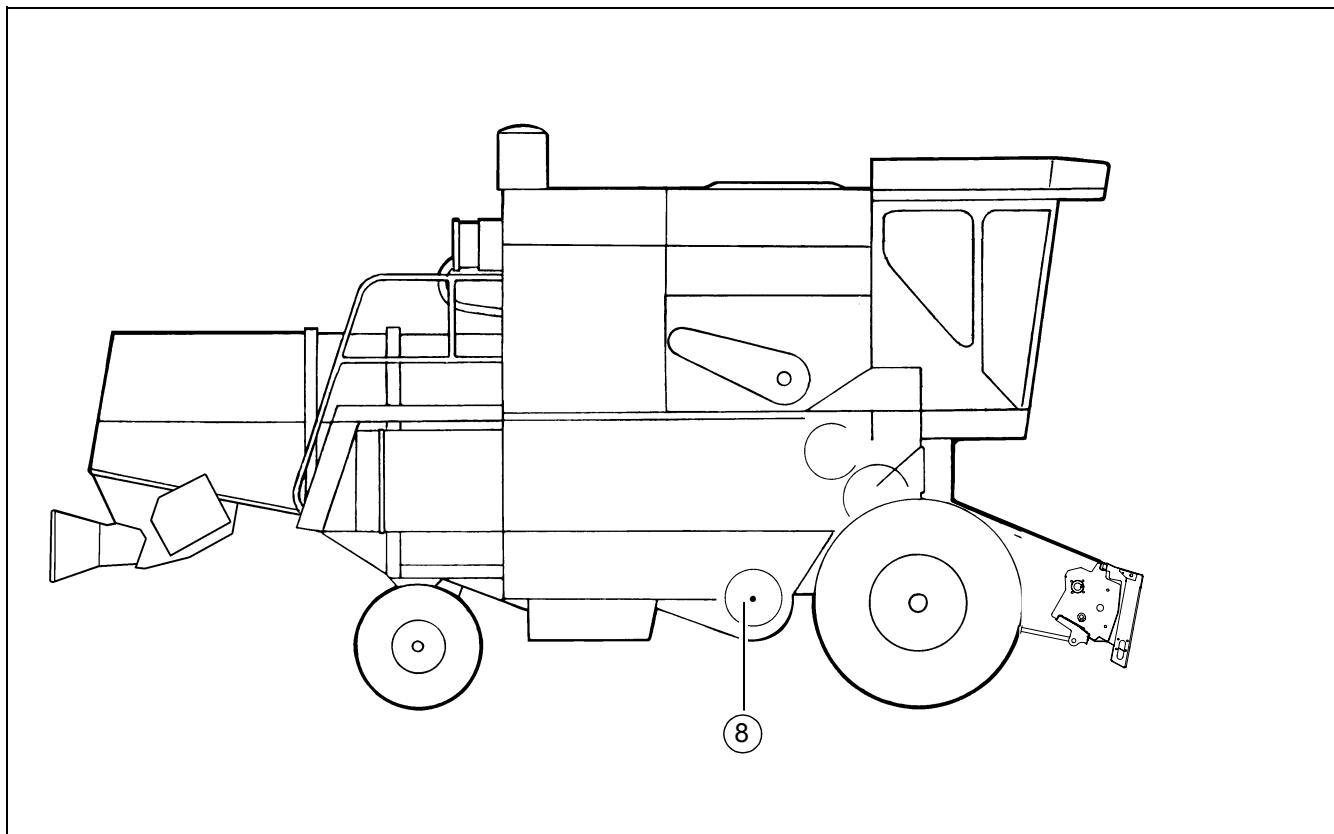
14.1.6 Lubrication points - 50 h on the left



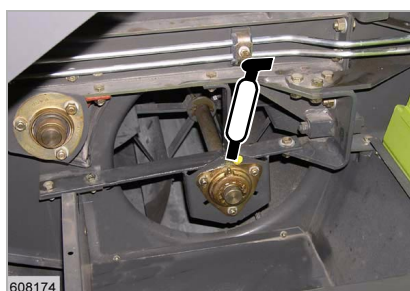
30113



14.1.7 Lubrication points - 50 h on the right



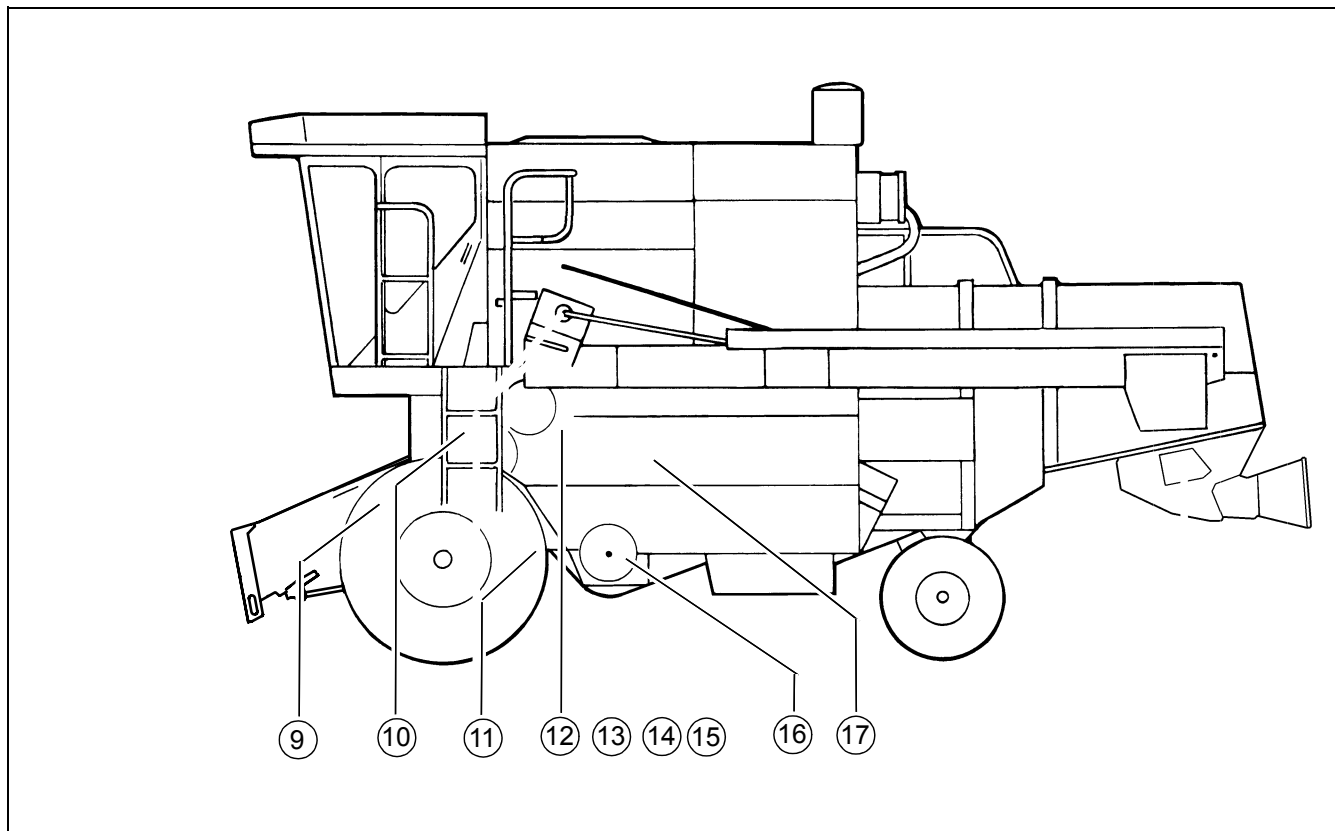
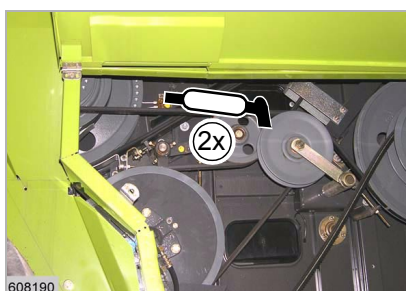
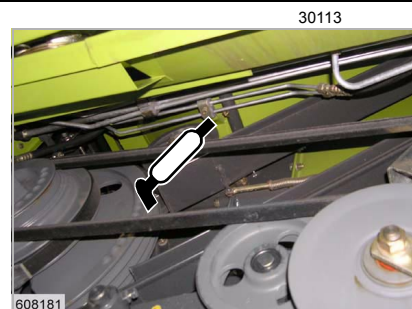
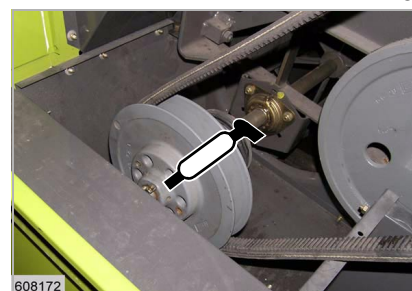
30112



30120

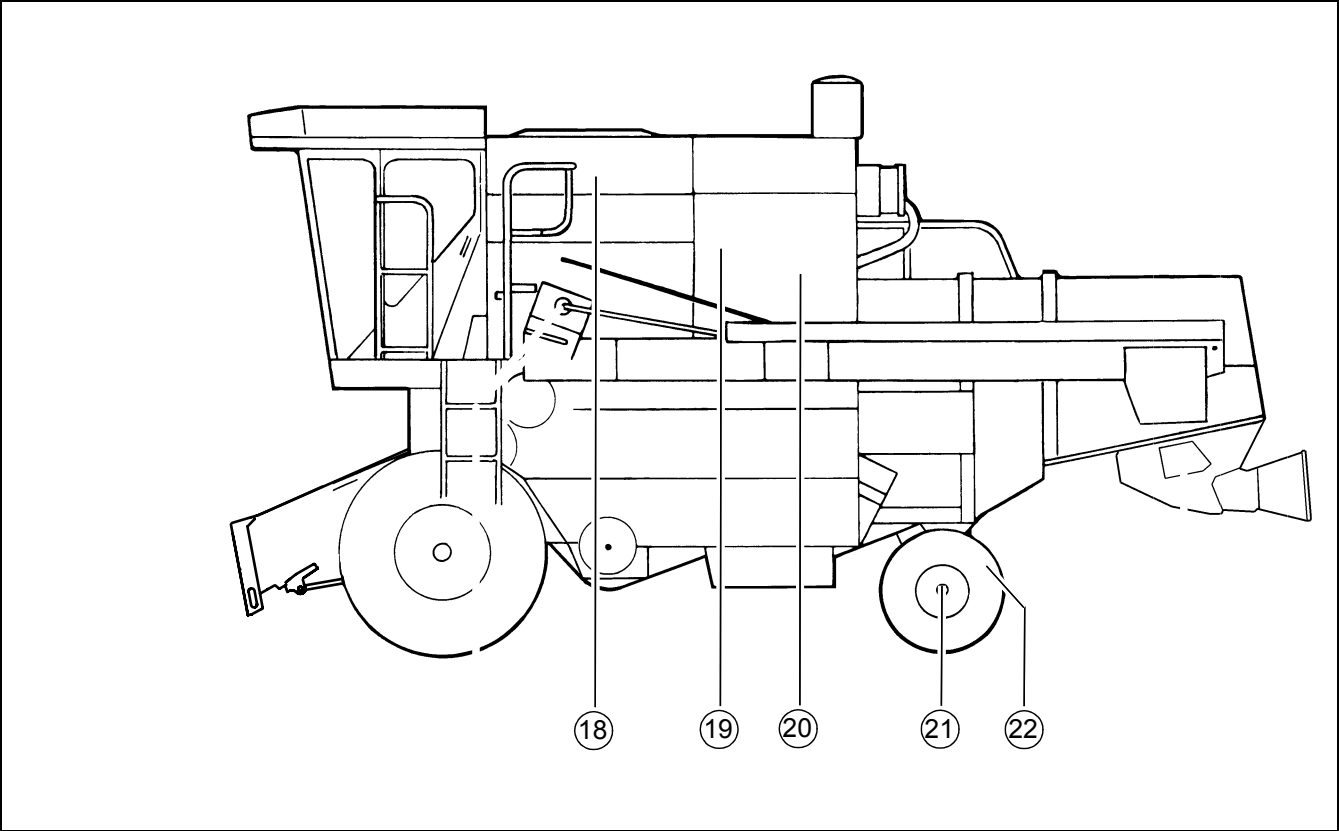
8

14.1.8 Lubrication points - 100 h on the left

30132 **9**30123 **12**30125 **15**30122 **10**30124 **13**30118 **16**

DOMINATOR 130

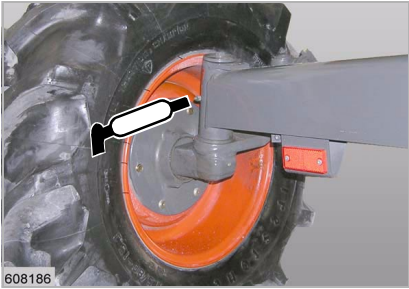
30126 **11**30127 **14**30129 **17**



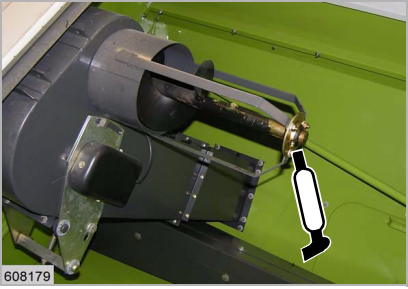
30113



30128 **18**



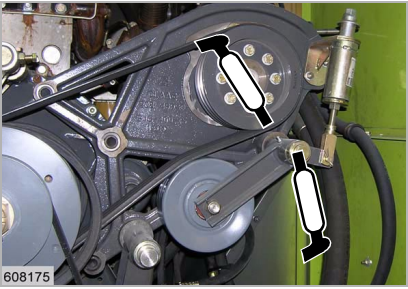
30133 **21**



30130 **19**

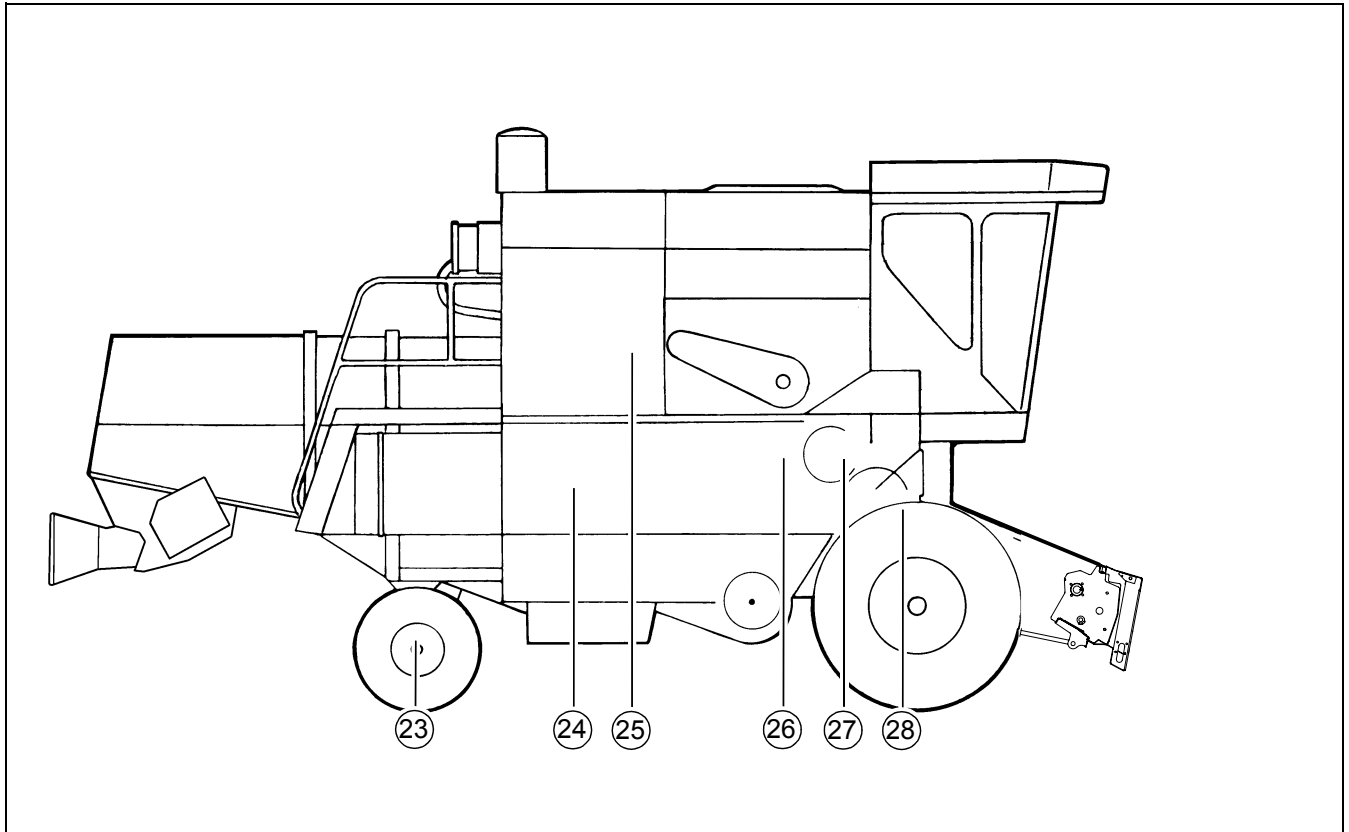


22



DOMINATOR 150 / 140 30131 **20**

14.1.9 Lubrication points - 100 h on the right



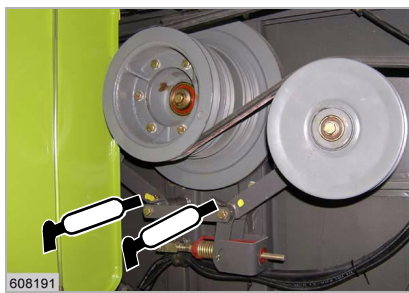
30112



30135 23



30138 26



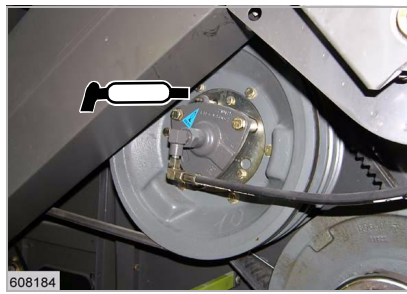
30136 24



30139 27

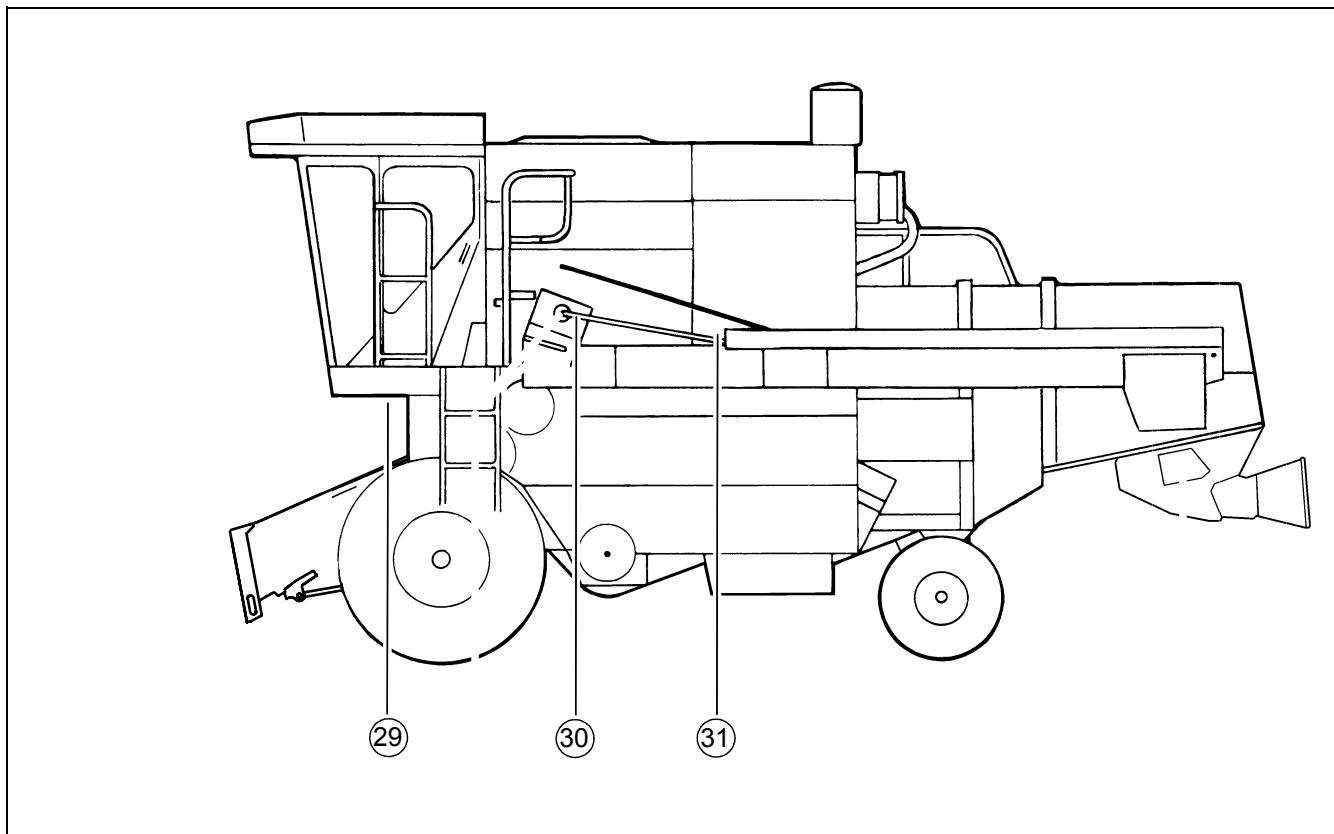


30137 25



30140 28

14.1.10 Lubrication points - 500 h on the left



30113



DOMINATOR 130

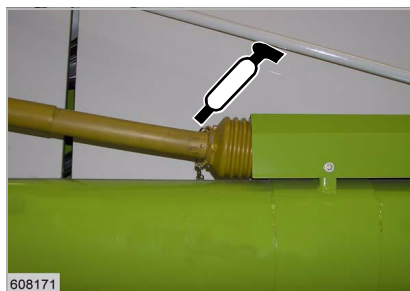
30141

29



30114

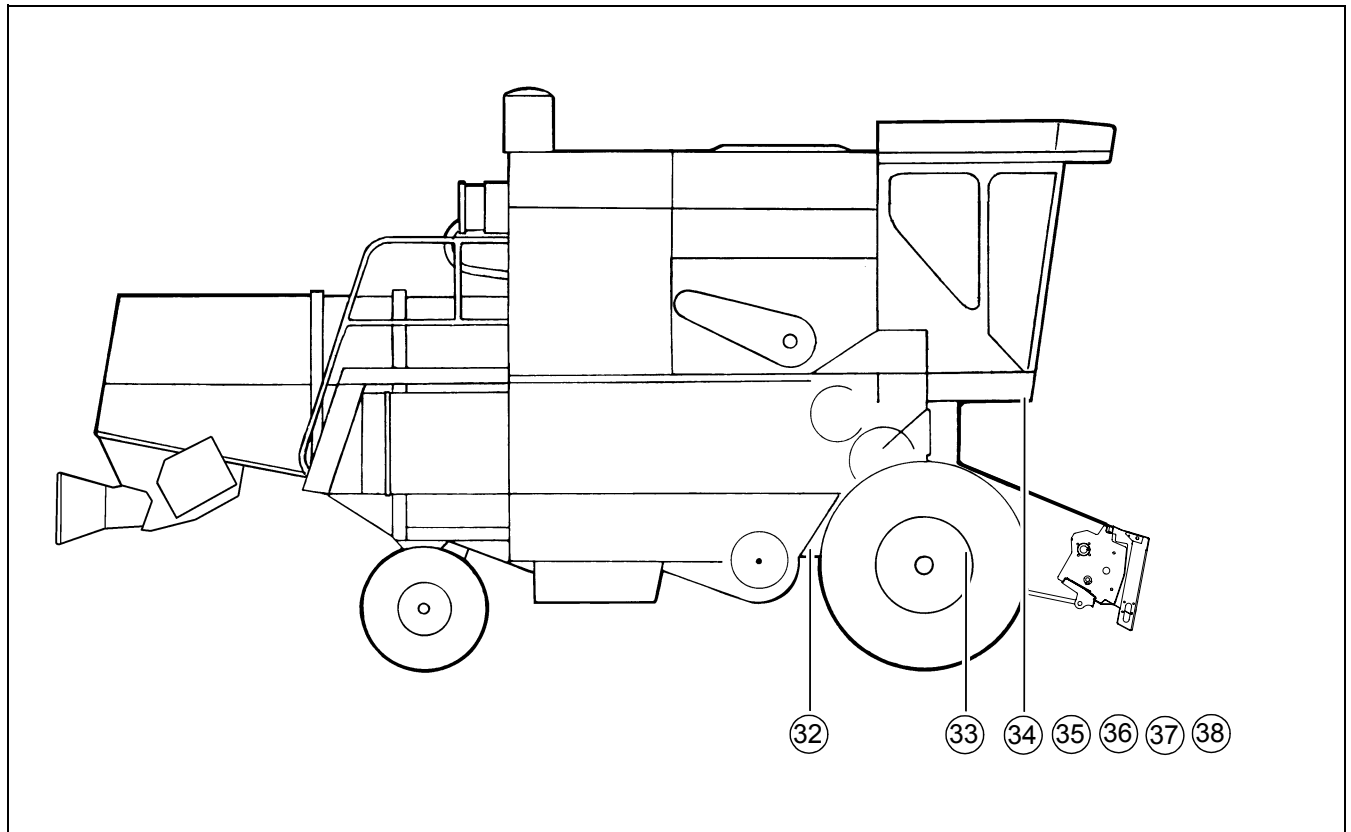
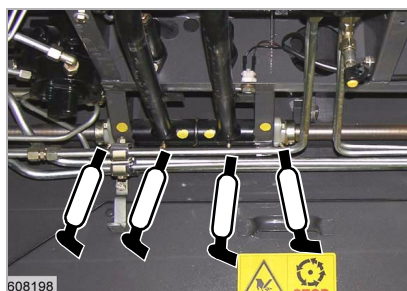
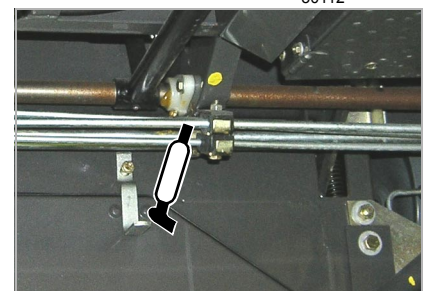
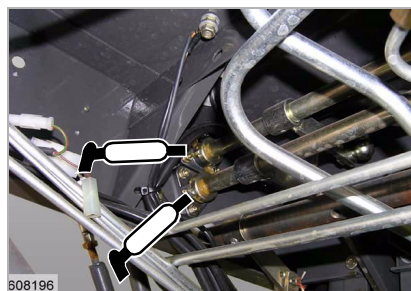
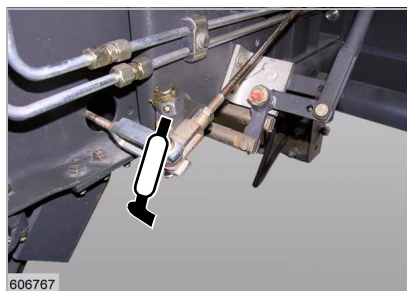
30



30119

31

14.1.11 Lubrication points - 500 h on the right

308195 30143 **32**308198 30146 **35**30112 DOMINATOR 130 30147 **38**308196 30144 **33**308194 DOMINATOR 130 30142 **36**308197 30145 **34**306767 DOMINATOR 130 23386 **37**

Index**A**

Access	
workplace, maintenance area	32
Accessories	17
Accumulators	41
Additional weights	38
Adjusting the speed	
Diesel engine (DOMINATOR 130)	146
Diesel engine (DOMINATOR 150 / 140)	143
Adjustment work	40
Air cleaner with plastic housing	
of the diesel engine,	
change safety cartridge	303
of the diesel engine,	
cleaning / changing	301
Air conditioner	40, 264
Faults and remedies	244
Precautions for protecting the	
air conditioner during extended	
standstill periods -	
DOMINATOR 130 with York compressor	350
Refrigerant change	271, 351
Refrigerant moisture	
saturation check	271, 350
Air conditioner / fan	
Installing the fuse	94
Air conditioning system	
Putting into operation	271
.....	350
Air filter	
Cleaning / changing the diesel	
air filter safety cartridge	270
Cleaning / changing the diesel e	
ngine air filter	269, 270
Cleaning the cab air filter	348
Cleaning the cab recirculation	
air filter	271, 348
Air filter intake screen	
Cleaning	303
Air intake filter	
Cleaning	270
Air intake hose	
Inspection	305
Retightening the clamps	270
Air intake hoses	
Change	270, 304
Air intake tube	
Retightening the clamps	304
Annual check	16
Antifreeze	41
Applying the feed rake conveyor	
safety lock	43
Attachment parts / machine body	
Dimensions	84
Weights	86

Auger troughs	
Clean	272, 364
Automotive operation	
Combine harvester	38
Axle drive	
Changing the oil	270
Checking the oil level	270
B	
Basic concave adjustment	177
Adjustment	177
Batteries	
disposal	42
Battery	
Checking the acid level	271
Checking the electrolyte level	347
Isolating switch	46
Belt (R10)	
Adjustment	330
Belt (R12)	
Adjustment	333
Belt (R14)	
Installation	336
Belt (R3)	
Adjustment	325
Belt (R4)	
Adjustment	326
Belt (R42)	
Removal	338
Belt (R5)	
Adjustment	327
Belt (R7)	
Installation	331
Belt (R9)	
Adjustment	329
Belt (R1)	
Adjustment	323
Belt (R13)	
Adjustment	334
Belt (R14)	
Adjustment	337
Removal	335
Belt (R2)	
Adjustment	324
Belt (R42)	
Installation	338
Belt (R7)	
Removal	331
Belt (R8)	
Adjustment	328
Bolts	259
Brake	81
Brake fluid	
Check / refill	318
Check level	318
Checking the level / topping up	270
Brake pads	
Check	270

Brakes		Cleaning throughput monitor	
Applying the parking brake	156	Cleaning the sensor	360
Foot brake	156	Cleaning unit	84
Releasing the parking brake	156	Cleanliness	
C		Lubricants	260
Cab	124	Concave	
Cleaning / changing the air filter	271, 348	Adjustment	206, 271
Cleaning the recirculation air filter	271, 348	Concave settings	206
with air conditioner /		Condensation at the fuel prefilter	
Sanden compressor	120	Drain (additional equipment)	269, 286
with air conditioner /		Condensation at the fuel prefilter	
York compressor	118	(standard equipment)	
with fan	118	Drain	269, 284
with fan and heater	121	Control levers	122
Cab / Operator's platform	82	Controls	
Cab roof		Cab roof	117
Cleaning the units	271, 349	Coolant	268
Central terminal compartment	244	Change	297
Changing the fresh air filter element		Changing	269
Hydraulic system	271	Checking the level	269, 295
Hydraulic system		Checking the mixing ratio	269, 296
DOMINATOR 130	343	Draining the radiator coolant	297
Hydraulic system		Topping up coolant	299
DOMINATOR 150 / 140	340	Coolant hoses	
Changing the oil		Change	269, 300
Axle drive	270	Cooling unit	
Hydraulic system		Cleaning	269, 300
DOMINATOR 130	343	Overview	278
Hydraulic system		Coupling pin	
DOMINATOR 150 / 140	340	Alignment	95
Changing the oil filter		Crop / straw discharge	
Hydraulic system		Problems and remedies	254
DOMINATOR 130	343	Cutterbar	194
Hydraulic system		Automatic cutterbar adjustment	194
DOMINATOR 150 / 140	340	Automatic reel height adjustment	194
Chassis	77	Automatic Vario mode ON/OFF	194
Chassis clutch DOMINATOR 130		Checking the float springs	97
Adjustment	270, 316	Cutting height end stops	194
Check list		Horizontal reel position end stops	194
Daily operation	101	Limit stops of cutterbar table length	194
Initial operation	87	No. of partial widths	194
Check oil level		Reel height end stops	194
Diesel engine	269	Snapping plates end stops	194
Checking the oil level		Working position	194
Axle drive	270	Working width	194
Diesel engine	291	Cutterbar float springs	
Drive axle gearbox	313	Check	97
Final drive DOMINATOR 130	311	Cutting height	
Final drive DOMINATOR 150 / 140	308	Reading	201
Rear axle gearbox	270	Cutting height indicator	
Chopper		Adjustment	174
Adjusting the length of cut	229	D	
Cleaning		Danger of injury	
of surfaces with decals applied	267	Escaping hydraulic liquid	46
Problem and remedy	253	Decals	
Cleaning performance monitor		Cleaning	267
Adjusting the display	221	Deflector curtain	
Adjusting the sensors	181	Adjust	214

Check	271, 359	Drive diagram	
Diesel engine		left side	
Change of air cleaner safety		DOMINATOR 150 / 140 / 130	321
cartridge with plastic housing	303	Drive diagram, right side	
Changing the air filter safety cartridge	270	DOMINATOR 150 / 140 / 130	322
Check oil level	269	Driver's seat	
Checking the oil level	291	Adjustment of	
Cleaning / changing air cleaner		mechanically suspended version	169
with plastic housing	301	Adjustment with	
Cleaning / changing the air filter	269, 270	mechanical suspension	166, 167
Cleaning the surroundings	269, 279	Driving behaviour	
Oil / oil filter change	269, 293	Machine	154
Diesel engine		Driving operations	
(DOMINATOR 130)		General	38
Starting	146	Slopes	39
Stopping	148	E	
Diesel engine		Effective value	
(DOMINATOR 150 / 140)		vibrations	82
Starting	143	Electric equipment	
Stopping	145	Connection	130
Diesel engine speed		Disconnection	134
Lever		Electric system / Electronics	82
(DOMINATOR 130, Perkins 1006-T6)	109	Engine	
Diesel engine speed adjustment		CATERPILLAR 3056E	76
Rotary switch (DOMINATOR 130,		CATERPILLAR C6.6	75
CATERPILLAR C-6.6, 3056 E)	109	electronic engine management	21
Diesel engine speed rotary switch		Perkins 1006-T6	76
DOMINATOR 150 / 140	112	Engine compartment	259
Diesel engine valves		Escaping hydraulic liquid	
Adjustment	295	Danger of injury	46
Dimensions		F	
Attachment parts / machine body	84	Fan	
Disawner bars	242	Adjusting the speed	219
Installation / removal	207	Clean	271, 360
Disawning	195	Fan / air conditioner	
Disposal		Installing the fuse	94
batteries	42	Fan speed	
machine	42	Checking / adjusting the display	181
operating materials	42	Setting the gauge	271, 360
packaging material	42	Faults and remedies	
refrigerant	42	Air conditioner	244
DOMINATOR 130 speed display		Feed rake conveyor	
Switch, threshing drum speed,		Checking the rasp plates	271, 355
gearbox input shaft	115	Cleaning the retainers	271, 276, 353
DOMINATOR 150 / 140 speed display		Lowering	107, 108
Switch, threshing drum speed,		Raising	107, 108
gearbox input shaft	111	Feeder chain	
Draining the oil		Height adjustment	175
Drive axle gearbox	314	Slip clutch adjustment	271, 354
Final drive (DOMINATOR 150 / 140)	309	Feeder chain slip clutch	
Final drive DOMINATOR 130	311	Adjustment	271, 354
Drive axle gearbox		Feeder chains	
Checking the oil level	313	Adjustment	271, 353
Draining the oil	314	Feeder unit	
Topping up oil	315	Problem and remedy	249
Drive axle manual gearbox		Feeder unit/front attachment	
Cleaning the environment	270	Reverse	201
Cleaning the surroundings	308		

Fieldwork		Changing	
Preparation	141	(CATERPILLAR C-6.6)	269, 289
Filler neck filter		Changing	
Clean	269, 282	(PERKINS 1006-6T)	269, 290
Filling up		Fuel pre-filter	
Machine	281	Changing (accessory)	287
Filter		Fuel prefilter	
Changing the fuel filter		Change (additional equipment)	269
(CATERPILLAR 3056 E)	269, 289	Change (standard equipment)	269, 285
Changing the fuel filter		Fuel sediment bowl	
(CATERPILLAR C-6.6)	269, 289	Cleaning the filter	269, 283
Changing the fuel filter		Fuel system	
(PERKINS 1006-6T)	269, 290	Bleeding	269
Final drive DOMINATOR 130		Closing / opening the shut-off tap	282
Checking the oil level	311	Venting	283
Draining the oil	311	Fuel tank	
Topping up oil	312	Draining fuel	269, 279
Final drive DOMINATOR 150 / 140		Filling up	281
Checking the oil level	308	filling up	269
Draining the oil	309	Functions monitor	122
Topping up oil	310	Fuse	
Fire extinguisher	45	Installing the fan / air conditioner fuse	94
Check	272		
Checking	367	G	
First aid measures	42	Gear	
Foot brake		Shifting (DOMINATOR 130)	152
Adjustment	270, 319	Shifting (DOMINATOR 150 / 140)	150
Formatierung		General information	34
von Texten	16	General safety and accident	
Free-swinging knives		prevention regulations	
Bolting down to straw chopper	188	Combine harvesters	37
Changing	187	General warnings	320
Unscrewing	187	Driving and transportation	138
Front attachment	247	Faults and remedy	243
Checking the cylinders	96	Fieldwork	193
Disengaging	204	Fieldwork settings	173
Installation	127	Installing / removing the	
Interlock	127	front attachment	126
Lowering	107, 108	Lubrication chart	368
Raising	107, 108	Maintenance	258
Removal	133	Overview of controls	103
Suspend	127	Prior to operation	101
Switch on	203	Prior to putting the machine	
Unhitch	136	into operation for the first time	87
Unlock	136	Grain delivery	84
Front attachment / feeder unit		Problems and remedies	255
Reverse	201	Grain elevator chain	
Front attachment cylinders		Adjustment	272, 363
Check	96	Grain tank	
Front attachment drop rate		Clean	272, 366
Adjustment (DOMINATOR 150)	176	Safety device installation	99
Front attachments	39	Shear bolt installation	257
Front ladder (standard)		Grain tank auger cover plates	
Rotation	171	Installation	236
Fuel filter		Removal	236
Changing		Grain tank cover	
(CATERPILLAR 3056 E)	269, 289	Close	231
		Open	231

Grain tank full indicator		Initial operation	
Adjustment on DOMINATOR 150	191	Check list	87
Grain tank safety device		Intake	82
Installation	99	Intended use	34
Grain tank unloading		J	
Disengagement	234	Jacking up	
Engagement	234	Jacking points / support	45
Grain tank unloading tube		K	
Adjusting the support		Knives	
transport position	272, 366	Bolting down the	
Closing the service aperture	99	straw chopper free-swinging knives	188
Swinging in (DOMINATOR 130)	233	L	
Swinging in (DOMINATOR 150 / 140)	232	Ladder	
Swinging out (DOMINATOR 130)	233	Adjusting the rear ladder	171
Swinging out (DOMINATOR 150 / 140)	232	Climbing position of rear ladder	171
Greasing cycles	369	Transport position of rear ladder	171
Ground pressure		Leaving the machine	39
Reading	200	Lift eyes	
Ground speed control lever		Removal	49
Adjusting the actuating resistance		Loading	47
(DOMINATOR 150 / 140)	153	Lubricants	273, 368
Ground speed control lever		Cleanliness	260
(DOMINATOR 130)	151	Lubrication point	
Ground speed control lever		Symbols	370
(DOMINATOR 150 / 140)	150	Lubrication points	368
H		10 h on the left	371
How to use this manual	16	10 h on the right	372
Hydraulic system		100 h on the left	375
Changing the oil / oil filter /		100 h on the right	377
fresh air filter element	271	50 h on the left	373
Changing the oil / oil filter /		50 h on the right	374
fresh air filter element		500 h on the left	378
DOMINATOR 130	343	500 h on the right	379
Changing the oil / oil filter /		M	
fresh air filter element		Machine	
DOMINATOR 150 / 140	340	Braking (DOMINATOR 130)	158
Connection	130	Braking (DOMINATOR 150 / 140)	157
Disconnecting	134	disposal	42
Hydraulic system control unit		Driving	138
DOMINATOR 130 lift hydraulic system	107	Driving behaviour	154
Hydraulic system oil level		Filling up	281
Check		filling up	269
	271	Jacking up	45
Inspection	340	Loading and tying down	47
I		Parking	159
Identification plate		Putting out of action	266
Cab	29	Securing against rolling away	44
CATERPILLAR 3056 E engine	25	Steering	160
CATERPILLAR C6.6 engine	26	Stopping (DOMINATOR 130)	158
Drive axle	26	Stopping (DOMINATOR 150 / 140)	157
Hitch block	28	Towing	154
Machine	23	Machine serial number	18
PERKINS 1006-6T engine	25	Maintenance area	
Rear axle	26	engine platform	33
Straw chopper	29	left-hand operator's platform	32, 33
Trailer hitch	27		

tank platform	33	Parking brake	
Maintenance work	40	Adjustment	270, 318
Measurement inaccuracy		Applying	156
vibrations	82	Releasing	156
Measuring methods		Post harvest check	16
vibrations	82	Power supply	
Misuse		Cut	46
reasonable foreseeable	35	Problem and remedy	
Mounting plates		Cleaning	253
Fitting / adjustment	95	Feeder unit	249
Multifunction lever		Separation	252
DOMINATOR 150 / 140	108	Threshing mechanism	250
Multifunction lever		Problems and remedies	
(DOMINATOR 150 / 140)	150	Crop / straw discharge	254
		Grain delivery	255
N		Problem, cause and remedy	
Noise level		Clean	195
cab	82	Putting the air conditioner into operation	
		(with Sanden compressor)	120
O		(with York compressor)	119
Oil / oil filter change		R	
Diesel engine	269	Radiator	
Hydraulic system	271	Change the coolant	297
Oil change		Changing the coolant	269
Diesel engine	293	Checking the coolant level	269, 295
Oil filter change		Draining the coolant	297
Diesel engine	293	Rasp plates	
Oil level inspection		Checking the rasp plates	
Hydraulic system	271, 340	on the feed rake conveyor	271, 355
Operating materials		Rear axle	
disposal	42	Overview	89
Operating mode		Rear axle 00 0637 630 2	
vibrations	82	Converting from transport	
Operation (daily)		to working position	90
Check list	101	Rear axle 00 0649 950 1	
Operator's platform		Adjusting the track width	91
Overview (DOMINATOR 130)	104	Converting from transport	
Overview (DOMINATOR 150/140)	106	to working position	90
Optional equipment	17	Rear axle 00 0770 350 1	
Overview		Converting from transport	
CATERPILLAR 3056 E	277	to working position	90
CATERPILLAR C-6.6	277	Rear axle gearbox	
Machine	30	Change oil	270
Operator's platform		Checking the oil level	270
(DOMINATOR 130)	104	Reasonable foreseeable misuse	35
Operator's platform		Reel	
(DOMINATOR 150/140)	106	Horizontal adjustment (hydraulically)	198
PERKINS 1006-6T	278	Horizontal adjustment (mechanically)	197
Rear axle	89	Reel circumferential speed	
Steering column	114	Adjustment	198
Overview of engine		Adjustment (electric)	199
CATERPILLAR 3056 E	277	Adjustment (mechanically)	199
CATERPILLAR C-6.6	277	Refrigerant	
PERKINS 1006-6T	278	Air conditioner moisture	
		saturation check	271, 350
P		disposal	42
Packaging material			
disposal	42		

Refrigerant level		
Checking the air conditioner		
refrigerant level	271, 351	
Returns		
Inspection	231	
Returns elevator chain		
Adjustment	272, 363	
Road traffic regulations	18	
Road travel		
Preparation	138	
Rotary chaff screen		
Clean	269, 300	
S		
Safety		
intended use	34	
reasonable foreseeable misuse	35	
Warning signs	50	
Safety and accident prevention regulations	36	
Safety decals	51	
General instructions	74	
Important	51	
Safety instructions, prior to operation		
General	37	
Safety lock		
Moving out the feed rake conveyor		
safety lock	43	
Safety rules	50	
Scraper profiles		
Adjustment	174	
Sensor		
Adjusting the cleaning		
performance monitor	181	
Adjusting the separation		
performance monitor	180	
Cleaning the cleaning		
throughput monitor	360	
Cleaning the separation		
throughput monitor	271, 359	
Separation	83	
Problem and remedy	252	
Separation performance monitor		
Adjusting the display	215	
Adjusting the sensors	180	
Separation throughput monitor		
Cleaning the sensor	271, 359	
Service intervals	269	
Shear bolt installation		
Grain tank	257	
Short-circuit valve DOMINATOR 130		
Adjustment	316	
Shut-off tap		
Closing / opening the fuel		
system shut-off tap	282	
Draining the coolant	297	
Fuel tank	287	
Sieve table	238	
Sieves		
Clean	271, 362	
Installation	183	
Manual adjustment	220	
Removal	182	
Straw chopper installation position	189	
Sound pressure level		
cab	82	
Spare parts	23	
Specifications	18	
Standard distributor		
Swing into cutterbar trolley		
transport position	228	
Stands		
Fitting	133	
Removal	131	
Stationary knives		
Adjustment (standard straw chopper)	229	
Change (standard straw chopper)	229	
Steering	81, 160	
Steering column		
Adjustment	160	
Stepped preparation floors		
Cleaning	271, 361	
Stone trap		
Clean	271, 356	
Straw blockage warning downstream		
of the separation stage		
Observe warning signal	214	
Straw chopper		
Bolting down the free-swinging knives	188	
Changing the free-swinging knives	187	
Changing the stationary knives	229	
Put into operation		
(swinging the standard spreader		
to chopping position)	223	
Put out of operation		
(swinging the standard spreader		
to swathing position)	225	
Sieves installation position	189	
Switching off the function monitor		
DOMINATOR 130	228	
Switching on the function monitor		
DOMINATOR 130	225	
Unscrewing the free-swinging knives	187	
Straw chopper function monitor		
Switching off DOMINATOR 130	228	
Switching on DOMINATOR 130	225	
Straw chopper installation position		
Sieves	189	
Straw guide apron		
Securing in raised position	45	
Straw guide plate		
Installation		
(straw chopper with standard spreader)	186	
Straw guide plate		
(straw chopper with standard spreader)	185	

Straw walker	195
Clean	271, 358
Straw walker fishback	
Installation / removal	217
Sun roof	125
Surfaces with decals applied	
Cleaning	267
Switch console	
DOMINATOR 130	108
DOMINATOR 150 / 140	111
Symbol	
Legend	17
T	
Table of tyre pressures	
Tyres	78
Technical questions	23
Threshing concave segments	
Removal / installation	
(Multicrop concave)	177
Threshing drum	251
Adjusting the speed	210
Two-step variable-speed drive	
(chain drive)	212
Unslugging	209
Threshing mechanism	83, 195
Clean	271, 356
Disengaging	206
Engaging	205
Problem and remedy	250
Threshing table	239
Tightening torque	
Checking the tightening torque	
of wheel nuts / wheel bolts	307
Wheels	307, 308
Tool box	125
Topping up oil	
Drive axle gearbox	315
Final drive (DOMINATOR 150 / 140)	310
Final drive DOMINATOR 130	312
Total vibration value	
vibrations	82
Towing	154
Forward	155
Reverse	155
Track width	80
Trailer	
Hitching	161
Unhitching	164
Trailer hitch	
Installing	93
Trailers	39
Transporting passengers	38
Tying down	47
Tyre pressure	78

U

Units

Cleaning the cab roof units	349
Cleaning the cab roof-mounted units	271

Universal drive shaft

Install	128
Remove	135

Use

intended use	34
reasonable foreseeable misuse	35

V

Validity of instructions	18
--------------------------------	----

V-belt	259
--------------	-----

Vibrations

effective value	82
measurement inaccuracy	82
measuring methods	82
operating mode	82
total vibration value	82

W

Warning lights 15 and 18

Function (DOMINATOR 150 / 140)	113
--------------------------------------	-----

Warning lights 7 and 8

Function (DOMINATOR 130)	110
--------------------------------	-----

Warning signal

Observe the straw blockage warning	
downstream of the separation stage	214

Warning signs

Identification	50
----------------------	----

Water cooler

Topping up coolant	299
--------------------------	-----

Weights

Attachment parts / machine body	86
---------------------------------------	----

Welding work

Combine harvester	266
-------------------------	-----

Wheel bolts

Checking the tightening torque	307
--------------------------------------	-----

Wheel chock	44
-------------------	----

Wheel nuts

Checking the tightening torque	307
--------------------------------------	-----

Wheels

Removal / installation	89
Tightening torques	307, 308

Wind board

Adjustment	219
------------------	-----

Winter storage instructions for combines	267
--	-----

Worklights	124
------------------	-----

Workplace

access	32
cab	32

Following the policy of CLAAS KGaA mbH to improve its products as technical developments continue, CLAAS reserves the right to make alterations which must not necessarily correspond to text and illustrations contained in this publication, and without incurring obligation to alter any machines previously delivered.

Technical data, dimensions and weights are given as an indication only. Responsibility for errors and omissions not accepted.

Reproduction or translation of this publication, in whole or in part, is not permitted without the written consent of CLAAS KGaA mbH.

All rights under the provision of the Copyright Act are reserved.

CLAAS KGaA mbH
33426 HARSEWINKEL
Germany



Our contribution to the environment: CLAAS has printed this manual on 100% chlorine free paper.

CLAAS KGaA mbH
Postfach 1163
33426 Harsewinkel
Tel. +49 (0)5247 12-0
www.claas.com

00 0293 210 2
BA DOMINATOR 150/140/130
EN - 12/09
Printed in Germany

